Working Draft American National Standard

T13 Project 1532D Volume 3

Revision 4b
21 April 2004

Information Technology - AT Attachment with Packet Interface - 7 Volume 3 - Serial Transport Protocols and Physical Interconnect (ATA/ATAPI-7 V3)

T13 Technical Editor:

John Masiewicz
Western Digital
20511 Lake Forest Drive
Lake Forest, CA 92630
USA

Tel: 949-672-7686
Fax: 949-672-5499

Reference number
ISO/IEC ****** :200x
ANSI INCITS.*** - xxxx
Printed April, 21, 2004 12:04PM

Points of Contact:

T13 Chair
Dan Colgrove
Hitachi Global Storage Technologies
2903 Carmelo Dr
Henderson, NV 89402
Tel: 702-614-6199
Fax: 702-614-7955

T13 Vicechair
Jim Hatfield
Seagate Technology
389 Disc Drive
Longmont CO 80503
Tel: 720-684-2120
Fax: 720-684-2711

INCITS Secretariat
NCITS Secretariat
1250 Eye Street, NW Suite 200
Washington, DC 20005
Email: NCITS@ITIC.ORG
Tel: 202-737-8888
Fax: 202-638-4922

T13 Reflector

See the T13 Web Site at http://www.t13.org for reflector information.

T13 Web Site

http://www.t13.org

T13 Anonymous FTP Site

ftp.t13.org

Document Distribution

INCITS Online Store
managed by Techstreet
1327 Jones Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
http://www.techstreet.com/incits.html
Telephone: 1-734-302-7801
or 1-800-699-9277
Facsimile: 1-734-302-7811

or

Global Engineering
15 Inverness Way East
Englewood, CO 80112-5704
http://global.ihs.com/
Telephone: 1-303-792-2181
or 1-800-854-7179
Facsimile: 1-303-792-2192

DOCUMENT STATUS

Revision 0 - November 5, 2001

Document created from ATA/ATAPI-6-revision 2a (T13/1410Dr2a).
Added editorial changes requested for ATA/ATAPI-6 at the October 23-25, 2001 plenary meeting except the removal of the Streaming feature set.
Fotmatted as discussed at the October 23-25,2001 plenary including moving connector specs to the body of Volume 3 and adding form factor descriptions to Volume 3.

Revision 0a - December , 2001

Revised format as requested at the December 11-12, 2001 plenary meeting.
Made changes approved during letter ballot comment resolution for ATA/ATAPI-6.

Revision 0b - February 27, 2002

Made changes requested by the ANSI editor for ATA/ATAPI-6.
Made changes resulting from the ATA/ATAPI-6 public review comment resolution, e02109r0.
Added e01135r1 UMDA 133 as approved at the February 2002 plenary.
Added e01139r2 Selective self-test as approved at the February 2002 plenary.

Revision 0c - April 25, 2002

Added e02101r0 Proposal to obsolete SEEK as approved at the April 2002 plenary.
Reserved eight opcodes, four IDENTIFY DEVICE words, one SET FEATURES subcommand code pair, and eight log addresses for Serial ATA per e01145r1 as approved at the April 2002 plenary.

Revision 0d - July 8, 2002

Added the following proposals as approved at the June 2002 plenary:
e01119r0 Leakage current on the RESET signal
e01137r2 Conveyance self-test
e01141r2 Forced unit access commands
e02119r0 Editorial comments on the 1.8” 3.3v parallel form factor
e02123r0 Item 1 reorganizing register descriptions, Item 3 adding note about slew rate on RESET signal

Revision 1 - August 28, 2002

Added the following proposals as approved at the August 2002 plenary:
e01138r3 Large physical sector suport
e02115r2 ID data to support ISO 7779
e02127r AV IDENTIFY DEVICE word 96
Made AAM optional for devices implementing the PACKET feature set as approved at the August 2002 plenary
Made changes requested during the change bar review at the August 2002 plenary.

Revision 1a - October 31, 2002

Added the following proposals as approved at the October 2002 plenary:
e02127r1 Streaming transfer times for PIO and DMA modes
e02136r1 World Wide name definition for ATA devices
e02142r0 Modifications to the “Signal integrity and UDMA implementation guide” annex
e02139r1 IDEMA Japan response to AV command modification
Added definition for host
Made changes requested during the change bar review at the October 2002 plenary.

Revision 2 - February 18, 2003

Made the following changes approved at the December 2002 plenary:
Added e02121r1 AV Lite proposal.
Made changes requested during the change bar review
Modified world wide name layout in INDENTIFY DEVICE response
Modified Volumes 1 and 2 from cover page through Clause 3 to add Serial ATA material.
Created Volume 3 from Serial ATA Specification 1.0

Revision 2a - March 13,2003

Made changes recommended at the March 4-5 working group meeting.

Revision 3 - June 25, 2003
Made changes from Ad Hoc working group and plenary meetings. Maintained Change tracking for this revision.

Revision 3a - June 28, 2003
Added editorial global changes as directed in Plenary Meeting. Corrected broken links. Accepted changes reviewed in plenary. Left change bars where open items still remain. Clause numbers and figure numbers may have changed. Moved Appendix K to Clause 14.4 and restored normative.

Revision 3b July 31, 2003 Working Group changes:

- Accept editorial changes in Working group review.
- Fixed broken references wherever found (no change bars)
- Changed everywhere ContrlFIS & CmdFIS used and replaced with proper FIS references
- Figure 89, DT_DATAI1: HT changed to DT.
- Everywhere UI referenced in a COMRESET sequence, changed to UIoob
- Clause 14.5.6.4.1 is an ordered sequence, changed to (a), (b), etc.
- “Gen1 DWORD” changed be “Gen1 DWORD time”
- Added references at editors discretion for WG review.
- Clarified “ending status” used to define if E_Status or Status is meant.
- Changed multiple locations where ABORT primitive or termination was used that should have said DMAT
- Clarified terms DMA Setup to be “First Party DMA Setup FIS” if referring to FIS, otherwise FPDMAS is meant.
- Clarified term “Application layer” as to whether it refers to host application layer or Device App layer
- Changed timing values to put real times (nS, uS) in parenthesis with “approximately” preceeding to avoid creating new requirements. References to actual parameters, or UI, or DWORD timing references without parenthesis.
- Removed Fig 37 - Power on and COMRESET timing sequence since duplicate figure. No change bars.
- Changed some numbered sequences to ordered sequences as appropriate (no change bars)
- Changed Figure 41 and 42 to add Partial/Slumber to figure (no change bars)
- Added missing description following COMINIT diagram Fig 38
- Format changes and page breaks (no change bars)

Revision 3c August 22, 2003 Working Group changes:

- Clause 15.7.1.x Added DMAT advisory in several additional places, also added “See Text for

complete transition requirements”

Figure 56 Fixed typos in entry to state LR2 to indicate LR2.

Clause 16.6.6 - Fixed erroneous change to first sentence & restored original content.

Figure 73 fixed HTDA4 exit states to say DMAT, not DMA Abort.

Clause 16.7.12 and Figure 88 changed so figure numbering matches text, also changed entry text to DTRBIST0 to match text.

Clause 17.2, figure 90, fixed typos in state DI7 to correctly show DI7.

Clause 17.9 Figure 97 DDMAI2 added I=1 to exit to match text

Clause 17.12 and Figure 100 READ DMA QUEUED command protocol. Added missing entry to DDMAQ1 from DI7. Changed DDMAQI0: DDMAQI3 to “starting” rather than “completing”. Added changes for “no release desired” transition and associated text.

Clause 17.13 and Figure 101 added service return and no bus release transition.

Clause 18, Fixed error where ContrlFIS was incorrectly changed to Device to host, s/b Host to Device.

Clause 14.5.6.2.2 added clarifications to DP11 and DP12 to clarify host initiated or device initated resume transitions.

Figure 36 Device Phy Initialization, State DP6, remove entry xx:DP6. Added “or fail to resume” to state DP7:DP9,

Figure 54 state LS4, changed term LRESET to Power On Reset. Text description also.

Figure 55 Link Transmit, and Figure 56 Link receive removed “& PhyRdy” since covered by footnote. Added “See Text for complete requirements” to footnote. Fig 56 also removed word “FIFO” from entry to LR1.

Clause 16.5.4.1 added “Read and Write DMA Queued commands may not be possible if this FIS is not implemented.” To Set Device Bits FIS description.

Clause 16.5.4.1 deleted since redundant to Clause 3 requirements.

Clause 14.5.5.3.x, Figure 40 and Figure 41 clarified to say Partial/Slumber to match text. Added “Host transition to Partial/Slumber” and “Device transition to Partial/Slumber” to clarify indeterminate bus content.

Clause 16.6.8, “Host Transport decompose a DMA Activate FIS diagram” title not complete, added “and DMA Data Transfer”

Clause 17.2 Device Idle, state DI3 added words to clarify that the queue is aborted in this state.

Clause 17.10 Deleted text before state diagram to indicate I always set to one at command completion.

Clause 16.5.3 Changed definition of I bit:

I - Interrupt bit. This bit reflects the Interrupt Pending state of the device. Devices shall not modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of the nIEN bit received in Register Host to Device FIS’s.

Note: Some implementations prior to this standard modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of nIEN in received Register Host to Device FIS’s. See Clause ??)

Revision 3d October 19, 2003 changes from ad-hoc working group meetings:

Removed Editors notes related to nIEN impact on “I” bit device at device

Clause 18.2 “Device Emulation of nIEN with Interrupt Pending” added with addition of introductory paragraph from WG.

Clause 16.5.4 Added same changes as 16.5.3 on I-bit description

Added DMAT caution wherever found in text.

Clause 16.7.7 to clarify transition DTDATAI2:DTI0 as optional transition if resulting from DMAT.

Clause 17.12 Reverse out change to add Register DH FIS between states DDMAQI0 and DDMAQI1.

Clause 17, added COMRESET and SRST actions paragraph to apply to all command layer protocols, and removed specific statements in 17.4 and 17.5.

Clause 15.5 removed forward reference to 16.5.9.1, no longer needed since referenced paragraph was deleted.

Clause 14.5.6.2.8 Removed sentence “There is host side signal conditioning that will pull the host TX and RX pairs low if power is off.”

Clause 14.5.6.1 First sentence changed “common mode of 250mv remains” to “common mode remains”

Clause 15.4.8.1 Changed title of Table 23 from “20 DWORD Latency example” to “Latency Example” and eliminated sentence “Table 23 describes the worst case latency allowed by the standard.” From third paragraph.

Clause 14.2.6.3 Table 9 Additional Requirements. Changed flammability requirement form UL 94V-0 to UL 94V-1 and changed “Underwriters Laboratories” to “Underwriters Laboratories or better”.

Clause 13.2 Added reference to Volume 1 for 10ms timeout.

Clause 14.5.6.2.3.1 Changed “max” to “min” in first sentence of paragraph preceeding figure 37

Incorporated e03129r1 (Clause 3.2.3.4 Redefine obsolete)

Clasue 13.2.3 added “When device 1 is selected and device 0 is responding for device 1 (See table 44 in vol 2), a host adapter with Device 0/Device 1 emulation generates the non-packet device response for both packet and non-packet devices.”

Clause 14.5.6.2.x changed timing to "xxus(yy DWORDs)" instead of "yy DWORDs (xxus)" references.

Clause 14.5.2.6.3.1 changed steps f&g wording for speed negotiation for clarity. Changed same text in Clauses 14.5.6.2.4 items d & e, and 14.5.6.2.8 items g & h.

Revision 3e October 22, 2003 changes:

Incorporated e03143r0 (CONT clarifications)

Changed 873.8us (32767 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) to 873.8us in all places.

Reviewed and accepted changes from 10-22-03 change-bar review

Removed all references that restrict flow control of FIS’s

Revision 3f Dec 13, 2003 changes:
Changed revision to 3f to match current revision on all Volumes.

Revision 3g - Plenary Page-turner review - Dec 15-18, 2003
Incorporated errata 44 to table 30 “Jitter output/tolerance mask” and following table parameters.
Incorporated e03125r0, Latching connectors
Updated glossary to remove obsoleted terms for presently used terms Device 0 and Device 1.
Revised text in Data Port and Data Register to correct Read/Write directions.
Changed Dword to DWORD all places
Revised Volume 1 title to include more description.
Revised Glossary definition of Read Command and Write Command
Incorporated e03126r0 - New connector drawings with addition of Latching connection option.
Removed remaining editor’s notes, formatting notes, fixed links.
14.5.6.2.2 - Corrected State trasition DP4:DP5 and DP4:DP6 word descriptions to match state diagrams to say COMWAKE deasserted, not COMINIT.

Revision 4 - 23 Dec 2003
Editorial (non-content) changes, document clean-up for final draft.
Accepted all changes

Revision 4a - 30 March 2004
Incorporated Letter Ballot Comments Resolution per e04116r0.

Revision 4b - 21 April 2004
Incorporated minor editorial changes resulting from plenary review of letter ballot incorporation.

American National Standard
for Information Technology —

AT Attachment with Packet Interface - 7
Volume 3
Serial Transport Protocols and Physical Interconnect
(ATA/ATAPI-7 V3)

Secretariat
Information Technology Industry Council

Approved mm dd yy

American National Standards Institute, Inc.

Abstract

This standard specifies the AT Attachment Interface between host systems and storage devices. It provides a common attachment interface for systems manufacturers, system integrators, software suppliers, and suppliers of intelligent storage devices. It includes the Packet Command feature set implemented by devices commonly known as ATAPI devices. It also includes the Serial Transport Protocols and Physical Interconnect for AT Atachment devices commonly known as Serial ATA.

This standard maintains a high degree of compatibility with the AT Attachment Interface with Packet Interface - 6 (ATA/ATAPI-6), INCITS 361-2002, and while providing additional functions, is not intended to require changes to presently installed devices or existing software.

ANSI
INCITS. -200x

American National Standard

Approval of an American National Standard requires verification by ANSI that the requirements for due process, consensus, and other criteria for approval have been met by the standards developer. Consensus is established when, in the judgment of the ANSI Board of Standards Review, substantial agreement has been reached by directly and materially affected interests. Substantial agreement means much more than a simple majority, but not necessarily unanimity. Consensus requires that all views and objections be considered, and that effort be made towards their resolution.

The use of American National Standards is completely voluntary; their existence does not in any respect preclude anyone, whether he has approved the standards or not, from manufacturing, marketing, purchasing, or using products, processes, or procedures not conforming to the standards.

The American National Standards Institute does not develop standards and will in no circumstances give interpretation on any American National Standard. Moreover, no person shall have the right or authority to issue an interpretation of an American National Standard in the name of the American National Standards Institute. Requests for interpretations should be addressed to the secretariat or sponsor whose name appears on the title page of this standard.

CAUTION NOTICE: This American National Standard may be revised or withdrawn at any time. The procedures of the American National Standards Institute require that action be taken periodically to reaffirm, revise, or withdraw this standard. Purchasers of American National Standards may receive current information on all standards by calling or writing the American National Standards Institute.

CAUTION: The developers of this standard have requested that holders of patents that may be required for the implementation of the standard, disclose such patents to the publisher. However, neither the developers nor the publisher have undertaken a patent search in order to identify which, if any, patents may apply to this standard. As of the date of publication of this standard, following calls for the identification of patents that may be required for the implementation of the standard, no such claims have been made. No further patent search is conducted by the developer or the publisher in respect to any standard it processes. No representation is made or implied that licenses are not required to avoid infringement in the use of this standard.

Published by
American National Standards Institute
11 West 42nd Street, New York, New York 10036

Printed in the United States of America

Contents

Page

Tables

Page

Figures

Page

Foreword

(This foreword is not part of this standard.)

Requests for interpretation, suggestions for improvement and addenda, or defect reports are welcome. They should be sent to the INCITS Secretariat, ITI, 1250 Eye Street, NW, Suite 200, Washington, DC 20005-3922.

This standard was processed and approved for submittal to ANSI by InterNational Committee for Information Technology Standards (INCITS). Committee approval of this standard does not necessarily imply that all committee members voted for approval. At the time it approved this standard, INCITS had the following members:

Karen Higginbottom, Chair
David Michael, Vice-chair
Monica Vago, Secretary

Technical Committee T13 on ATA Interfaces, that reviewed this standard, had the following members and additional participants:

Dan Colgrove, Chairman

Jim Hatfield, Vice-Chairman

Mark Overby, Secretary

Andre Hedrick
Arie Krantz
Ben Chang
Bob Davis
Conrad Maxwell
Craig Carlson
Curtis Stevens
Dan Colegrove
Darrin Bulik
Davis, Bob
Glenn Lott
Greg Elkins
Hale Landis
Hiroshi Suzuki
Jim Hatfield
Joe Breher
Joe Chen
John Masiewicz
John Schadegg
Justin Heindel
Kanting Tsai
Karen Zelenko
Kenneth Hirata
Knut Grimsrud
Lance Flake
Larrie Carr
Larry Barras
Marc Noblitt
Mark Evans
Mark Hartney
Mark Jackson
Mark Menz
Mark Overby
Matt Rooke
Michael Eschmann
Mukesh Kataria
Nathan Obr
Paul Tran
Pete McLean
Phil Gardner
Raymond Liu
Robert Elliott
Robert Strong
Ron Roberts
Ronald Rueckert
Ryosuke Shimizu
Shoji Fuchigami
Stefan Thurnhofer
Stephen Cumpson
Stephen Finch
Steve Livacaari
Steven Fairchild
Strong, Robert
Sumit Puri
Tasuku Kasebayashi
Tim Bradshaw
Tim Thompson
Tom Barrett
Tony Goodfellow
Tony Priborsky

Introduction

This standard encompasses the following:

Volume 1

Clause 1 describes the scope.

Clause 2 provides normative references for the entire standard.

Clause 3 provides definitions, abbreviations, and conventions used within the entire standard.

Clause 4 describes the general operating requirements of the command layer.

Clause 5 describes the I/O registers.

Clause 6 contains descriptions of the commands.

Clauses 7 through 12 point to the material in Volume 2.

Clauses 13 through 19 point to material in Volume 3.

Volume 2

Clause 1 describes the scope.

Clause 2 provides normative references for the entire standard.

Clause 3 provides definitions, abbreviations, and conventions used within the entire standard.

Clauses 4, 5, and 6 point to the material in Volume 1.

Clause 7 contains the electrical and mechanical characteristics.

Clause 8 contains the signal descriptions.

Clause 9 describes the general operating requirements of the physical, data link, and transport layers.

Clause 10 contains describes register addressing.

Clause 11 contains the transport protocols.

Clause 12 contains the interface timing diagrams.

Clauses 13 through 19 point to material in Volume 3.

Volume 3

Clause 1 describes the scope.

Clause 2 provides normative references for the entire standard.

Clause 3 provides definitions, abbreviations, and conventions used within the entire standard.

Clauses 4, 5, and 6 point to the material in Volume 1.

Clauses 7 through 12 point to the material in Volume 2.

Clause 13 contains a general overview of the serial interface.

Clause 14 describes the serial physical layer.

Clause 15 describes the serial link layer.

Clause 16 describes the serial transport layer.

Clause 17 describes the device command layer protocol for the serial interface.

Clause 18 describes the host command layer protocol for the serial interface.

Clause 19 describes the serial interface host adapter register interface.

Clause 20 describes the serial interface error handling.

AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARD **INCITS ***-nnnn**

American National Standard
for Information Systems —

Information Technology —
AT Attachment with Packet Interface - 7 – Volume 3 —
Serial Transport Protocols and Physical Interconnect
(ATA/ATAPI-7 V3)

1 Scope

This standard specifies the AT Attachment Interface between host systems and storage devices. It provides a common attachment interface for systems manufacturers, system integrators, software suppliers, and suppliers of intelligent storage devices.

Volume 1 defines the register delivered commands used by devices implementing the standard. Volume 2 defines the connectors and cables for physical interconnection between host and storage device, the electrical and logical characteristics of the interconnecting signals, and the protocols for the transporting commands, data, and status over the interface for the parallel interface. Volume 3 defines the connectors and cables for physical interconnection between host and storage device, the electrical and logical characteristics of the interconnecting signals, and the protocols for the transporting commands, data, and status over the interface for the serial interface. Figure 1 shows the relationship of these documents. For devices implementing the PACKET command feature set, additional command layer standards are listed in Table 1 and described in Clause 2.

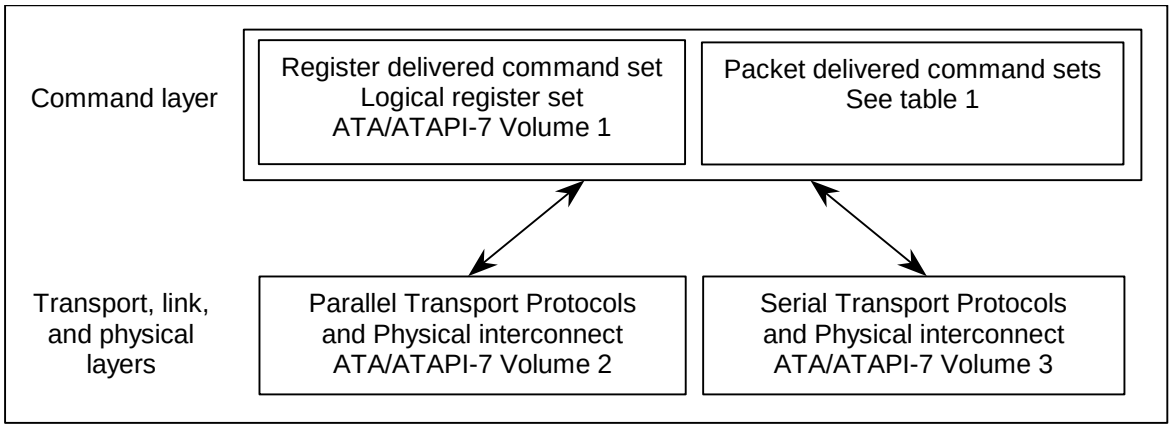


Figure 1 – ATA document relationships

Table 1 – PACKET delivered command sets

Standard
SCSI Primary Commands (SPC)
SCSI Primary Commands - 2 (SPC-2)
SCSI Primary Commands - 3 (SPC-3)
SCSI Block Commands (SBC-2)
SCSI Stream Commands (SSC)
Multimedia Commands (MMC)
Multimedia Commands - 2 (MMC-2)
Multimedia Commands - 3 (MMC-3)
Multimedia Commands - 4 (MMC-4)
ATAPI for Removable Media (SFF8070I)
ATA Packet Interface (ATAPI) for Streaming Tape QIC-157 revision D

This standard maintains compatibility with the AT Attachment with Packet Interface - 6 standard (ATA/ATAPI-6), INCITS 361-2002, and while providing additional functions, is not intended to require changes to presently installed devices or existing software.

2 Normative references

The following standards contain provisions that, through reference in the text, constitute provisions of this standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards listed below.

Copies of the following documents may be obtained from ANSI: Approved ANSI standards, approved and draft international and regional standards (ISO, IEC, CEN/CENELEC, ITUT), and approved and draft foreign standards (including BSI, JIS, and DIN). For further information, contact ANSI Customer Service Department at 212-642-4900 (phone), 212-302-1286 (fax), or via the World Wide Web at http://www.ansi.org.

Additional availability contact information is provided below as needed.

2.1 Approved references

The following approved ANSI standards, approved international and regional standards (ISO, IEC, CEN/CENELEC, ITUT), may be obtained from the international and regional organizations who control them.

2.1.1 ANSI References

SCSI-3 Block Commands (SBC) [ANSI INCITS 306-1998] (PACKET command feature set commands)
SCSI-3 Primary Commands (SPC) [ANSI X3.301-1997] (PACKET command feature set device types)
SCSI-3 Streaming Commands (SSC) [ANSI INCITS 335-2000] (PACKET command feature set commands)
Multimedia Commands (MMC) [ANSI X3.304-1997] (PACKET command feature set sense codes)
Multimedia Commands - 2 (MMC-2) [ANSI INCITS 333-2000] (PACKET command feature set commands)
Multimedia Commands - 3 (MMC-3) [ANSI INCITS 360-2002] (PACKET command feature set commands)
Protected Area Run Time Interface Extensions (PARTIES) [ANSI INCITS 346-2001]
SCSI Primary Commands - 2 (SPC-2) [ANSI INCITS 351-2001] (PACKET command feature set commands)
AT Attachment with Packet Interface Extension (ATA/ATAPI-4), [ANSI INCITS.317-1998]

2.1.2 ISO References

Control and Status Register (CSR) Architecture for microprocessor buses [ISO/IEC 13213:1994] (World wide names)

To obtain copies of these documents, contact Global Engineering or INCITS. Additional information may be available at http://www.t10.org and http://www.t13.org.

2.2 References under development

At the time of publication, the following referenced standards were still under development. For information on the current status of the document, or regarding availability, contact the relevant standards body or other organization as indicated.

SCSI Block Commands - 2 (SBC-2) [T10/1417-D]
SCSI Primary Commands - 3 (SPC-3) [T10/1416-D] (PACKET command feature set commands)
ATAPI for Rewritable Media [SFF8070i] (PACKET command feature set commands)
Multimedia Commands - 4 (MMC-4) [T10/1545D] (PACKET command feature set commands)

For more information on the current status of the T10 documents, contact INCITS. To obtain copies of T10 or SFF documents, contact Global Engineering.

2.3 Other references

The following standard and specifications are also referenced.

PC Card Standard, February 1995, PCMCIA (68-pin Connector)

For the PC Card Standard published by the Personal Computer Memory Card International Association, contact PCMCIA at 408-433-2273 or http://www.pc-card.org.

CompactFlash™ Association Specification, Revision 1.4

For the CompactFlash™ Association Specification published by the CompactFlash™ Association, contact the CompactFlash™ Association at http://www.compactflash.org.

ATA Packet Interface (ATAPI) for Streaming Tape QIC-157 revision D

For QIC specifications published by Quarter-Inch Cartridge Drive Standards, Inc., contact them at 805 963-3853 or http://www.qic.org.

EIA-364-09 TP-09C - Durability test procedure for electrical connectors and contacts
EIA-364-13 Mating and unmating forces test procedures for electrical connectors
EIA-364-17 TP-17B - Temperature life with or without electrical load test procedure for electrical connectors and sockets
EIA-364-18 Visual and dimensional inspection for electrical connectors
EIA-364-20 TP-20B - Withstanding voltage test procedure for electrical connectors, sockets, and coaxial contacts
EIA-364-21 Insulation resistance test procedure for electrical connectors, sockets, and coaxial contacts
EIA-364-23 Low level contact resistance test procedure for electrical connectors and sockets
EIA-364-27 Mechanical pulse (specified pulse) for electrical connectors
EIA-364-28 TP-28D Vibration test procedure for electrical connectors and sockets
EIA-364-31 Humidity test procedure for electrical connectors and sockets
EIA-364-32 Thermal shock (temperature cycling) test procedure for electrical conectors and sockets
EIA-364-38 TP-38B - Cable pull-out test procedure for electrical connectors
EIA-364-41 TP-41C - Cable flexing test procedure for electrical connectors
EIA-364-65 TP-65A Mixed flowing gas

For EIA specifications, contact them at http://www.eia.org.

3 Definitions, abbreviations, and conventions

3.1 Definitions and abbreviations

For the purposes of this standard, the following definitions apply:

3.1.1 **ASCII Character:** Designates 8-bit value that is encoded using the ASCII Character set.

3.1.2 **acoustics:** Measurement of airborne noise emitted by information technology and telecommunications equipment [ISO 7779:1999(E)]

3.1.3 **ATA (AT Attachment):** ATA defines the physical, electrical, transport, and command protocols for the internal attachment of storage devices to host systems.

3.1.4 **ATA-1 device:** A device that complied with ANSI X3.221-1994, the AT Attachment Interface for Disk Drives. ANSI X3.221-1994 has been withdrawn.

3.1.5 **ATA-2 device:** A device that complied with ANSI X3.279-1996, the AT Attachment Interface with Extensions. ANSI X3.279-1996 has been withdrawn.

3.1.6 **ATA-3 device:** A device that complies with ANSI X3.298-1997, the AT Attachment-3 Interface. ANSI X3.298-1997 has been withdrawn.

3.1.7 **ATA/ATAPI-4 device:** A device that complies with ANSI INCITS 317-1998, AT Attachment Interface with Packet Interface Extensions-4.

3.1.8 **ATA/ATAPI-5 device:** A device that complies with ANSI INCITS 340-2000, the AT Attachment with Packet Interface-5.

3.1.9 **ATA/ATAPI-6 device:** A device that complies with ANSI INCITS 361-2002, the AT Attachment with Packet Interface-6.

3.1.10 **ATA/ATAPI-7 device:** A device that complies with this standard.

3.1.11 **ATAPI (AT Attachment Packet Interface) device:** A device implementing the Packet Command feature set.

3.1.12 **AU (Allocation Unit):** The minimum number of logically contiguous sectors on the media as used in the Streaming feature set. An Allocation Unit may be accessed with one or more requests.

3.1.13 **AV (Audio-Video):** Audio-Video applications use data that is related to video images and/or audio. The distinguishing characteristic of this type of data is that accuracy is of lower priority than timely transfer of the data.

3.1.14 **backchannel:** When transmitting a FIS, the backchannel is the receive channel.

3.1.15 **BER (bit error rate):** The statistical probability of a transmitted encoded bit being erroneously received in a communication system.

3.1.16 **bus release:** For devices implementing overlap, the term bus release is the act of clearing both DRQ and BSY to zero before the action requested by the command is completed. This allows the host to select the other device or deliver another queued command.

3.1.17 **byte count:** The value placed in the Byte Count register by the device to indicate the number of bytes to be transferred during this DRQ assertion when executing a PACKET PIO data transfer command.

3.1.18 **byte count limit:** The value placed in the Byte Count register by the host as input to a PACKET PIO data transfer command to specify the maximum byte count that may be transferred during a single DRQ assertion.

3.1.19 **CFA (CompactFlash™ Association):** The CompactFlash™ Association which created the specification for compact flash memory that uses the ATA interface.

3.1.20 **check condition:** For devices implementing the PACKET Command feature set, this indicates an error or exception condition has occurred.

3.1.21 **CHS (cylinder-head-sector):** An obsolete method of addressing the data on the device by cylinder number, head number, and sector number.

3.1.22 **code violation:** In a serial interface implementation, a code violation is an error that occurs in the decoding of an encoded character. (See Volume 3, Clause 15)

3.1.23 **command aborted:** Command completion with ABRT set to one in the Error register and ERR set to one in the Status register.

3.1.24 **command acceptance:** A command is considered accepted whenever the currently selected device has the BSY bit cleared to zero in the Status register and the host writes to the Command register. An exception exists for the DEVICE RESET command (See Clause 6) In a serial implementation, command acceptance is a positive acknowledgment of a host to device register FIS.

3.1.25 **Command Block registers:** Interface registers used for delivering commands to the device or posting status from the device. In a serial implementation, the command block registers are FIS payload fields.

3.1.26 **command completion:** Command completion is the completion by the device of the action requested by the command or the termination of the command with an error, the placing of the appropriate error bits in the Error register, the placing of the appropriate status bits in the Status register, the clearing of both BSY and DRQ to zero, and Interrupt Pending.

3.1.27 **command packet:** A data structure transmitted to the device during the execution of a PACKET command that includes the command and command parameters.

3.1.28 **command released:** When a device supports overlap or queuing, a command is considered released when a bus release occurs before command completion.

3.1.29 **Control Block registers:** In a parallel implementation, interface registers used for device control and to post alternate status. In a serial interface implementation, the logical field of a FIS corresponding to the Device Register bits of a parallel implementation.

3.1.30 **control character:** In a serial interface implementation, an encoded character that represents a non-data byte (See Volume 3, Clause 15)

3.1.31 **CRC (Cyclical Redundancy Check):** A means used to check the validity of certain data transfers.

3.1.32 **Cylinder High register:** The name used for the LBA High register in previous ATA/ATAPI standards.

3.1.33 **Cylinder Low register:** The name used for the LBA Mid register in previous ATA/ATAPI standards.

3.1.34 **data character:** In a serial interface implementation, an encoded character that represents a data byte. (See Volume 3 Clause 15)

3.1.35 **data-in:** The protocol that moves data from the device to the host. Such transfers are initiated by READ commands.

3.1.36 **data-out:** The protocol that moves data from the host to the device. Such transfers are initiated by WRITE commands.

3.1.37 **Delayed LBA:** Any sector for which the performance specified by the Streaming Performance Parameters log is not valid.

3.1.38 **device:** A storage peripheral. Traditionally, a device on the interface has been a hard disk drive, but any form of storage device may be placed on the interface provided the device adheres to this standard.

3.1.39 **device selection:** In a parallel implementation,a device is selected when the DEV bit of the Device register is equal to the device number assigned to the device by means of a Device 0/Device 1 jumper or switch, or use of the CSEL signal. In a serial implementation the device ignores the DEV bit, the host adapter may use this bit to emulate device selection.

3.1.40 **disparity:** The difference between the number of ones and the number of zeros in an encoded character. (See Volume 3, Clause 15)

3.1.41 **DMA (direct memory access) data transfer:** A means of data transfer between device and host memory without host processor intervention.

3.1.42 **don't care:** A term to indicate that a value is irrelevant for the particular function described.

3.1.43 **driver:** The active circuit inside a device or host that sources or sinks current to assert or negate a signal on the bus.

3.1.44 **DRQ data block:** A unit of data words transferred during a single assertion of DRQ when using PIO data transfer.

3.1.45 **elasticity buffer:** In a serial interface implementation, a portion of the receiver where character slipping and/or character alignment is performed.

3.1.46 **encoded character:** In a serial interface implementation, the output of the 8b/10b encoder. (See Volume 3, Clause 15)

3.1.47 **First Party DMA access:** A method by which a device accesses host memory. First Party DMA differs from DMA in that the device sends a DMA Setup FIS to select host memory regions; whereas for DMA the host configures the DMA controller.

3.1.48 **FIS (Frame Information Structure):** A data structure and is the payload of a frame and does not include the SOF primitive, CRC, and EOF primitive.

3.1.49 **frame:** A unit of information exchanged between the host adapter and a device. A frame consists of an SOF primitive, a Frame Information Structure, a CRC calculated over the contents of the FIS, and an EOF primitive.

3.1.50 **FUA (Forced Unit Access):** Forced Unit Access requires that user data be transferred to or from the device media before command completion even if caching is enabled.

3.1.51 **Gen1 DWORD Time:** The time it takes to transmit a 40 bit encoded value at 1.5 Gb/Sec.

3.1.52 **host:** The computer system executing the software BIOS and/or operating system device driver controlling the device and the adapter hardware for the ATA interface to the device.

3.1.53 **host adapter:** The implementation of the host transport, link, and physical layers.

3.1.54 **Interrupt Pending:** In a parallel implementation, an internal state of a device. In this state, the device asserts INTRQ if nIEN is cleared to zero and the device is selected (See Clause 9). In a serial implementation, the Interrupt Pending state is an internal state of the host adapter. This state is entered by reception of a FIS with the I field set to one (See Volume 3, Clause 16)

3.1.55 **LBA (logical block address):** The addressing of data on the device by the linear mapping of sectors.

3.1.56 **LFSR (Linear Feedback Shift Register):** (See Volume 3 Clause 15)

3.1.57 **link:** The link layer manages the phy layer to achieve the delivery and reception of frames. (See Volume 3, Clause 15)

3.1.58 **logical sector:** A uniquely addressable set of 256 words (512 bytes).

3.1.59 **native max address:** The highest address a device accepts in the factory default condition, that is, the highest address that is accepted by the SET MAX ADDRESS command.

3.1.60 **overlap:** A protocol that allows devices that require extended command time to perform a bus release so that commands may be executed by the other device (if present) on the bus.

3.1.61 **packet delivered command:** A command that is delivered to the device using the PACKET command via a command packet that contains the command and the command parameters. See also register delivered command.

3.1.62 **phy:** Physical layer electronics, See Volume 3, Clause 14

3.1.63 **physical sector:** A group of contiguous logical sectors that are read from or written to the device media in a single operation.

3.1.64 **PIO (programmed input/output) data transfer:** PIO data transfers are performed by the host processor utilizing accesses to the Data register.

3.1.65 **primitive:** In a serial interface implementation, a single DWORD of information that consists of a control character in byte 0 followed by three additional data characters in byte 1 through 3.

3.1.66 **queued:** Command queuing allows the host to issue concurrent commands to the same device. Only commands included in the Overlapped feature set may be queued. In this standard, the queue contains all commands for which command acceptance has occurred but command completion has not occurred.

3.1.67 **read command:** A command that causes the device to transfer data from the device to the host (e.g., READ SECTOR(S), READ DMA, etc.).

3.1.68 **register:** A register may be a physical hardware register or a logical field.

3.1.69 register delivered command: A command that is delivered to the device by placing the command and all of the parameters for the command in the device Command Block registers. See also packet delivered command.

3.1.70 register transfers: The host reading and writing any device register except the Data register. Register transfers are 8 bits wide.

3.1.71 released: In a parallel interface implementation, indicates that a signal is not being driven. For drivers capable of assuming a high-impedance state, this means that the driver is in the high impedance state. For open-collector drivers, the driver is not asserted.

3.1.72 sector: A uniquely addressable set of 256 words (512 bytes).

3.1.73 Sector Number register: The LBA Low register in previous ATA/ATAPI standards.

3.1.74 Shadow Command Block: In a serial interface implementation, a set of virtual fields in the host adapter that map the Command Block registers defined at the command layer to the fields within the FIS content.

3.1.75 Shadow Control Block: In a serial interface implementation, a set of virtual fields in the host adapter that map the Control Block registers defined at the command layer to the fields within the FIS content.

3.1.76 signature: A unique set of values placed in the Command Block registers by the device to allow the host to distinguish devices implementing the PACKET Command feature set from those devices not implementing the PACKET Command feature set.

3.1.77 SMART (Self-Monitoring, Analysis, and Reporting Technology): for prediction of device degradation and/or faults.

3.1.78 transport: The transport layer manages the lower layers (link and phy) as well as constructing and parsing FIS's. See Volume 3, Clause 13

3.1.78 Ultra DMA burst: An Ultra DMA burst is defined as the period from an assertion of DMACK- to the subsequent negation of DMACK- when an Ultra DMA transfer mode has been enabled by the host.

3.1.79 unaligned write: A write command that does not start at the first logical sector of a physical sector or does not end at the last logical sector of a physical sector.

3.1.80 unit attention condition: A state that a device implementing the PACKET Command feature set maintains while the device has asynchronous status information to report to the host.

3.1.81 unrecoverable error: When the device sets either the ERR bit or the DF bit to one in the Status register at command completion.

3.1.82 VS (vendor specific): Bits, bytes, fields, and code values that are reserved for vendor specific purposes. These bits, bytes, fields, and code values are not described in this standard, and may vary among vendors. This term is also applied to levels of functionality whose definition is left to the vendor.

NOTE – Industry practice could result in conversion of a Vendor Specific bit, byte, field, or code value into a defined standard value in a future standard.

3.1.83 write command: A command that causes the device to transfer data from the host to the device (e.g., WRITE SECTOR(S), WRITE DMA, etc.).

3.1.84 WWN (world wide name): A 64-bit worldwide unique name based upon a company's IEEE identifier. (See IDENTIFY DEVICE Words (108:111) in Volume 1 Clause 6).

3.2 Conventions

Lowercase is used for words having the normal English meaning. Certain words and terms used in this standard have a specific meaning beyond the normal English meaning. These words and terms are defined either in Clause 3 or in the text where they first appear.

The names of abbreviations, commands, fields, and acronyms used as signal names are in all uppercase (e.g., IDENTIFY DEVICE). Fields containing only one bit are usually referred to as the "name" bit instead of the "name" field. (See 3.2.6 for the naming convention used for naming bits.)

Names of device registers begin with a capital letter (e.g., LBA Mid register).

The expression “word n” or “bit n” shall be interpreted as indicating the content of word n or bit n.

3.2.1 Precedence

If there is a conflict between text, figures, and tables, the precedence shall be tables, figures, then text.

3.2.2 Lists

Ordered lists, those lists describing a sequence, are of the form:

a)
b)
c)

Unordered list are of the form:

1)
2)
3)

3.2.3 Keywords

Several keywords are used to differentiate between different levels of requirements and optionality.

3.2.3.1 expected: A keyword used to describe the behavior of the hardware or software in the design models assumed by this standard. Other hardware and software design models may also be implemented.

3.2.3.2 mandatory: A keyword indicating items to be implemented as defined by this standard.

3.2.3.3 may: A keyword that indicates flexibility of choice with no implied preference.

3.2.3.4 obsolete: A keyword indicating that the designated bits, bytes, words, fields, and code values that may have been defined in previous standards are not defined in this standard and shall not be reclaimed for other uses in future standards. However, some degree of functionality may be required for items designated as “obsolete” to provide for backward compatibility.

Obsolete commands should not be used by the host. Commands defined as obsolete may be command aborted by devices conforming to this standard. However, if a device does not command abort an obsolete command, the minimum that is required by the device in response to the command is command completion.

3.2.3.5 optional: A keyword that describes features that are not required by this standard. However, if any optional feature defined by the standard is implemented, the feature shall be implemented in the way defined by the standard.

3.2.3.6 prohibited: A keyword indicating that an item shall not be implemented by an implementation.

3.2.3.7 reserved: A keyword indicating reserved bits, bytes, words, fields, and code values that are set aside for future standardization. Their use and interpretation may be specified by future extensions to this or other standards. A reserved bit, byte, word, or field shall be cleared to zero, or in accordance with a future extension to this standard. The recipient shall not check reserved bits, bytes, words, or fields. Receipt of reserved code values in defined fields shall be treated as a command parameter error and reported by returning command aborted.

3.2.3.8 retired: A keyword indicating that the designated bits, bytes, words, fields, and code values that had been defined in previous standards are not defined in this standard and may be reclaimed for other uses in future standards. If retired bits, bytes, words, fields, or code values are used before they are reclaimed, they shall have the meaning or functionality as described in previous standards.

3.2.3.9 shall: A keyword indicating a mandatory requirement. Designers are required to implement all such mandatory requirements to ensure interoperability with other products that conform to this standard.

3.2.3.10 should: A keyword indicating flexibility of choice with a strongly preferred alternative. Equivalent to the phrase “it is recommended”.

3.2.4 Numbering

Numbers that are not immediately followed by a lowercase "b" or "h" are decimal values. Numbers that are immediately followed by a lowercase "b" (e.g., 01b) are binary values. Numbers that are immediately followed by a lowercase "h" (e.g., 3Ah) are hexadecimal values.

3.2.5 Signal conventions

Signal names are shown in all uppercase letters.

All signals are either high active or low active signals. A dash character (-) at the end of a signal name indicates the signal is a low active signal. A low active signal is true when the signal is below V_{iL}, and is false when the signal is above V_{iH}. No dash at the end of a signal name indicates the signal is a high active signal. A high active signal is true when the signal is above V_{iH}, and is false when the signal is below V_{iL}.

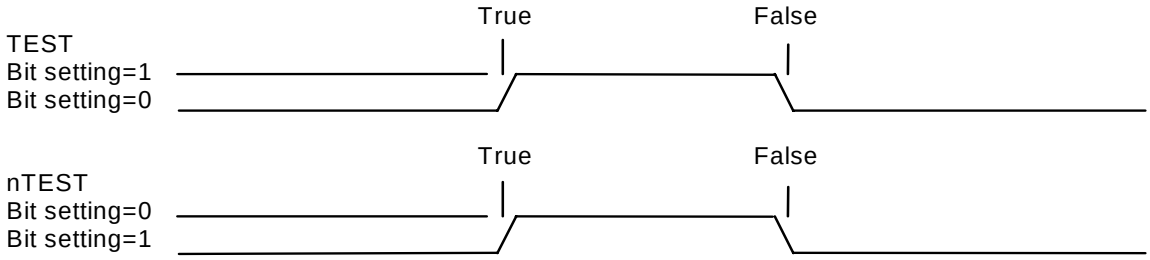
Asserted means that the signal is driven by an active circuit to the true state. Negated means that the signal is driven by an active circuit to the false state. Released means that the signal is not actively driven to any state (See Clause 7). Some signals have bias circuitry that pull the signal to either a true state or false state when no signal driver is actively asserting or negating the signal.

Control signals that may be used for more than one mutually exclusive functions are identified with their function names separated by a colon (e.g., DIOW-:STOP).

SIGNAL(n:m) denotes a set of signals, for example, DD(15:0).

3.2.6 Bit conventions

Bit names are shown in all uppercase letters except where a lowercase n precedes a bit name. If there is no preceding n, then when BIT is set to one the meaning of the bit is true, and when BIT is cleared to zero the meaning of the bit is false. If there is a preceding n, then when nBIT is cleared to zero the meaning of the bit is true and when nBIT is set to one the meaning of the bit is false.



Bit (n:m) denotes a set of bits, for example, bits (7:0).

3.2.7 State diagram conventions

State diagrams are as shown in Figure 2.

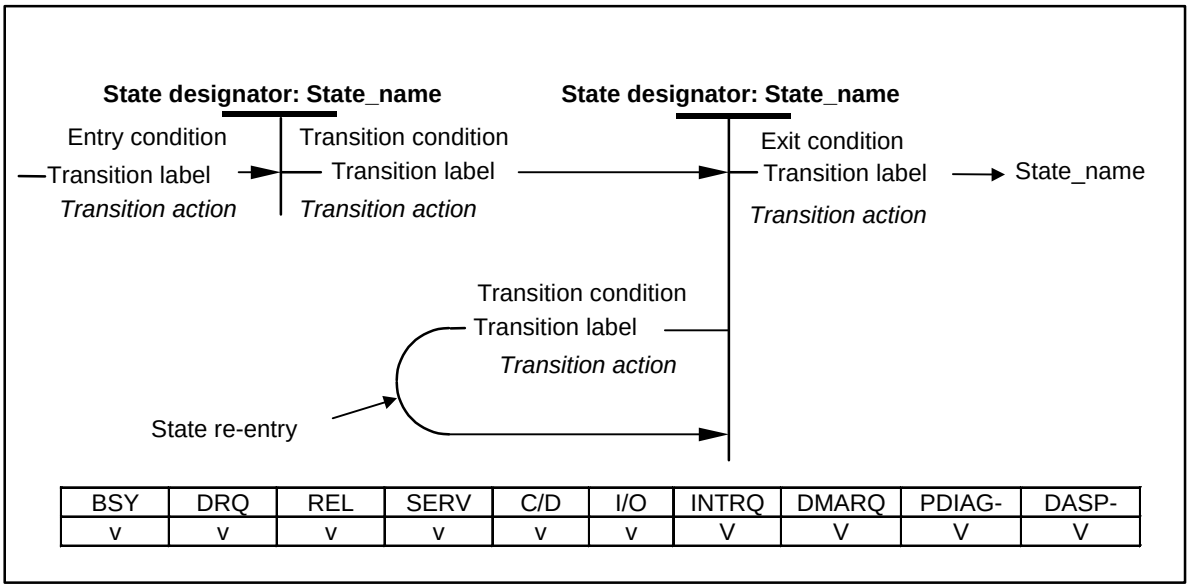


Figure 2 – State diagram convention

Each state is identified by a state designator and a state name. The state designator is unique among all states in all state diagrams in this document. The state designator consists of a set of letters that are capitalized in the title of the figure containing the state diagram followed by a unique number. The state name is a brief description of the primary action taken during the state, and the same state name may appear in other state diagrams. If the same primary function occurs in other states in the same state diagram, they are designated with a unique letter at the end of the name. Additional actions may be taken while in a state and these actions are described in the state description text.

In device command protocol state diagrams, the state of bits and signals that change state during the execution of this state diagram are shown under the state designator:state_name, and a table is included that shows the state of all bits and signals throughout the state diagram as follows:

v = bit value changes.
1 = bit set to one.
0 = bit cleared to zero.
x = bit is don't care.
V = signal changes.
A = signal is asserted.
N = signal is negated.
R = signal is released.
X = signal is don't care.

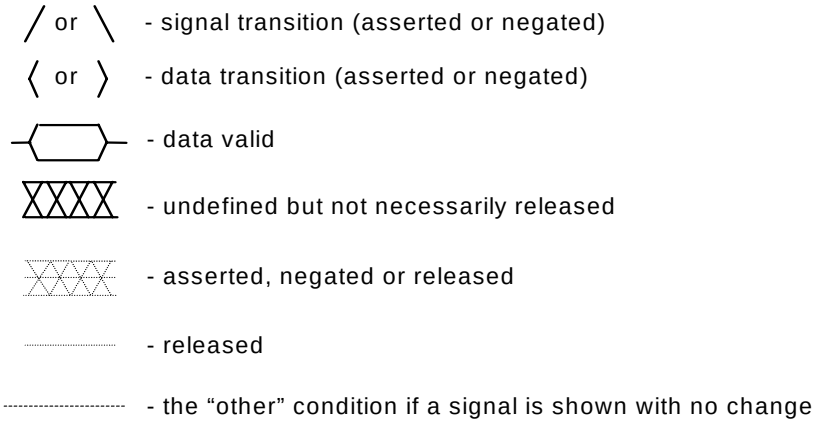
Each transition is identified by a transition label and a transition condition. The transition label consists of the state designator of the state from which the transition is being made followed by the state designator of the state to which the transition is being made. In some cases, the transition to enter or exit a state diagram may come from or go to a number of state diagrams, depending on the command being executed. In this case, the state designator is labeled xx. The transition condition is a brief description of the event or condition that causes the transition to occur and may include a transition action, indicated in italics, that is taken when the transition occurs. This action is described fully in the transition description text.

Upon entry to a state, all actions to be executed in that state are executed. If a state is re-entered from itself, all actions to be executed in the state are executed again.

Transitions from state to state shall be instantaneous.

3.2.8 Timing conventions

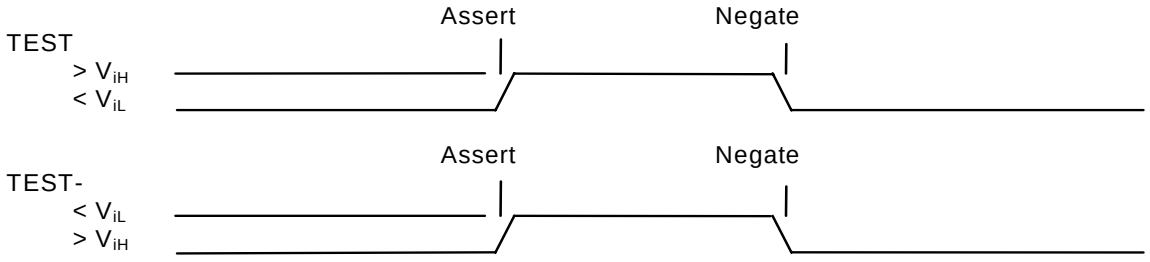
Certain symbols are used in the timing diagrams. These symbols and their respective definitions are listed below.



All signals are shown with the asserted condition facing to the top of the page. The negated condition is shown towards the bottom of the page relative to the asserted condition.

The interface uses a mixture of negative and positive signals for control and data. The terms asserted and negated are used for consistency and are independent of electrical characteristics.

In all timing diagrams, the lower line indicates negated, and the upper line indicates asserted. The following illustrates the representation of a signal named TEST going from negated to asserted and back to negated, based on the polarity of the signal.



3.2.9 Byte ordering for data transfers

Data is transferred in blocks using either PIO or DMA protocols. PIO data transfers occur when the BSY bit is cleared to zero and the DRQ bit is set to one. These transfers are usually 16-bit but CFA devices may implement 8-bit PIO transfers. Data is transferred in blocks of one or more bytes known as a DRQ block. DMA data transfers occur when the host asserts DMACK- in response to the device asserting DMARQ. DMA transfers are always 16-bit. Each assertion of DMACK- by the host defines a DMA data burst. A DMA data burst is two or more bytes.

Assuming a DRQ block or a DMA burst of data contains "n" bytes of information, the bytes are labeled Byte(0) through Byte(n-1), where Byte(0) is first byte of the block, and Byte(n-1) is the last byte of the block. Table 2 shows the order the bytes shall be presented when such a block of data is transferred on the interface using 16-bit PIO and DMA transfers. Table 3 shows the order the bytes shall be presented in when such a block or burst of data is transferred on the interface using 8-bit PIO.

Table 2 – 16-bit Transfer Byte order

	DD 15	DD 14	DD 13	DD 12	DD 11	DD 10	DD 9	DD 8	DD 7	DD 6	DD 5	DD 4	DD 3	DD 2	DD 1	DD 0
First transfer	Byte (1)								Byte (0)							
Second transfer	Byte (3)								Byte (2)							
.....																
Last transfer	Byte (n-1)								Byte (n-2)							

Table 3 – 8-bit Transfer Byte order

	DD 7	DD 6	DD 5	DD 4	DD 3	DD 2	DD 1	DD 0
First transfer	Byte (0)							
Second transfer	Byte (1)							
.....								
Last transfer	Byte (n-1)							

NOTE – The above description is for data on the interface. Host systems and/or host adapters may cause the order of data as seen in the memory of the host to be different.

Some parameters are defined as a string of ASCII characters. ASCII data fields shall contain only code values 20h through 7Eh. For the string “Copyright”, the character “C” is the first byte, the character “o” is the second byte, etc. When such fields are transferred, the order of transmission is:

the 1st character (“C”) is on DD(15:8) of the first word,
the 2nd character (“o”) is on DD(7:0) of the first word,
the 3rd character (“p”) is on DD(15:8) of the second word,
the 4th character (“y”) is on DD(7:0) of the second word,
the 5th character (“r”) is on DD(15:8) of the third word,
the 6th character (“i”) is on DD(7:0) of the third word,
the 7th character (“g”) is on DD(15:8) of the fourth word,
the 8th character (“h”) is on DD(7:0) of the fourth word,
the 9th character (“t”) is on DD(15:8) of the fifth word,
the 10th character (“space”) is on DD(7:0) of the fifth word,
etc.

Word (n:m) denotes a set of words, for example, words (103:100).

3.2.10 Byte, word and DWORD Relationships

Figure 3 illustrates the relationship between bytes, words and DWORDs.

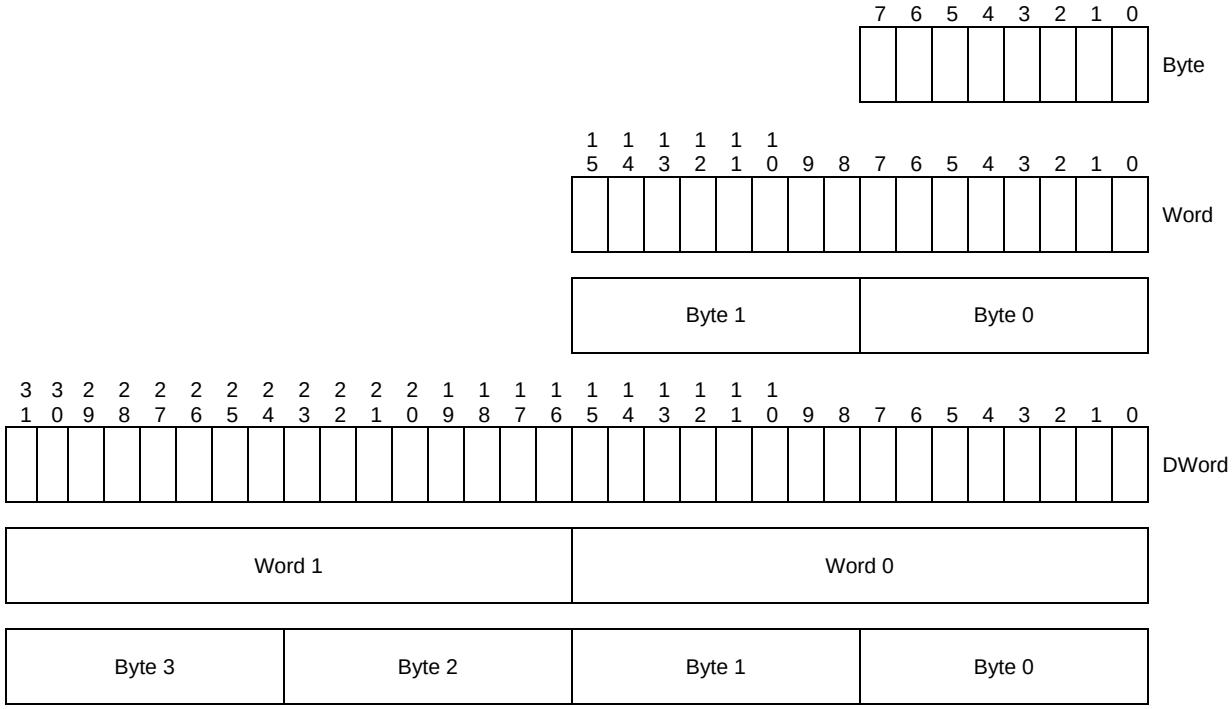


Figure 3 - Byte, word and DWORD relationships

4 General operational requirements (See Volume 1)

5 I/O register descriptions (See Volume 1)

6 Command descriptions (See Volume 1)

7 Parallel interface physical and electrical requirements (See Volume 2)

8 Parallel interface signal assignments and descriptions (See Volume 2)

9 Parallel interface general operating requirements of the physical, data link, and transport layers (See Volume 2)

10 Parallel interface register addressing (See Volume 2)

11 Parallel interface transport Protocols (See Volume 2)

12 Parallel interface timing (See Volume 2)

13 Serial interface general overview

13.1 Overview

The serial implementation of ATA is a high-speed serial replacement for the parallel implementation of ATA attachment of mass storage devices. The serial interface employed is a high-speed differential layer that utilizes Gigabit technology and 8b/10b encoding.

Figure 4 illustrates how two devices are connected to a Parallel ATA host adapter. This method allows up to two devices to be connected to a single port using a Device 0/Device 1 communication technique. Each device is connected via a ribbon cable that “daisy chains” the devices.

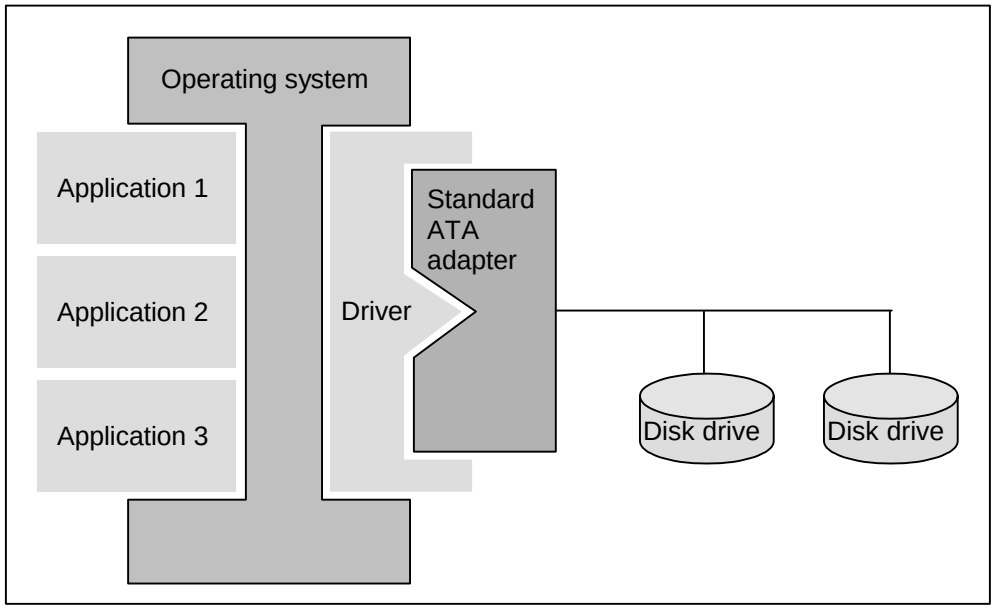


Figure 4 - Standard ATA device connectivity

Figure 5 illustrates how the same two devices are connected using a serial implementation of an ATA host adapter. In this diagram the dark grey portion is functionally similar to the dark grey portion of the previous diagram. ATA host software accesses the serial implementation of ATA subsystem in the same manner and functions in the same way as previous parallel implementation definitions. In this case, however, the software views the two devices as if they were both Device 0 on two separate ports. The right hand portion of the host adapter is of a new design that converts the operations of the software into a serial data/control stream. The serial interface structure connects each of the two drives with their own respective cables in a point-to-point fashion.

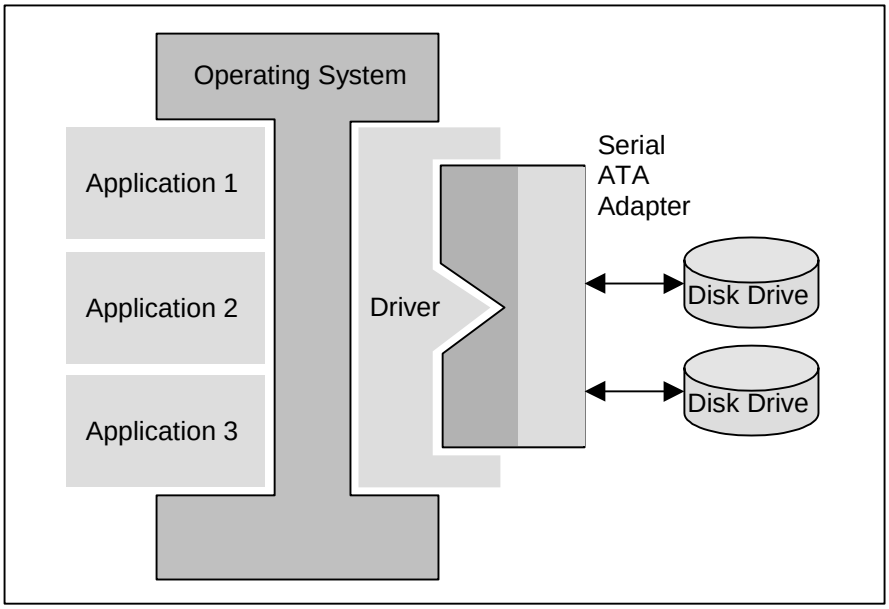


Figure 5 - The serial implementation of ATA connectivity

13.2 Sub-module operation

The Transport control state machine and the Link state machine are the two core sub-modules that control overall operation. The Link state machine controls the operation(s) related to the serial line and the Transport control state machine controls the operation(s) relating to the host platform. The two state machines coordinate their actions and utilize resources to transfer data between a host computer and attached mass storage device. The host Link state machine communicates via the serial line to a corresponding Link state machine located in the device. The host Transport machine also likewise communicates with a corresponding device Transport state machine. The two Link state machines ensure that control sequences between the two Transport control state machines are properly exchanged. Figure 6 shows how the machines communicate their various needed parameters in the traditional layered model. Each layer communicates with its counterpart directly or indirectly

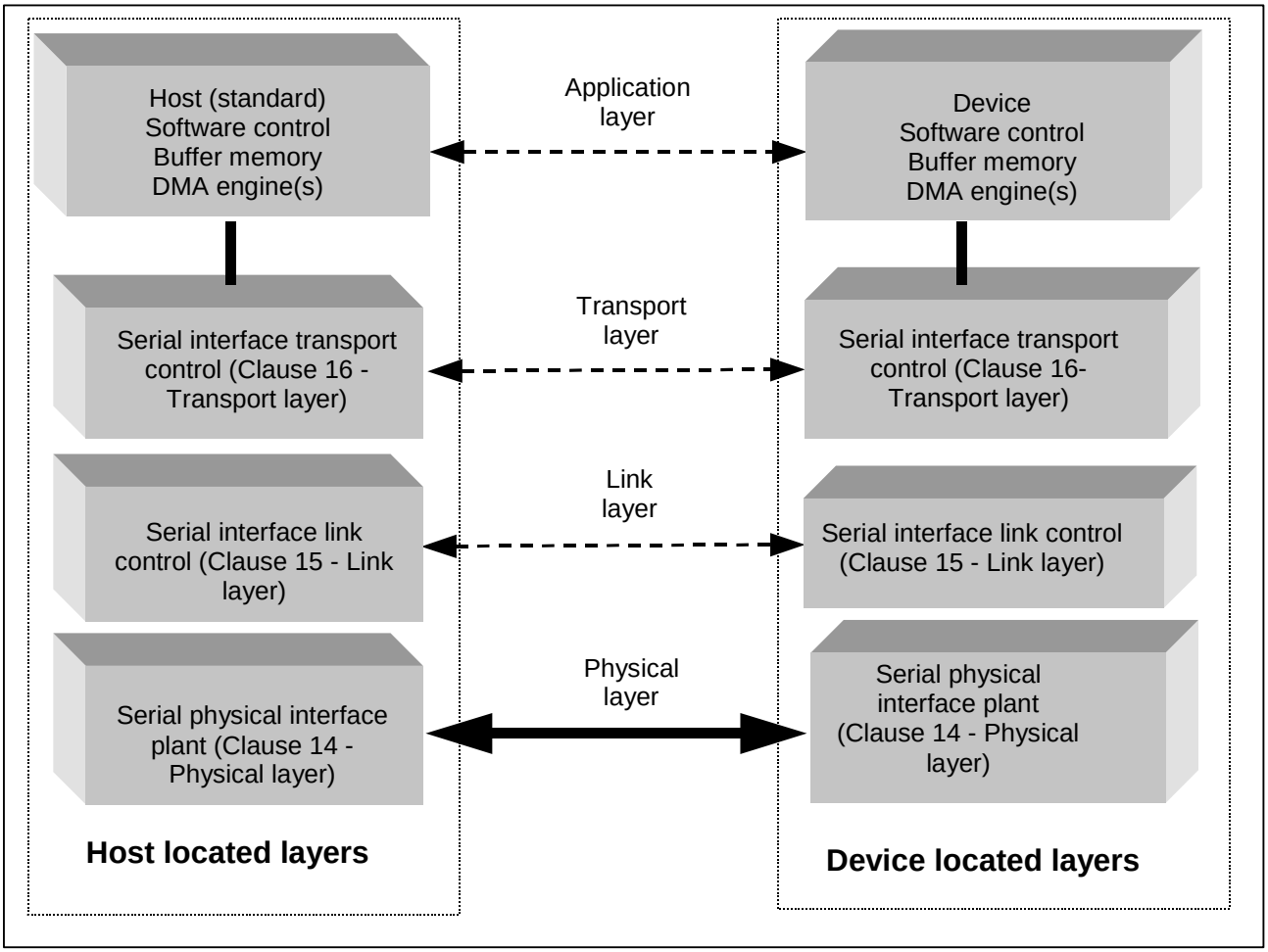


Figure 6 - Communication layers

The host interacts with the Transport control state machine through a register interface that is equivalent to that presented by a parallel implementation of an ATA host adapter. This allows host software to follow existing standards and conventions when accessing the register interface and follows standard command protocol conventions. The Transport control state machine breaks down these operations into a sequence of actions that are exchanged with the Link state machine.

13.3 Parallel ATA Emulation (Optional)

See Clause 18 for state diagrams.

See Clause 18.2 for additional information about nIEN.

Emulation of parallel implementations of ATA device behavior as perceived by the host BIOS or software driver, is a cooperative effort between the device and a serial interface host adapter hardware. The behavior of Command and Control Block registers, PIO and DMA data transfers, resets, and interrupts are all emulated.

The host adapter contains a set of registers that Shadow the contents of the traditional device registers, referred to as the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block. The Command Block registers are used for sending commands to the device or posting status from the device. These registers include the LBA High, LBA Mid, Device, Sector Count, Command, Status, Features, Error, and Data registers. The Control

Block registers are used for device control and to post alternate status. These registers include the Device Control and Alternate Status registers.

All serial implementations of ATA devices behave like Device 0 devices. Devices shall ignore the DEV bit in the Device field of received Register FIS's, and it is the responsibility of the host adapter to gate transmission of Register FIS's to devices, as appropriate, based on the value of the DEV bit.

After a reset or power-on, the host bus adapter emulates the behavior of a traditional ATA system during device discovery. Immediately after reset, the host adapter shall place the value 0x7Fh in its Shadow Status register and Shadow Alternate Status Register and shall place the value 0xFFh in all the other Shadow Command Block registers (0xFFFFh in the Data register). In this state the host bus adapter shall not accept writes to the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block. When the host Phy detects presence of an attached device, see 20.2.2.1 and 19.2.1, the host bus adapter shall set bit 7 in the Shadow Status register yielding the value 0xFFh or 0x80h, and the host bus adapter shall allow writes to the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block. If a device is present, the Phy shall take no longer than 10 ms to indicate that it has detected the presence of a device, and has set bit 7 in the Shadow Status register. The Serial implementation of ATA time limit of 10 ms is different than the parallel implementation of ATA. (See Volume 1). When the attached device establishes communication with the host bus adapter, it shall send a register FIS to the host, resulting in the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block being updated with values appropriate for the attached device.

The host adapter may present a Device 0-only emulation to host software, that is, each device is a Device 0, and each Device 0 is accessed at a different set of host bus addresses. The host adapter may optionally present a Device 0/Device 1 emulation to host software, that is, two devices on two separate serial ports are represented to host software as a Device 0 and a Device 1 accessed at the same set of host bus addresses.

13.3.1 Software reset

Issuing a software reset is performed by toggling the SRST bit in the Shadow Device Control register. The toggle period is no shorter than a minimum timeout (See Volume 2 Clause 11). As a result of the SRST bit changing in the Shadow Device Control register, host adapters shall issue at least two Register FISes to the device (one with the SRST bit set and a subsequent one with the SRST bit cleared). See 16.5.1 for a detailed definition of Register FIS. Although host software is required to toggle the SRST bit no faster than specified in parallel implementations of ATA, serial devices shall not rely on the inter-arrival time of received Register FISes also meeting this timing. Because of flow control, frame handshaking, and other protocol interlocks, serial devices may receive the resulting Register FISes back-to-back.

Due to flow control, protocol interlocks, power management state, or other transmission latencies, the subsequent Register frame transmission clearing the SRST bit during a software reset may be triggered prior to the previous Register FIS transmission having been completed. Host adapters are required to allow host software to toggle the SRST with the minimum timing specified for the parallel implementation of ATA, even if frame transmission latencies result in the first Register FIS transmission taking longer than specified in the parallel implementation. Host adapters are required to ensure transmission of the two resulting Register FISes to the device regardless of the transmission latency of each individual FIS.

13.3.2 Device 0-only emulation

A serial implementation of an ATA host adapter behaves the same as if a parallel implementation Device 0 only device were attached with no Device 1 present. It is the responsibility of the host adapter to properly interact with host software and present the correct behavior for this type of configuration. All serial implementations of ATA devices, therefore, need not be aware of Device 0/Device 1 issues and ignore parallel implementation I/O register information that deals with a secondary device. When the DEV bit in the Device register is set to one, selecting the non-existent Device 1, the host adapter shall respond to register reads and writes as specified for a Device 0 with no Device 1 present, as defined in the parallel implementation. This includes not setting the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register when Device 1 is selected, as described in the parallel implementation. When Device 0 is selected, the host adapter shall execute the serial implementation protocols for managing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents as defined in section 17.

When Device 0 is selected and the Command register is written in the Shadow Command Block, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in its Shadow Status register. The host adapter then transmits a frame to the device containing the new Control and Command Block register contents. When the Device Control register is written in the Shadow Control Block with a change of state of the SRST bit, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in its Shadow Status register and transmits a frame to the device containing the new register contents. Transmission of register contents when the Device Control register is written with any value that is not a change of state of the SRST bit shall not set the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register, and transmission of a frame to the device containing new register contents is optional. Similarly, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in its Shadow Status register to one when a hard reset (COMRESET) is requested or the SRST bit is set to one in the Device Control register, see Figure 95.

The device updates the contents of the host adapter Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block by transmitting a register frame to the host. This allows the device to set the proper ending status in the host adapter at the completion of a command or control request. Specific support is added to ensure proper timing of the DRQ and BSY bits in the Status register for PIO transfers.

Finally the host adapter provides an Interrupt Pending flag in the host adapter. This flag is set by the host adapter when the device sends a serial bus frame including the request to set the Interrupt Pending flag. The host adapter asserts the interrupt to the host processor any time the Interrupt Pending flag is set, the DEV bit is cleared to zero in the Shadow Device register, and the nIEN bit in the Shadow Device Control register is cleared to zero. The host adapter clears the Interrupt Pending flag any time a COMRESET is requested, the SRST bit in the Shadow Device Control register is set to one, the Shadow Command register is written and DEV is cleared to zero, or the Shadow Status register is read and DEV is cleared to zero. This allows the emulation of the host interrupt and its proper timing.

13.3.3 Device 0/Device 1 emulation (optional)

All devices behave as if they are Device 0 devices. However, the host adapter may optionally implement emulation of the behavior of a Device 0/Device 1 configuration by pairing two serial ports, and managing their associated Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block accordingly, as though they were a Device 0 and Device 1 at the same set of host bus addresses.

A host adapter that emulates Device 0/Device 1 behavior shall manage the two sets of Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (one set for each of the two devices) based on the value of the DEV bit in the Shadow Device register. Based on the value of the DEV bit, the host adapter shall direct accesses to the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block to the appropriate set of Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block in the correct device. It is the responsibility of the host adapter to ensure that communication with one or both of the attached devices is handled properly, and that information gets routed to the devices correctly. Each device shall process any communication with the host adapter as if it is targeted for the device regardless of the value of the DEV bit.

If a host adapter is emulating Device 0/Device 1 behavior, and there is no device attached to the cable designated as the Device 1 cable, the host adapter shall emulate Device 0 behavior with no Device 1 present as described in the parallel implementation.

When device 1 is selected and device 0 is responding for device 1 (See table 44 in vol 2), a host adapter with Device 0/Device 1 emulation generates the non-packet device response for both packet and non-packet devices.

13.3.3.1 Software reset

Host adapters that emulate Device 0/Device 1 behavior shall emulate parallel implementation behavior for software reset. Based on the Phy initialization status, the host adapter knows whether a device is attached to each of the two ports used in a Device 0/Device 1 emulation configuration. Device Control Register writes, that have the SRST bit set to one, shall result in the associated Shadow Control Block being written for each port to which a device is attached. The frame transmission protocol for each associated port executed, results in a Register FIS being transmitted to each attached device. Similarly, the subsequent write to the Device Control register that clears the SRST bit shall result in a Register FIS being sent to each attached device. The host adapter shall then await a response from each attached device (or timeout), and shall merge the contents of the Error and Status registers for the attached devices, in accordance with the parallel implementation, to produce the Error and Status register values visible to host software.

13.3.3.2 EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS

Host adapters that emulate Device 0/Device 1 behavior shall emulate the parallel implementation behavior for EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS (See Volume 1 Clause 6 and Volume 2 Clause 11). The host adapter shall detect the EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command being written to the Command register. Host adapter detection of the EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS command shall result in the associated Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block being written for each port to which a device is attached. A Register FIS is transmitted to each attached device. The host adapter shall then await a response from each attached device (or timeout), and shall merge the contents of the Error and Status registers for the attached devices, in accordance with the parallel implementation to produce the Error and Status register values visible to host software.

13.3.3.3 Restrictions and limitations

Superset capabilities that are unique to the Serial implementation of ATA and not supported by the parallel implementation of ATA are not required to be supported in Device 0/Device 1 emulation. Device 0/Device 1 emulation is recommended only in configurations where legacy software drivers are used and the number of attached devices exceeds the number of interfaces the legacy software supports.

14 Serial interface physical layer

14.1 Overview

This clause describes the physical layer of the serial implementation of ATA. Unless otherwise described, the information is normative. The information that is provided and marked informative is provided to help the reader better understand the normative clauses and should be taken as examples only. Exact implementations may vary.

14.1.1 List of services

1) Transmit a 1.5 Gb/sec differential NRZ serial stream at specified voltage levels
2) Provide matched termination at the transmitter
3) Serialize a 10, 20, 40, or other width parallel input from the Link for transmission
4) Receive a 1.5 Gb/sec differential NRZ serial stream
5) Provide a matched termination at the receiver
6) Extract data (and, optionally, clock) from the serial stream
7) Deserialize the serial stream
8) Detect the K28.5 comma character and provide a bit and word aligned 10, 20, 40, or other width parallel output
9) Provide specified OOB signal detection and transmission
10) Perform proper power-on sequencing and speed negotiation
11) Provide interface status to Link layer
12) Host/device present
13) Host/device absent
14) Host/device present but failed to negotiate communications
15) Optionally support power management modes
16) Optionally perform transmitter and receiver impedance calibration
17) Handle the input data rate frequency variation due to a spread spectrum transmitter clock
18) Accommodate request to go into Far-End retimed loopback test mode of operation when commanded

14.2 Connectors specifications

14.2.1 Overview

This clause covers the serial implementation of ATA connectors and cable assemblies. It defines the

1) Connector mating interfaces
2) Connector location on the device
3) Electrical, mechanical and reliability requirements of the connectors and cable assemblies
4) Connector and cable testing procedures

It does not define how the connector and cable assembly are implemented, such as

1) The mounting feature of the connectors
2) The cabling and cable terminations
3) The methods on how the PCB connects to other components of the system

14.2.1.1 General descriptions

A serial implementation of an ATA device may be either directly connected to a host or connected to a host through a cable.

For direct connection, the device plug connector, shown as (a) and (b) in Figure 7, is inserted directly into a host receptacle connector, illustrated as (g) in Figure 7. The device plug connector and the host receptacle connector incorporate features that enable the direct connection to be hot pluggable and blind mateable.

For connection via cable, the device signal plug connector, shown as (a) in Figure 7, mates with the signal cable receptacle connector on one end of the cable, illustrated as (c) in Figure 7. The signal cable receptacle connector on the other end of the cable is inserted into a host signal plug connector, shown as (f) in Figure 7. The signal cable wire consists of two twinax sections in a common outer sheath.

There is also a separate power cable for the cabled connection. A Serial ATA power cable includes a power cable receptacle connector, shown as (d) in Figure 7, on one end and may be directly connected to the host power supply on the other end or may include a power cable receptacle on the other end. The power cable receptacle connector on one end of the power cable mates with the device power plug connector, shown as (b) in Figure 7. The host end of the power cable is not covered in this standard.

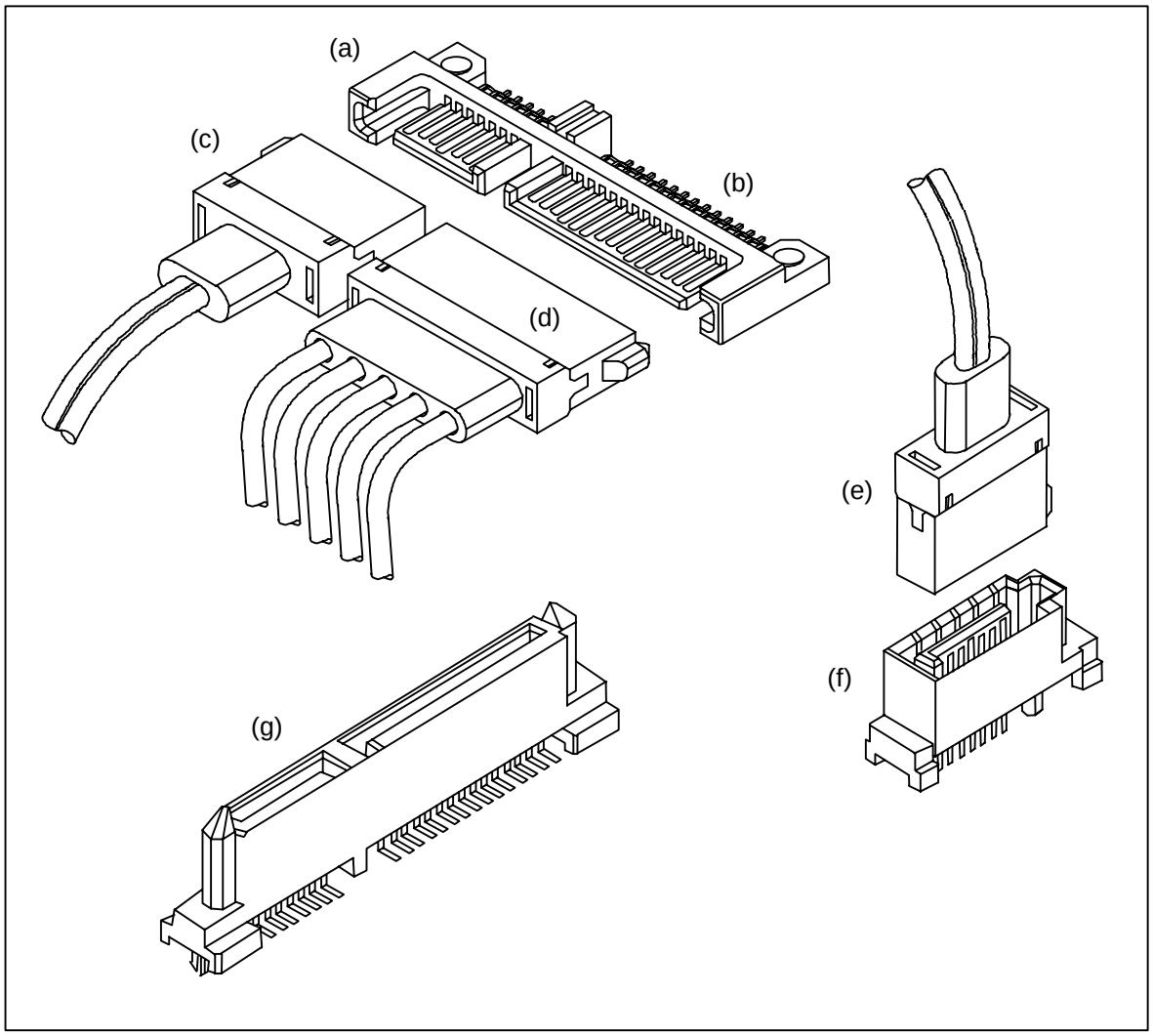


Figure 7 - Serial implementation connector examples

Illustrated above: (a) device signal plug segment or connector; (b) device power plug segment or connector; (c) signal cable receptacle connector, to be mated with (a); (d) power cable receptacle connector, to be mated with (b); (e) signal cable receptacle connector, to be mated with (f), the host signal plug connector; (g) host receptacle connector mating directly with device plug connector (a) & (b).

14.2.2 Connector drawings

14.2.2.1 Device plug connector

Figure 8, Figure 9 and Table 4 show the interface dimensions for the device plug connector with both signal and power segments.

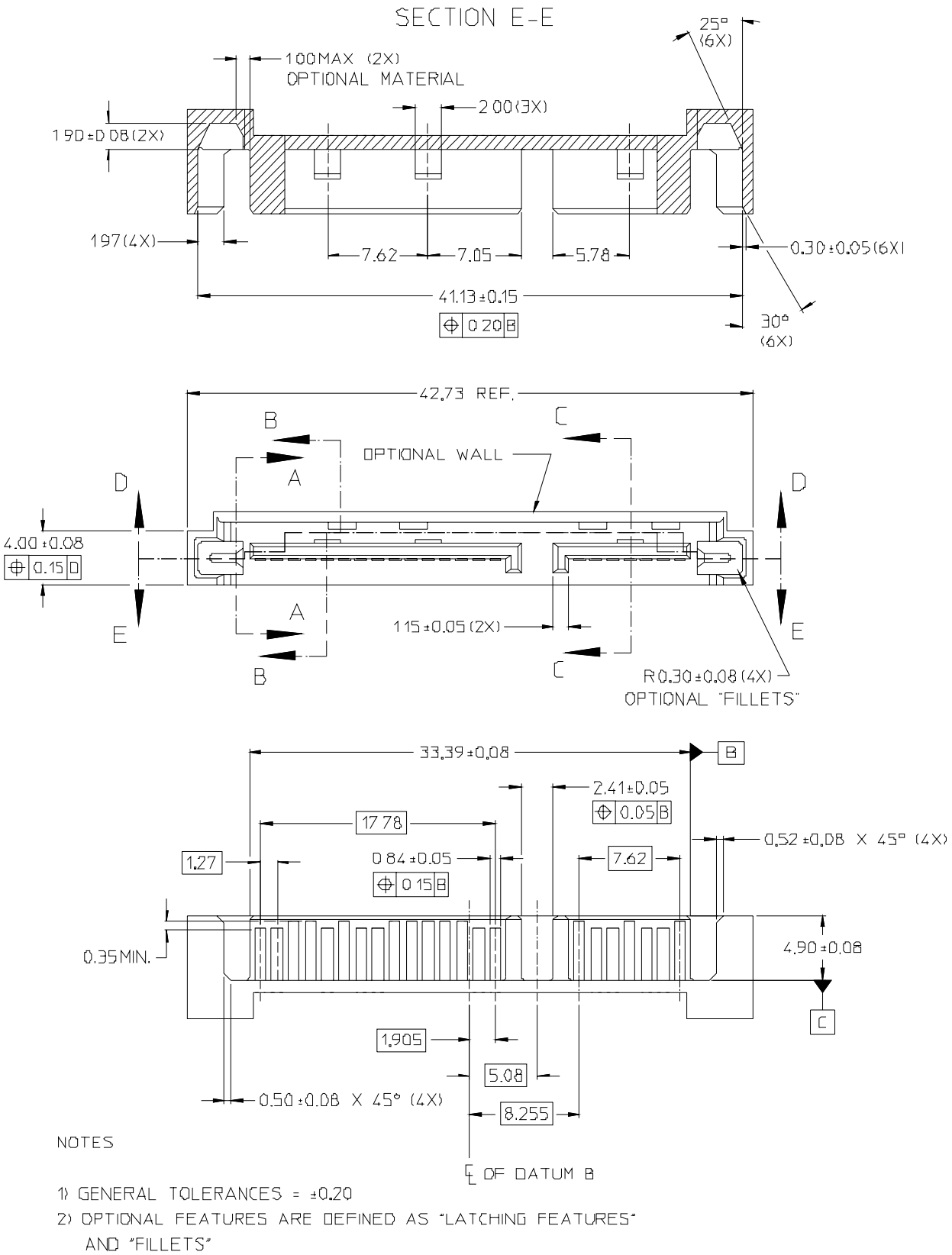


Figure 8 - Device plug connector part 1 of 2

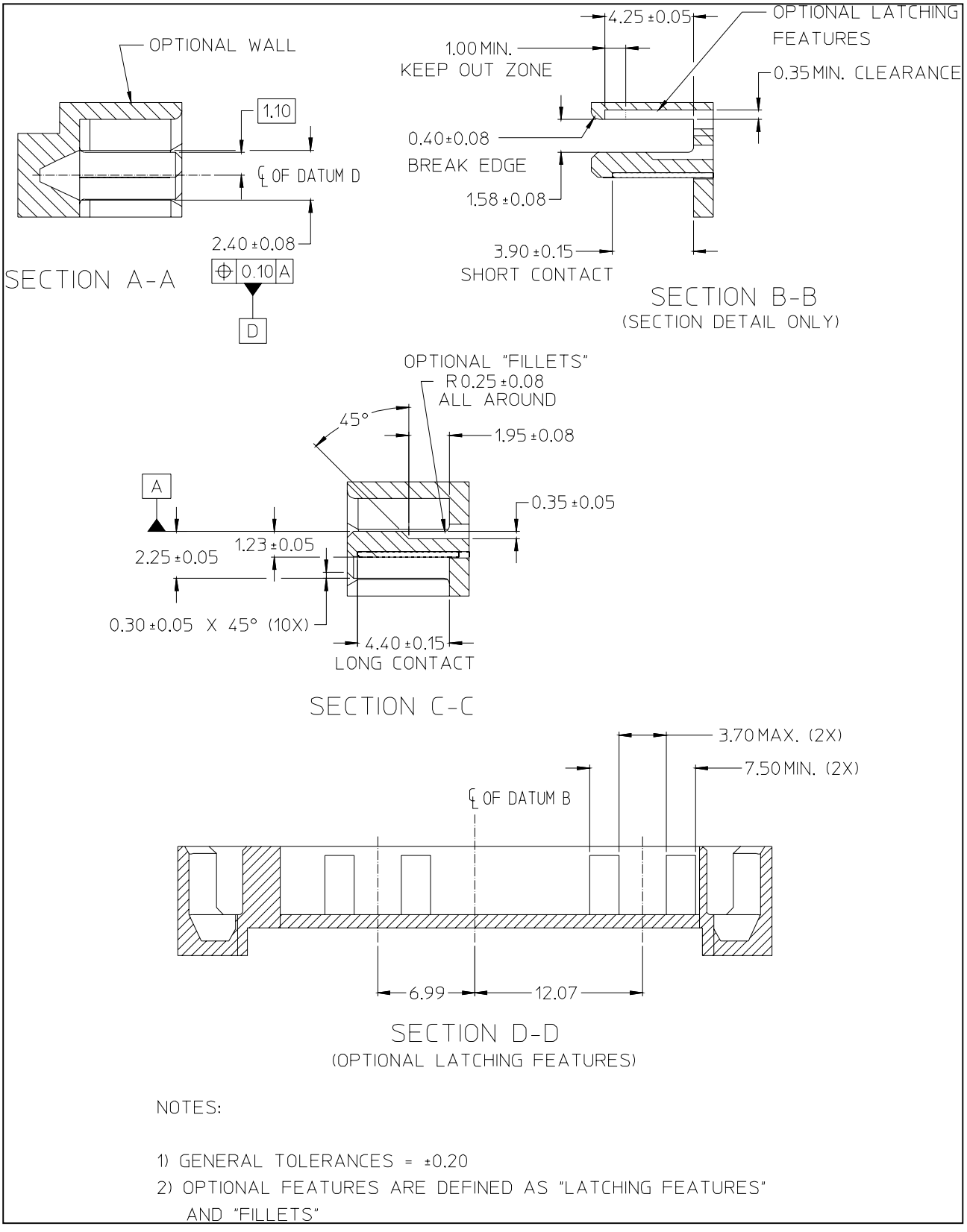


Figure 9 - Device Plug Connector part 2 of 2

14.2.2.2 Signal cable receptacle connector

Figure 10 shows the interface dimensions for the signal cable receptacle connector. There are two identical receptacles at the two ends of the Serial ATA cable assembly. The cable receptacle mates with either the signal segment of the device plug connector on the device, or the host plug connector on the host.

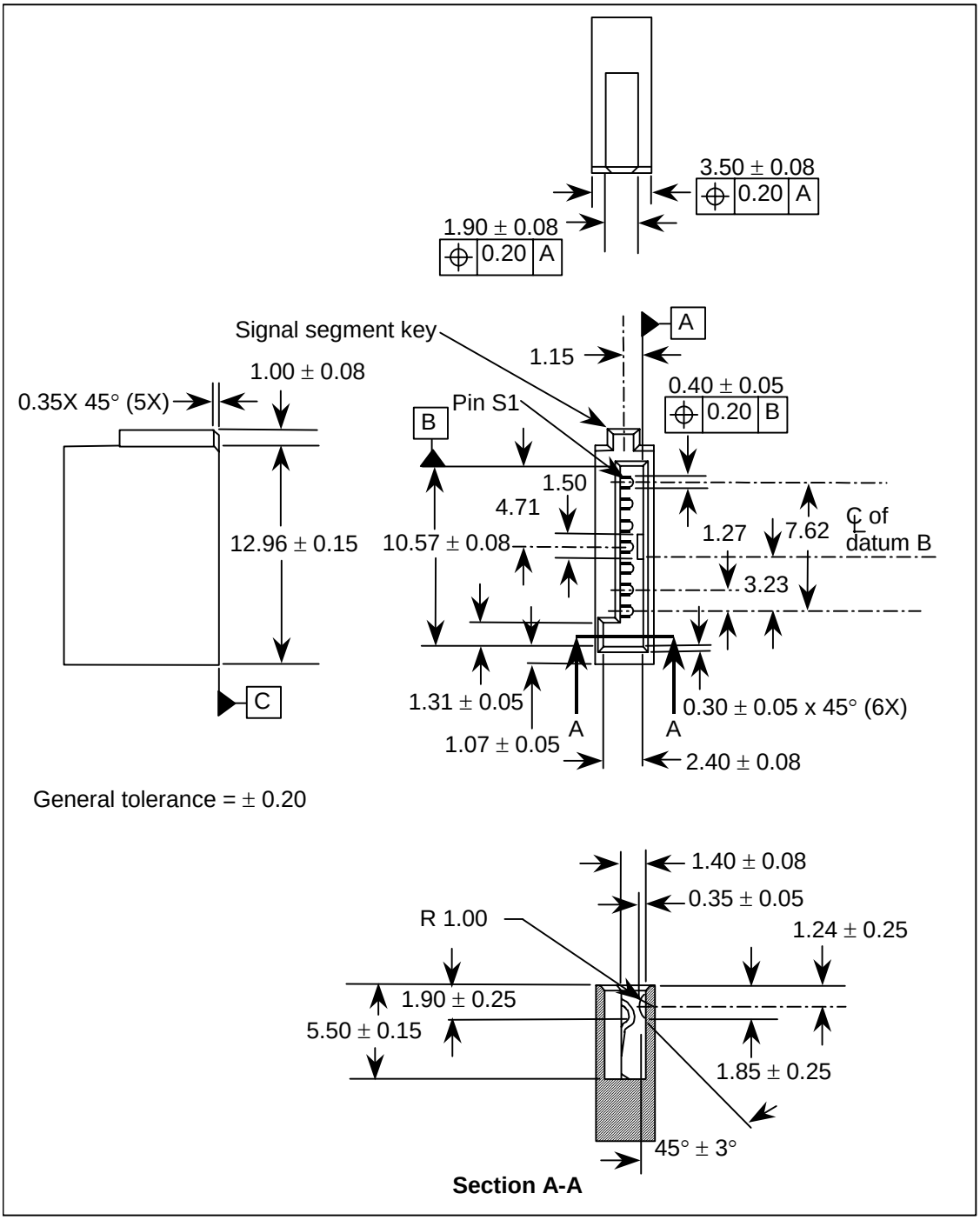


Figure 10 - Non-Latching Signal Cable receptacle connector interface dimensions

Figure 11 shows the additional dimensions for the optional Latching Signal Cable Receptacle.

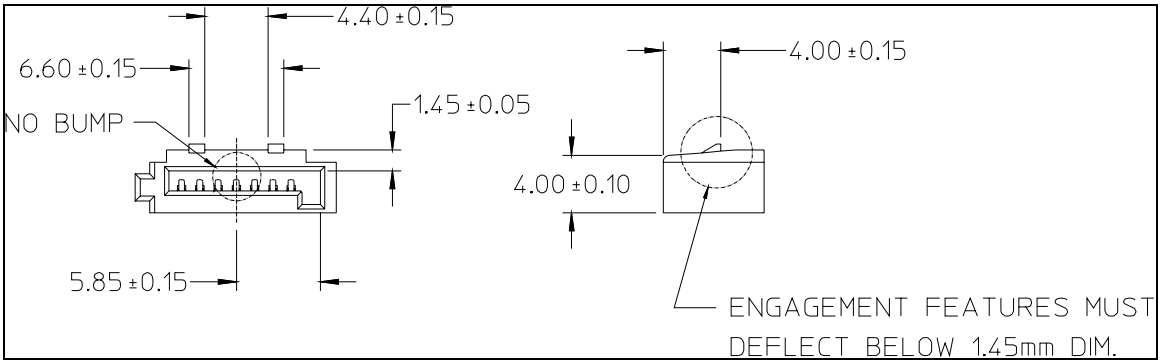


Figure 11 - Optional Latching Signal Cable Receptacle connector interface dimensions

14.2.2.3 Signal host plug connector

The signal host plug connector is to be mated with one end of the Serial ATA cable assembly. So the pinout of the host plug connector is the mirror image of the signal cable receptacle. shows the host plug connector interface definition.

For applications where multiple Serial ATA ports or connectors are stacked together on the host, there is a clearance or spacing requirement to prevent the cable assemblies from interfering with each other. shows the recommended clearance or spacing.

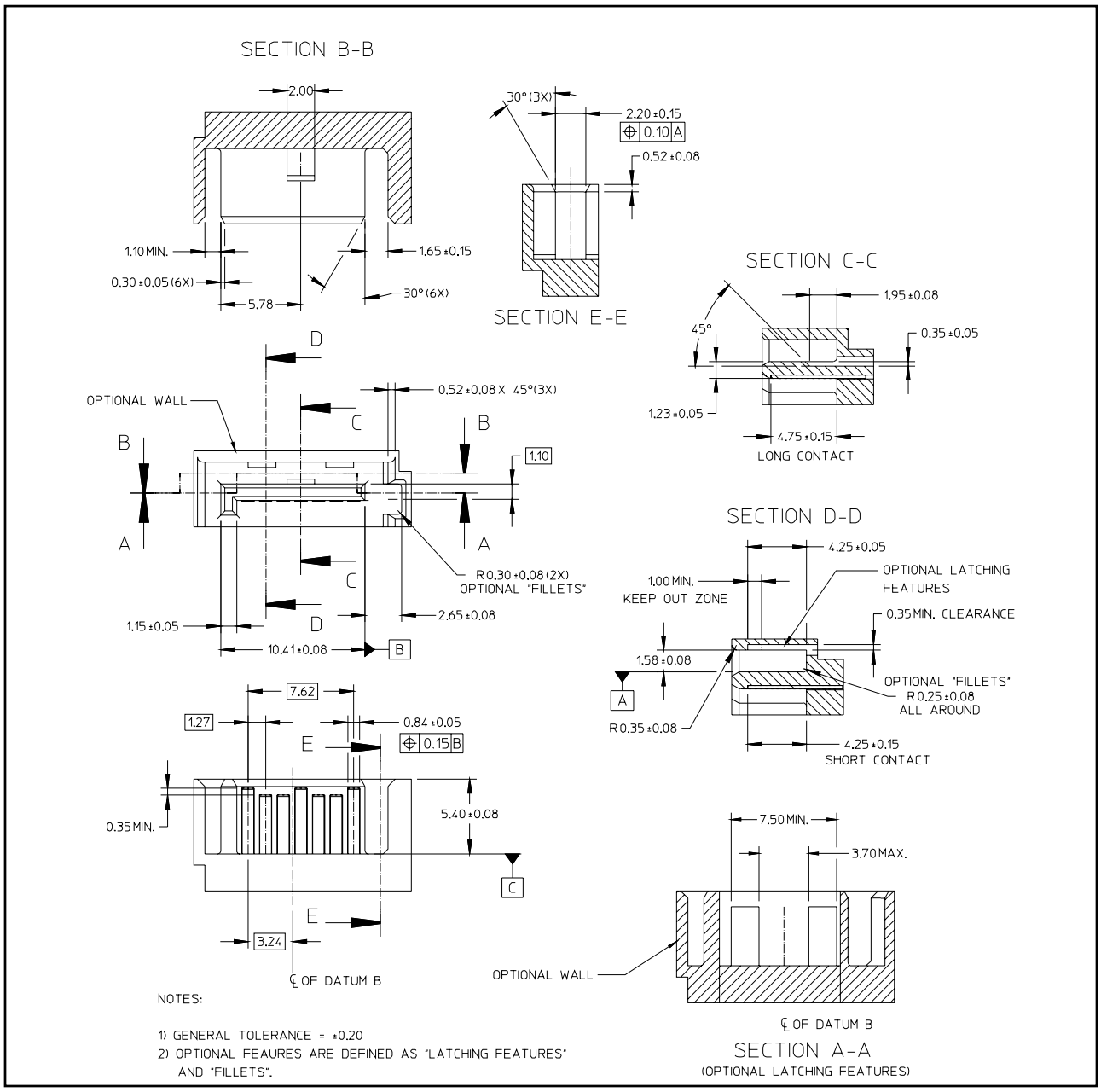


Figure 12 - Host plug connector interface dimension

14.2.2.4 Host receptacle connector

The host receptacle connector is to be blind-mated directly with the device plug connector. The interface dimensions for the host receptacle connector are shown in Figure 13. Note that dimension B allows two values: 8.15mm and 14.15mm. There are two levels of contacts in the host receptacle connector. The advancing ground contacts P4 and P12 mate first with the corresponding ground pins on the device plug

connector, followed by the engaging of the pre-charged power pins. An appropriate external retention mechanism independent of the connector is required to keep the host PCB and the device in place and is not specified by this standard. The host receptacle connector is not designed with any retention mechanism.

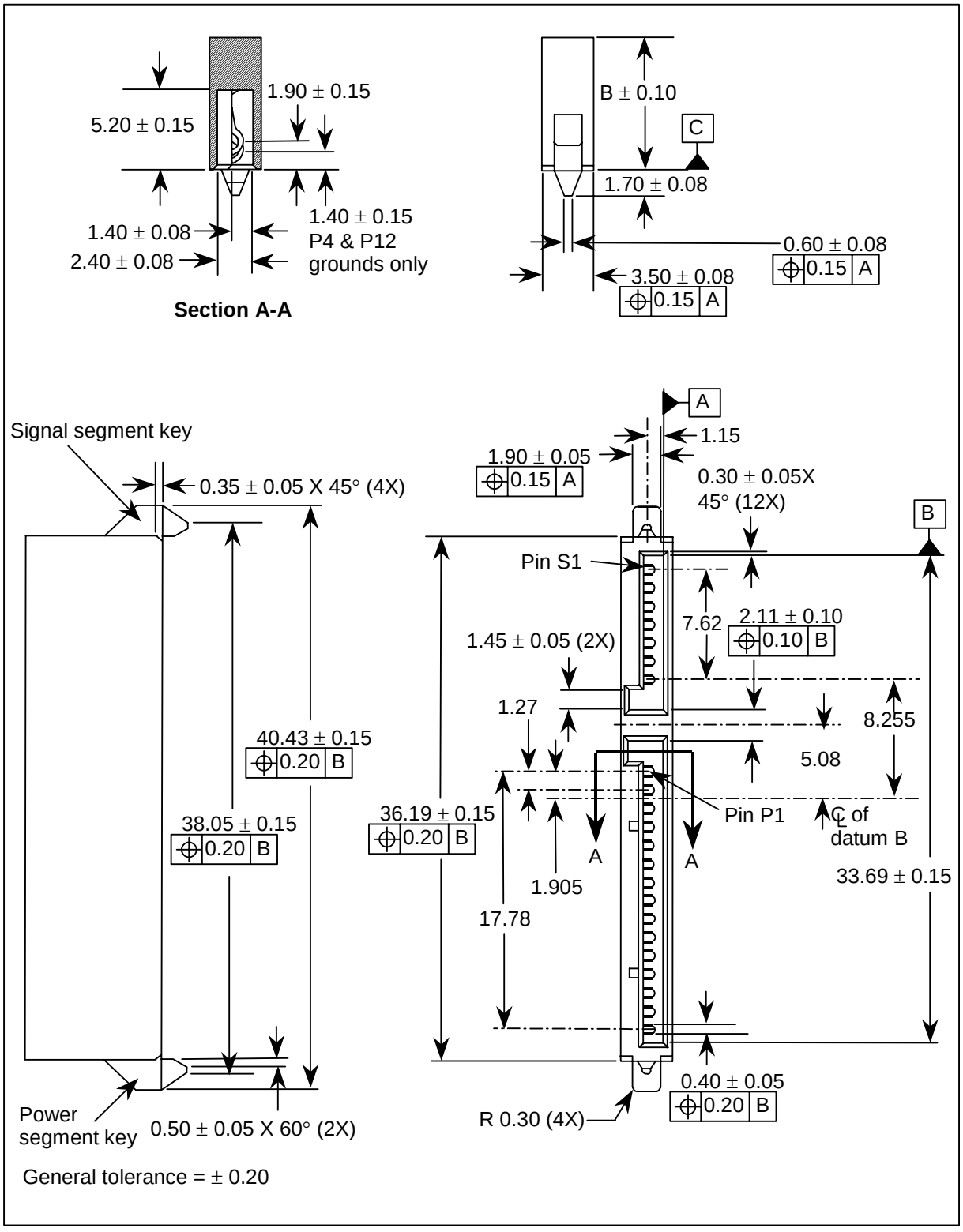


Figure 13 - Host receptacle connector interface dimensions

14.2.2.5 Power cable receptacle connector

The power cable receptacle connector mates with the power segment of the device plug, bringing power to the device. Figure 14 shows the interface dimensions of the power receptacle connector. The pinout of the connector is the mirror image of the power segment of the device plug shown in Table 4.

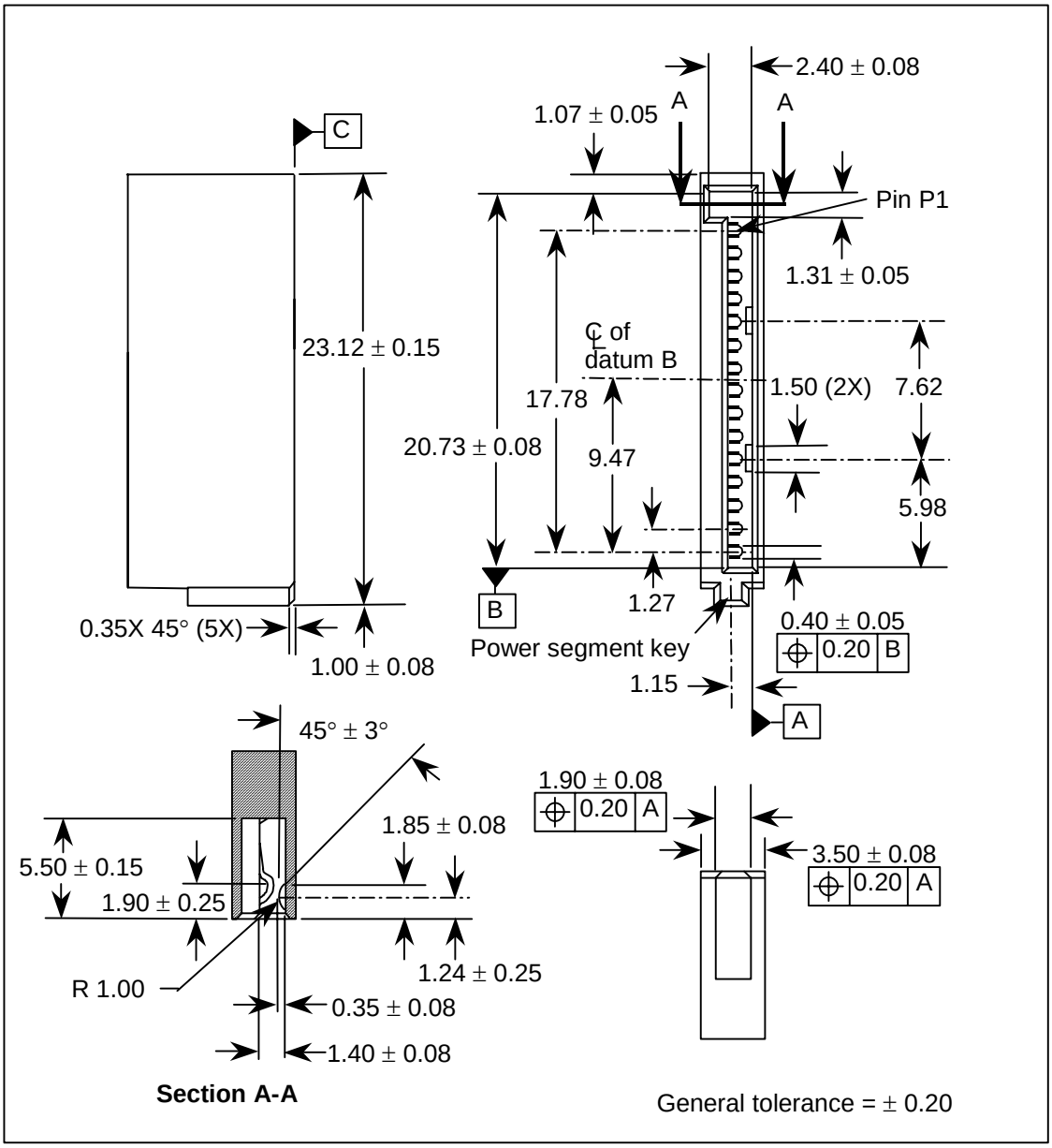


Figure 14 - Non-Latching Power receptacle connector interface dimensions

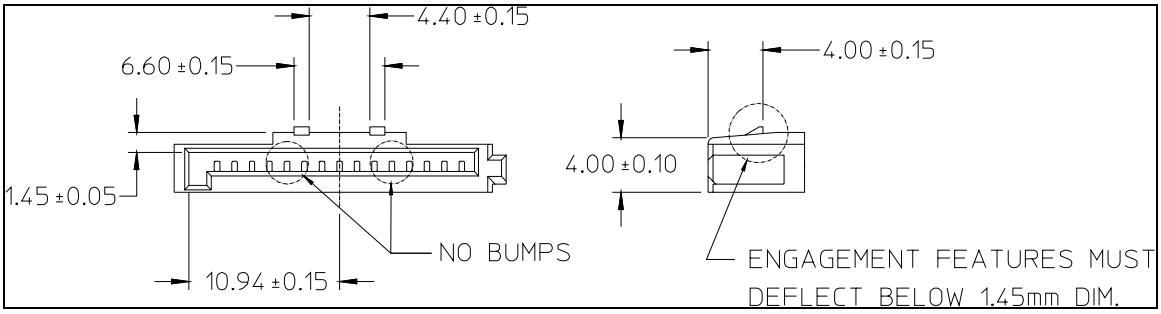


Figure 15 - Optional Latching Power Cable Receptacle

14.2.3 Connector pinouts

There are total of 7 pins in the signal segment and 15 pins in the power segment. The pin definitions are shown in Table 4.

Table 4 - Device plug connector pin definition

Signal segment key			
Signal segment	S1	Gnd	2nd mate
	S2	A+	Differential signal pair A from Phy
	S3	A-	
	S4	Gnd	2nd mate
	S5	B-	Differential signal pair B from Phy
	S6	B+	
	S7	Gnd	2nd mate
Signal segment "L"			
Central connector polarizer			
Power segment "L"			
Power segment	P1	V_{33}	3.3 V power
	P2	V_{33}	3.3 V power
	P3	V_{33}	3.3 V power, pre-charge, 2nd mate
	P4	Gnd	1st mate
	P5	Gnd	2nd mate
	P6	Gnd	2nd mate
	P7	V_5	5 V power, pre-charge, 2nd mate
	P8	V_5	5 V power
	P9	V_5	5 V power
	P10	Gnd	2nd mate
	P11	Reserved	1. The pin corresponding to P11 in the backplane receptacle connector is also reserved 2. The corresponding pin to be mated with P11 in the power cable receptacle connector shall be grounded
	P12	Gnd	1st mate
	P13	V_{12}	12 V power, pre-charge, 2nd mate
	P14	V_{12}	12 V power
	P15	V_{12}	12 V power
Power segment key			

Notes:

- The comments on the mating sequence in Table 3 apply to the case of backplane blind-mate connector only. In this case, the mating sequences are: (1) the ground pins P4 and P12; (2) the pre-charge power pins and the other ground pins; and (3) the signal pins and the rest of the power pins.
- There are three power pins for each voltage. One pin from each voltage is used for pre-charge in the backplane blind-mate situation.
- V_{33} pins shall be connected together in the device.
- V_5 pins shall be connected together in the device.

V_{12} pins shall be connected together in the device.

14.2.4 Backplane connector configuration and blind-mating tolerance

The maximum blind-mate misalignment tolerances are ±1.50 mm and ±1.00 mm, respectively, for two perpendicular axes illustrated in Figure 16. Any skew angle of the plug, with respect to the receptacle, reduces the blind-mate tolerances.

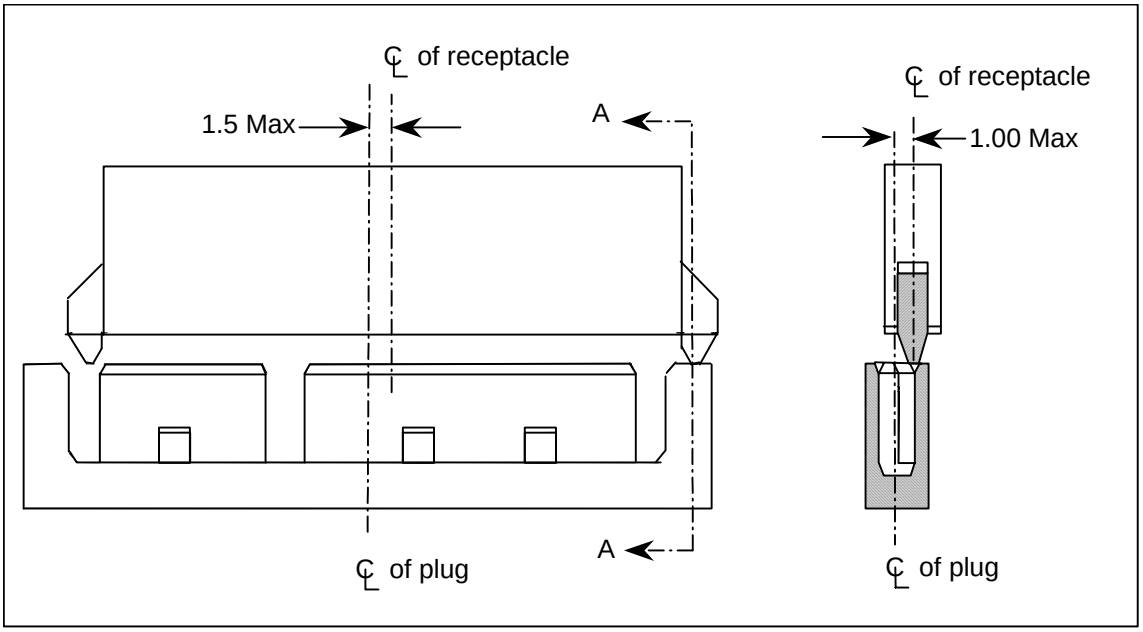


Figure 16 - Connector pair blind-mate misalignment tolerance

The device-to-backplane mating configuration is shown in Figure 17. Note that two values (8.45 and 14.45 mm) are allowed for dimension A

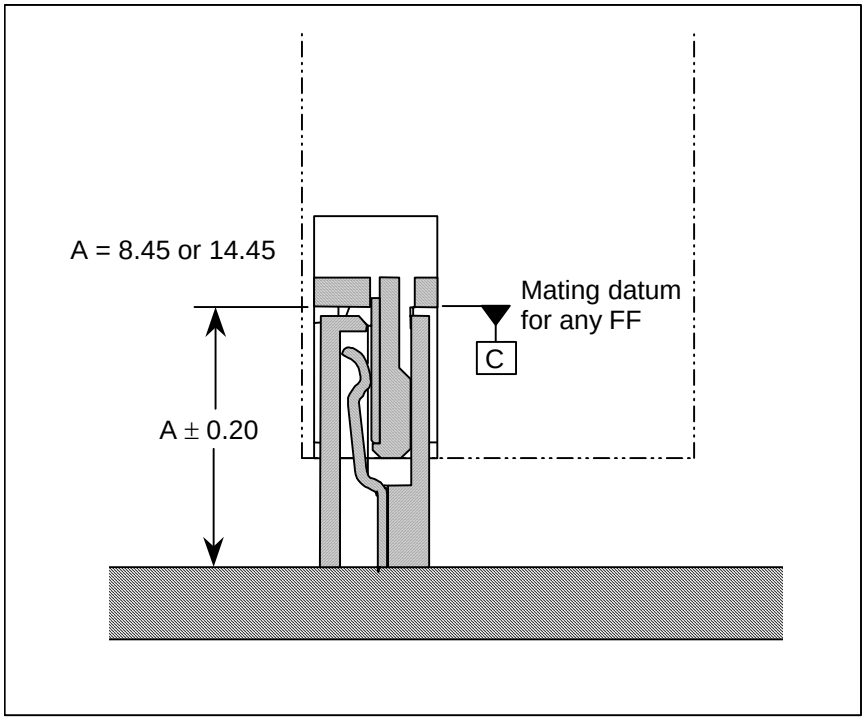


Figure 17 - Device-backplane mating configuration

14.2.5 Connector locations

The device connector location is defined to facilitate blind mating. Figure 18 and Figure 19 define the connector locations on 3.5” and 2.5” devices, respectively.

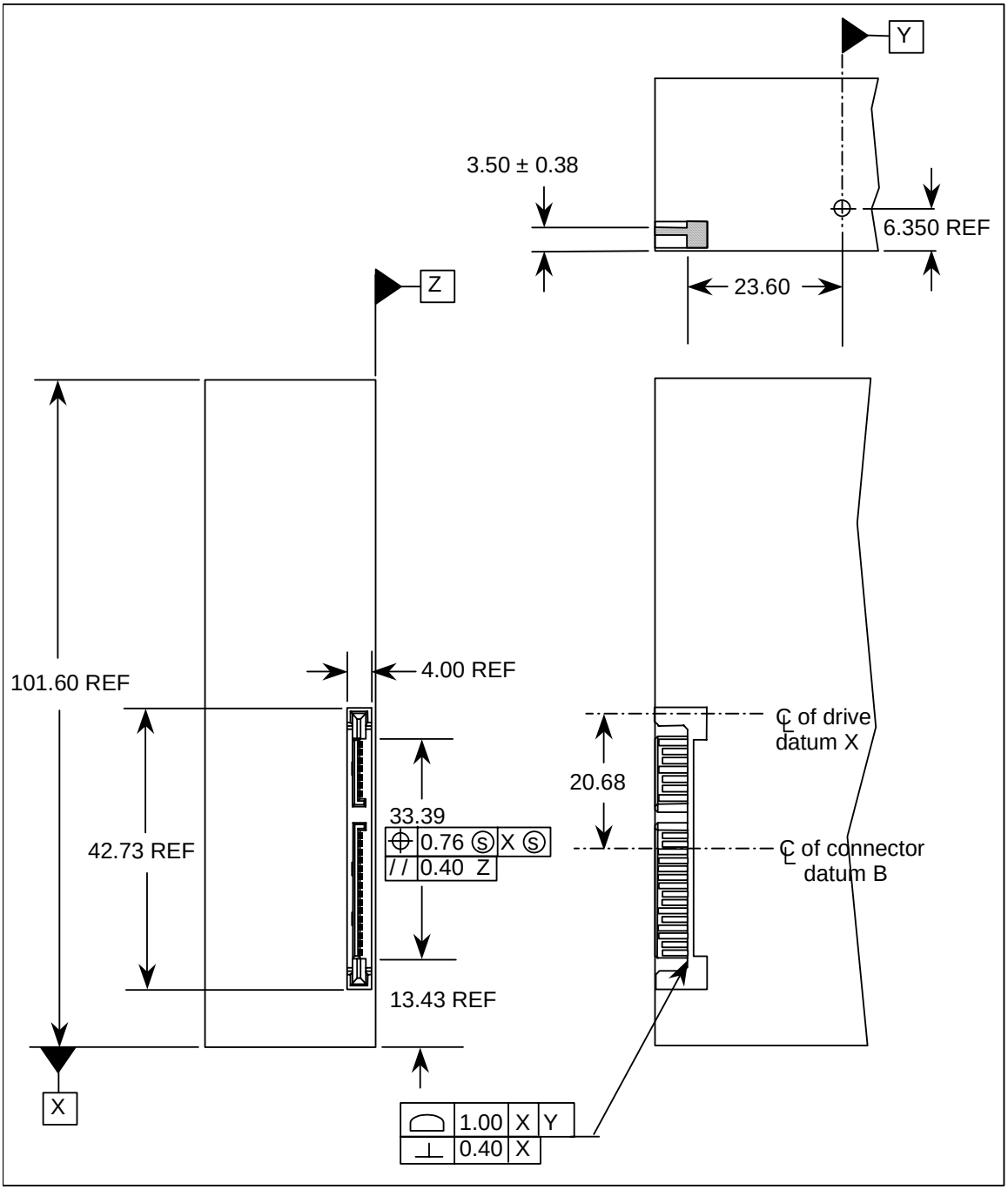


Figure 18 - Device plug connector location on 3.5” device

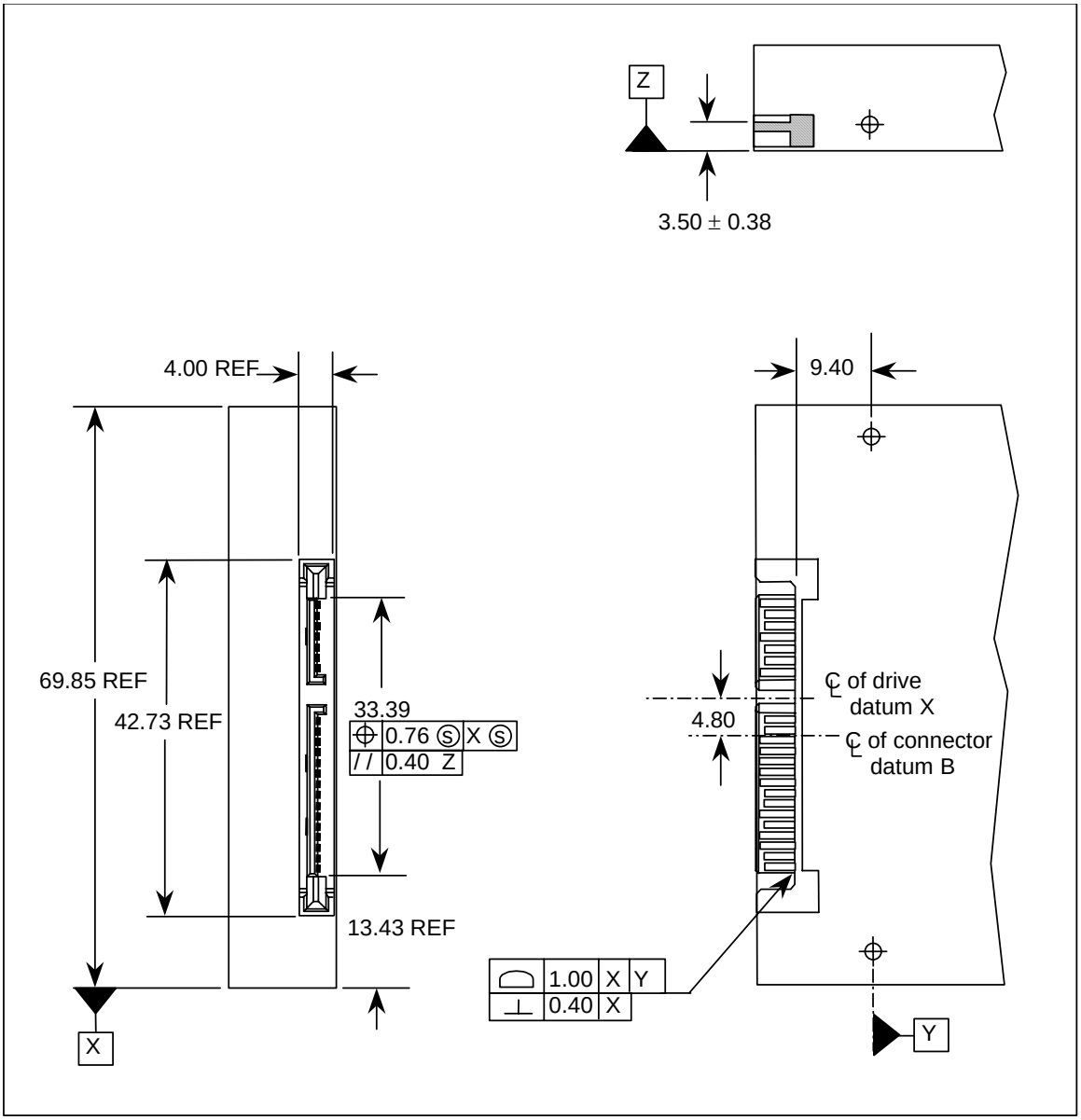


Figure 19 - Device plug connector location on 2.5” device

Recommended host plug connector clearance is shown in Figure 20.

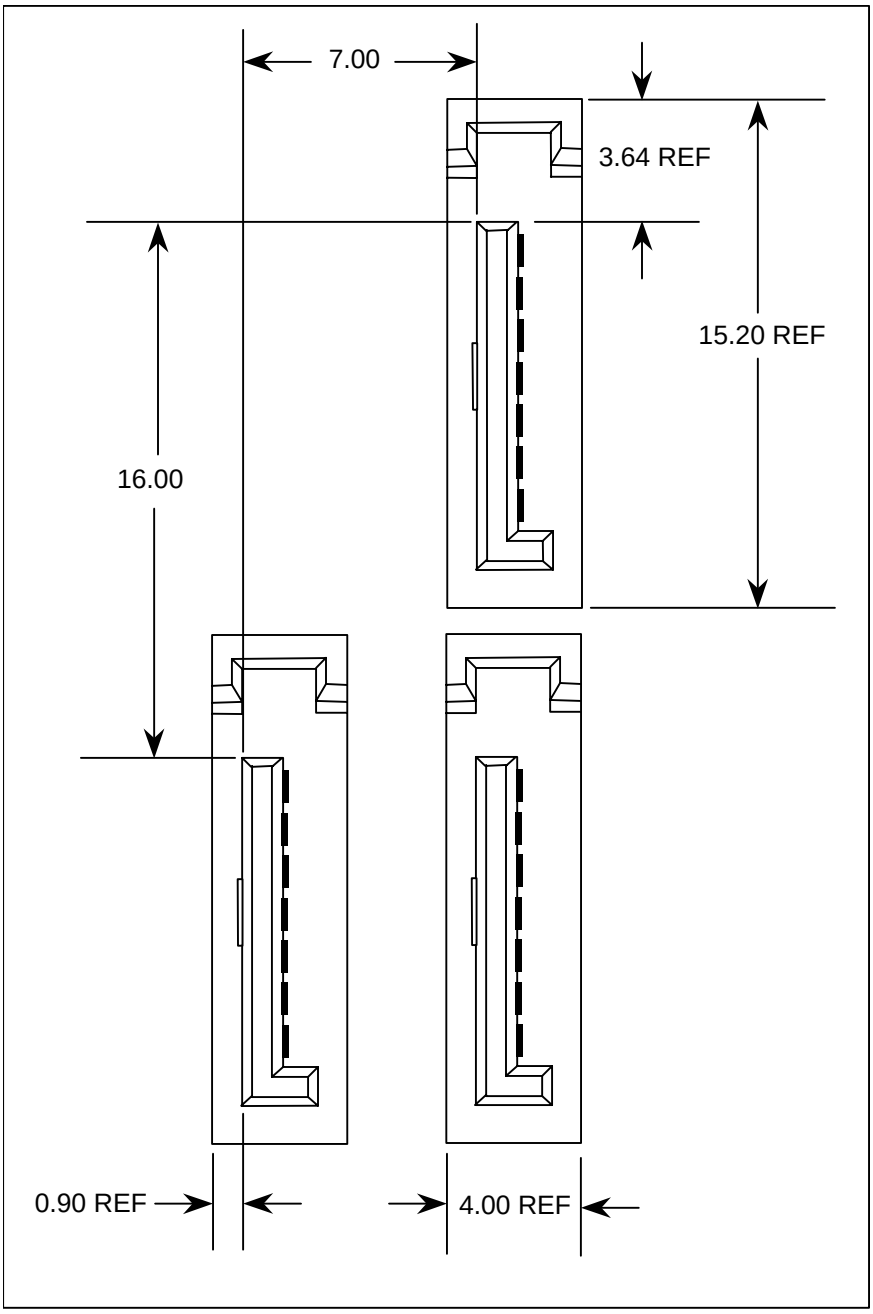


Figure 20 - Recommended host plug spacing for Non-Latching Connectors

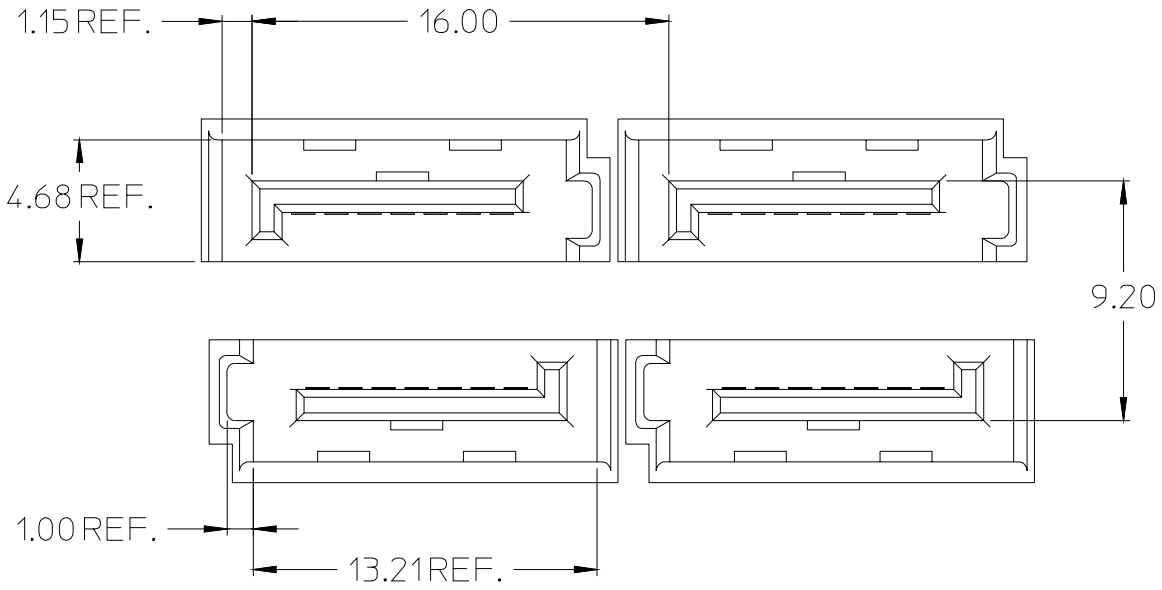


Figure 21 - Recommended host plug connector clearance & Orientation for Optional Latching Connectors

14.2.6 Connector conformance requirements

Unless otherwise specified, all measurements shall be performed within the following lab conditions:

- Mated
- Temperature: 15° to 35° C
- Relative Humidity: 20% to 80%
- Atmospheric Pressure: 650 mm to 800 mm of Hg

If an EIA (Electronic Industry Association) test is specified without a letter suffix in the test procedures, the latest approved version of that test shall be used.

14.2.6.1 Signal

The test board shall consist of differential traces (100 ohm+-5 ohm) over a ground plane (single ended 50 ohm +/-2.5 ohm).

Open or shorted traces with the same length as the input signal traces shall be provided to measure the system input risetime and to synchronize pulses. Traces for crosstalk measurements diverge from each other. Provisions for attenuation reference measurement shall also be provided.

Unless otherwise specified, the requirements in Table 5 are for the entire signal path from the host mated pair connector to the device plug mated pair connector, but not including PCB traces.

A cable assembly shall meet Table 5 electrical signaling parameters and requirements when tested with the above specified test fixture or equivalent.

Table 5 - Signal integrity requirements and test procedures

Parameter	Procedure	Requirements
Mated connector impedance	1. Minimize skew (See NOTE 1). 2. Set the Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) pulsers in differential mode with a positive going pulse (V+) and a negative going pulse (V-). Define a reflected differential trace: Vdiff = V+ - V-. 3. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference trace, verify an input risetime of 70 ps (measured 20%-80% Vp). Filtering may be used to slow the system down (See NOTE 2). 4. Connect the TDR to the sample measurement traces. Calibrate the instrument and system (See NOTE 3). 5. Measure and record the maximum and minimum values of the near end connector impedance.	100 ohm +/- 15%
Cable absolute impedance	1. Minimize skew (See NOTE 1). 2. Set the Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) pulsers in differential mode with a positive going pulse (V+) and a negative going pulse (V-). Define a reflected differential trace: Vdiff = V+ - V-. 3. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference trace verify an input risetime of 70 ps (measured 20%-80% Vp). Filtering may be used to slow the system down (See NOTE 2). 4. Connect the TDR to the sample measurement traces. Calibrate the instrument (See NOTE 3). 5. Measure and record maximum and minimum cable impedance values in the first 500 ps of cable response following any vestige of the connector response.	100 ohm +/- 10%

(continued)

Table 5 - Signal integrity requirements and test procedures *(continued)*

Parameter	Procedure	Requirements
Cable pair matching	1. Set the Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) to differential mode. 2. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference traces verify an input risetime of 70 ps (measured 20%-80% Vp). Filtering may be used to slow the system down (See Note 2). 3. Connect the TDR to the sample measurement traces. Calibrate the instrument and system (See Note 3). 4. Measure and record the single-ended cable impedance of each cable within a pair Measure and record maximum and minimum cable impedance values in the first 500 ps of cable response following any vestige of the connector response. 5. The parameter then equals $Line1_{imp}$ - $Line2_{imp}$.	+/- 5 ohm
Common mode impedance	1. Set two TDR pulsers to produce a differential signal. 2. Minimize skew (See Note 1). 3. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference trace verify an input risetime of 70 ps (measured 20-80%) Filtering may be used to slow the system down (See NOTE 2). 4. Calibrate the TDR (See NOTE 3). 5. Set both TDR pulsers to produce positive going pulses. 6. Measure the even mode impedance of the first pulser. Divide this by 2 to get the common mode impedance. 7. Do the same for the other pulser. Both values shall meet the requirement.	25 to 40 ohms

(continued)

Table 5 - Signal integrity requirements and test procedures *(continued)*

Parameter	Procedure	Requirements
Insertion loss	1. Produce a differential signal with the signal source (See Note 4). 2. Assure that skew between the pairs is minimized. (See Note 1). 3. Measure and store the insertion loss (IL) of the fixturing, using the IL reference traces provided on the board, over a frequency range of 10 to 4500 MHz. 4. Measure and record the IL of the sample, which includes fixturing IL, over a frequency range of 10 to 4500 MHz. 5. The IL of the sample is then the results of procedure 4 minus the results of Procedure 3.	6 dB max
Crosstalk: NEXT	1. Produce a differential signal with the signal source (See Note 1). 2. Connect the source to the risetime reference traces. Assure that skew between the pairs is minimized. (See Note 1). 3. Terminate the far ends of the reference trace with loads of characteristic impedance. 4. Measure and record the system and fixturing crosstalk. This is the noise floor. 5. Terminate the far ends of the drive and listen lines with loads of characteristic impedance. 6. Connect the source to the drive pair and the receiver to the near-end of the listen pair. 7. Measure the NEXT over a frequency range of 10 to 4500 MHz. 8. Verify that the sample crosstalk is out of the noise floor.	-26 dB

(continued)

Table 5 - Signal integrity requirements and test procedures *(continued)*

Parameter	Procedure	Requirements
Rise time	1. Minimize skew (See Note 1). 2. Set the Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) pulsers in differential mode with a positive going pulse (V+) and a negative going pulse (V-). Define a reflected differential trace on the receive channels as: Vdiff = V + -V-. 3. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference trace measure and record the input risetime. Verify that the input risetime is between 25-35 ps (measured 20%-80% Vp) see Note 2. 4. Remove the reflected trace definition. 5. Connect the TDR to the sample measurement traces. 6. Define a differential trace on the receive channels as: Vdiff = V + -V-. 7. Measure (measured 20%-80% Vp) and record the output risetime.	85 ps
Inter-symbol Interference	K - 28.5 signal source running at 1.5 Gb/sec. The average position of zero crossing should not move more than specified value.	50 ps maximum

(continued)

Table 5 - Signal integrity requirements and test procedures *(continued)*

Parameter	Procedure	Requirements
Intra-Pair Skew	1. Set one of the Time Domain Reflectometer (TDR) pulsers in differential mode with a positive going pulse (V+) and a negative going pulse (V-). 2. With the TDR connected to the risetime reference trace verify an input risetime of 70 ps (measured 20%-80% Vp). Filtering may be used to slow the system down (See Note 2). 3. Measure propagation delay (50% of Vp) of each line in a pair single-endedly. The skew equals the difference between each single ended propagation delay.	10 ps max

NOTES –

1: Time domain measurement equipment allows for delay adjustment of the pulses so launch times can be synchronized. Frequency domain equipment requires the use of phase matched fixturing. The fixturing skew shall be verified to be <1 ps on a TDR.

2: The system risetime is to be set via equipment filtering techniques. The filter risetime is significantly close to the stimulus risetime. Therefore the filter programmed equals the square root of ($t_{r(observed)}$)squared - ($t_{r(stimulus)}$)squared. After filtering, verify the risetime is achieved using the risetime reference traces on the PCB fixture.

3: Calibrate the system by substituting either precision 50 ohm loads or precision air lines (also terminated in 50 ohm loads) for the test fixture. This places the calibration plane directly at the input interface of the test fixture.

4: A network analyzer is preferred. If greater dynamic range is required a signal generator/spectrum analyzer may be used. Differential measurements require the use of a four port network analyzer although baluns or hybrid couplers may be used.

(concluded)

14.2.6.2 Housing and contact electrical requirements

Table 6 is the connector housing and contact electrical requirements.

Table 6 - Housing and contact electrical parameters, test procedures, and requirements

Parameter	Procedure	Requirement
Insulation resistance	EIA 364-21 After 500 VDC for 1 minute, measure the insulation resistance between the adjacent contacts of mated and unmated connector assemblies.	1000 MΩ minimum
Dielectric withstanding voltage	EIA 364-20 Method B Test between adjacent contacts of mated and unmated connector assemblies.	The dielectric shall withstand 500 VAC for 1 minute at sea level.
Low level contact resistance (LLCR)	EIA 364-23 Subject mated contacts assembled in housing to 20 mV maximum open circuit at 100 mA maximum	• Initially 30 mΩ maximum. • Resistance increase 15 mΩ maximum after stress
Contact current rating (Power segment)	• Mount the connector to a test PCB • Wire power pins P1, P2, P8, and P9 in parallel for power • Wire ground pins P4, P5, P6, P10, and P12 in parallel for return • Supply 6 A total DC current to the power pins in parallel, returning from the parallel ground pins (P4, P5, P6, P10, and P12) • Record temperature rise when thermal equilibrium is reached	1.5 A per pin minimum. The temperature rise above ambient shall not exceed 30° C at any point in the connector when contact positions are powered. The ambient condition is still air at 25° C.

14.2.6.3 Mechanical and environmental requirements

Table 7 lists the mechanical parameters and requirements, while Table 8 the environmental and reliability tests and requirements:

Table 7 - Mechanical test procedures and requirements

Test description	Procedure	Requirement
Visual and dimensional inspections	EIA 364-18 Visual, dimensional and functional per applicable quality inspection plan.	Meets product drawing requirements.
Cable pull-out	EIA 364-38 Condition A Subject a Serial ATA cable assembly to a 40 N axial load for a min of one minute while clamping one end of the cable plug.	No physical damage
Cable flexing	For round cable: EIA 364-41 Condition I Dimension x=3.7 x cable diameter, 100 cycles in each of two planes. For flat cable: EIA 364-41 Condition II 250 cycles using either Method 1 or 2.	No physical damage. No discontinuity over 1 μs during flexing.
Insertion force	EIA 364-13 Measure the force necessary to mate the connector assemblies at a max. rate of 12.5 mm (0.492") per minute.	45 N maximum
Removal force	EIA 364-13 Measure the force necessary to unmate the connector assemblies at maximum rate of 12.5 mm (0.492") per minute.	10 N minimum
Durability	EIA 364-09 50 cycles for internal cabled application; 500 cycles for backplane/blindmate application. Test done at a maximum rate of 200 cycles per hour.	No physical damage. Meet requirements of additional tests as specified in the test sequence in 14.2.6.5.

Table 8 - Environmental parameters, test procedures, and requirements

Parameter	Procedure	Requirement
Physical shock	EIA 364-27 Condition H Subject mated connectors to 30 g's half-sine shock pulses of 11 msec duration. Three shocks in each direction applied along three mutually perpendicular planes for a total of 18 shocks. See Note 2.	No discontinuities of 1 μs or longer duration. No physical damage.
Random vibration	EIA 364-28 Condition V Test letter A Subject mated connectors to 5.35 g's RMS. 30 minutes in each of three mutually perpendicular planes. See Note 2.	No discontinuities of 1 μs longer duration.
Humidity	EIA 364-31 Method II Test Condition A. Subject mated connectors to 96 hours at 40° C with 90% to 95% RH.	See Note 1
Temperature life	EIA 364-17 Test Condition III Method A. Subject mated connectors to temperature life at +85°C for 500 hours.	See Note 1.
Thermal shock	EIA 364-32 Test Condition I. Subject mated connectors to 10 cycles between -55° C and +85° C.	See Note 1.
Mixed Flowing Gas	EIA 364-65, Class 2A Half of the samples are exposed unmated for seven days, then mated for remaining seven days. Other half of the samples are mated during entire testing.	See Note 1.

NOTE –

1. Shall meet EIA 364-18 Visual Examination requirements, show no physical damage, and shall meet requirements of additional tests as specified in the test sequence in 14.2.6.5.
2. Shock and vibration test fixture is to be determined by each user with connector vendors.

An additional requirement is listed in Table 9.

Table 9 - Additional requirement

Parameter	Procedure	Requirement
Flammability	UL 94V-1	Material certification or certificate of compliance required with each lot to satisfy the Underwriters Laboratories or better.

This standard does not attempt to define the connector and cable assembly reliability requirements that are considered application-specific. It is up to users and their connector suppliers to determine if additional requirements are needed to satisfy the application needs. For example, a user who requires a SMT connector may want to include additional requirements for SMT connector reliability.

14.2.6.4 Sample selection

Samples shall be prepared in accordance with applicable manufacturers' instructions and shall be selected at random from current production. Each test group shall provide at least 100 data points for a good

statistical representation of the test result. For a connector with greater than 20 pins, a test group shall consist of a minimum of five connector pairs. From these connector pairs, a minimum of 20 contact pairs per mated connector shall be selected and identified. For connectors with less than 20 pins, choose the number of connectors sufficient to provide 100 data points.

14.2.6.5 Test sequence

Table 10 shows the connector test sequences for five groups of tests.

Table 10 - Connector test sequences

Test group →	**A**	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**
Test or examination ↓					
Examination of the connector(s)	1, 5	1, 9	1, 8	1, 8	1, 7
Low-Level Contact Resistance (LLCR)	2, 4	3, 7	2, 4, 6		4, 6
Insulation resistance				2, 6	
Dielectric withstanding voltage				3, 7	
Current rating			7		
Insertion force		2			
Removal force		8			
Durability	3	4 (See note)			2 (See note)
Physical shock		6			
Vibration		5			
Humidity				5	
Temperature life			3		
Reseating (manually unplug/plug three times)			5		5
Mixed Flowing Gas					3
Thermal shock				4	
NOTE – Preconditioning, 20 cycles for the 50-durability cycle requirement, 50 cycles for the 500-durability cycle requirement. The insertion and removal cycle is at the maximum rate of 200 cycles per hour.					

For example, in Test Group A, one would perform the following tests:

1. Examination of the connector(s)
2. LLCR
3. Durability
4. LLCR
5. Examination of the connector(s)

14.3 Cable assemblies

Figure 22 illustrates how signals and grounds are assigned in direct connect and cabled configurations.

The Serial ATA cable consists of four conductors in two differential pairs. If necessary, the cable may also include drain wires to be terminated to the ground pins in the Serial ATA cable receptacle connectors. The cable size may be 30 to 26 AWG. The cable maximum length is one meter.

This standard does not specify how to construct a standard cable for a serial implementation of ATA. Any cable that meets the electrical requirements is acceptable . The connector and cable vendors have the flexibility to choose cable constructions and termination methods based on performance and cost considerations. An example cable construction is given in Annex J.2 for informative purposes only.

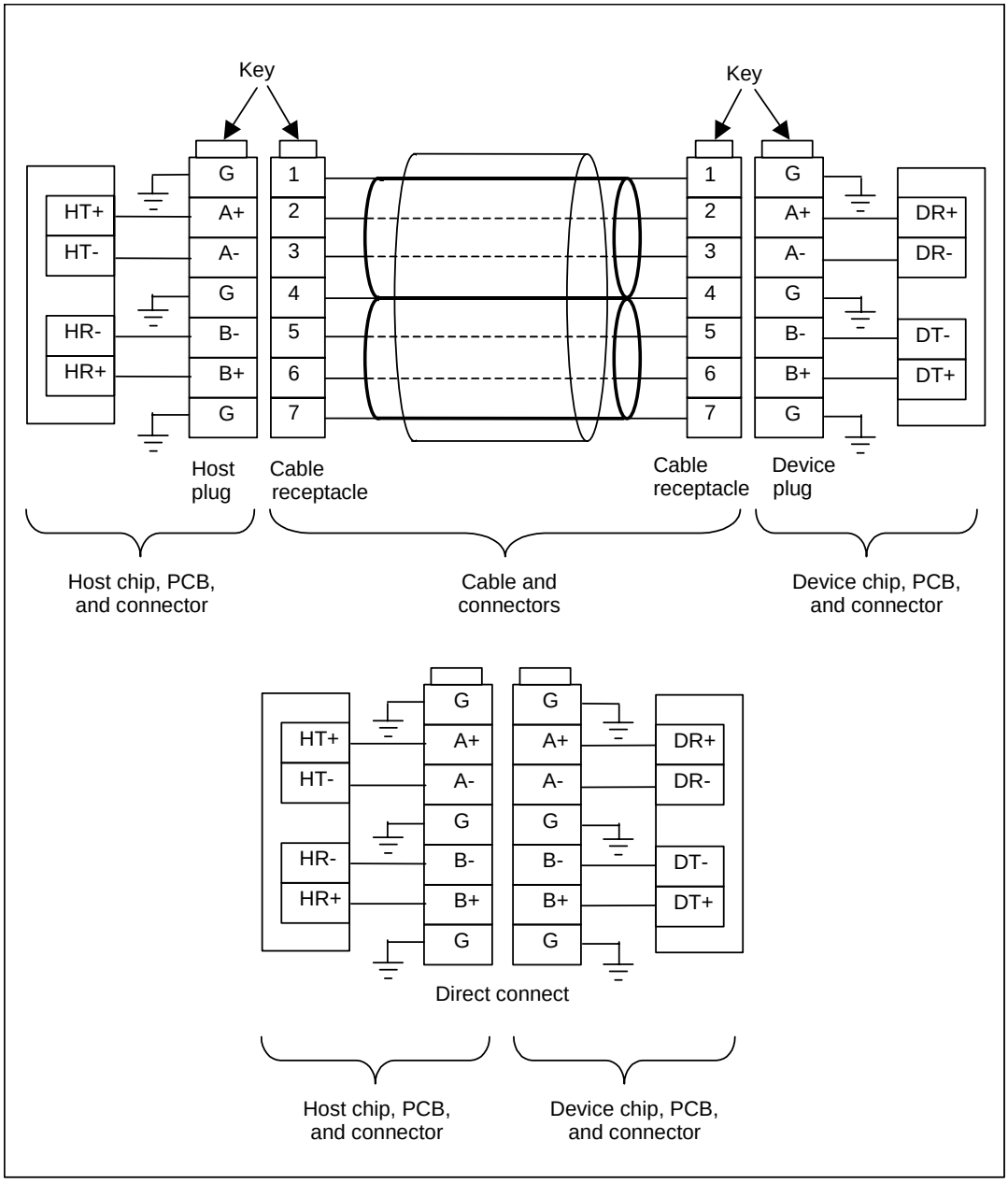


Figure 22 - Signals and grounds assigned in direct connect and cabled

The power receptacle connector is terminated onto 18 AWG wires that are connected to the system power supply or other power sources. Five 18 AWG wires may be used, with three wires terminated to the nine power pins for the three voltages, while the remaining two wires to the six ground pins.

14.4 Phy (Physical layer electronics)

14.4.1 Physical plant as a system

A number of components of the system make up the system's performance, not just by mutually exclusively summing up the low-level error parameters detected at the bottom of the protocol stack can be made, but also including the retry algorithms.

There are two basic classes of errors that will affect the bit-error rate performance that have to be considered: bit-errors, and burst-errors. The following clause addresses the methodology, for in-system bit-error-rate computations.

For in-system testing, the criteria for testing to a specified maximum frame error rate will be addressed, using a set of reference frames, defined by a specific set of ordered test patterns within the frame.

14.4.1.1 Test bit patterns and sequence characteristics

Test bit sequences are those bit sequences that are transmitted onto a serial link, so as to test the serial implementation of ATA interface's jitter compliance, as well as its derived communications-link performance.

Jitter is classified as Random Jitter (RJ), and Deterministic Jitter (DJ). RJ is Gaussian in nature, adds on a power basis, and is measured as an RMS value. DJ is also referred to as systematic jitter, and usually is introduced into the serial link due to duty cycle distortion, power supply noise, substrate noise, or inter-symbol interference.

We will focus on various types of bit sequence patterns that emphasize low/high transition density patterns, as well as low/high frequency patterns.

1) Low transition density patterns are those patterns containing long runs of ones and zeroes, intended to create inter-symbol interference by varying the excursion times at either extreme of the differential signaling levels.

2) High transition density patterns are those patterns containing short runs of ones and zeroes, also intended to create inter-symbol interference.

3) Bit patterns that contain low frequency spectral components are a good test of the input high pass filter circuitry, more specifically, introduced amplitude signal distortion, due to a marginal design. These bit patterns are a better test than those bit patterns having high frequency spectral content.

4) Simultaneous switching outputs patterns are achieved by transmitting alternating 1's complement bit patterns (10-bits) for recovery at the receiver. These patterns create worst case power supply, or chip substrate, noise, and are achieved by selecting bit test pattern sequences that maximize current extremes at the recovered bit pattern parallel interface. These patterns induce Ldi/dt noise into substrate supply, and are a good test of the receiver circuitry.

5) The intent of random bit patterns is to provide those patterns containing sufficiently broad spectral content, and minimal peaking, that may be used for both component, and system level architecture measurement of jitter output, and bit-error-rate performance. These patterns are also intended to be the common baseline pattern stimulus, for system/component vendor comparative testing, attributing the Transmit jitter output measurement to the component performance, and not to the spectral profile of the data pattern used.

These patterns may be used for testing of the serial implementation of ATA interfaces. The patterns are classified in two categories:

1) Non-compliant patterns
2) Compliant patterns

Non-compliant patterns are those patterns that are used for baseline jitter measurements, and assessment of signal quality, given specified stimulus. These patterns do not comply to the required FIS formats, but are just a repeated selected set of 8b/10b characters.

Compliant patterns are those specified patterns that do contain the leading SOF primitive, the specified pattern as data content, and trailing CRC, and EOF primitives. There is no suppression of the dual-consecutive ALIGN primitive during stimulus with this class of pattern.

The test patterns illustrated in the following clauses are indicated to start with negative running disparity for illustrative purposes only in order to convey the encoded 10b patterns transmitted on the wire for each sequence.

14.4.1.2 Low transition density bit pattern sequences

Low transition density bit patterns, as shown in Figure 23 below, are those patterns containing long runs of ones and zeroes. These patterns create high frequency jitter due to inter-symbol interference, emphasized further when part of the composite pattern described in a later clause.

–	D17.7(-) F1h 100011 0111	D30.7(+) FEh 100001 1110	D7.1(+) 27h 000111 1001	D14.7(+) EEh 011100 1000	D30.7(-) FEh 011110 0001	D7.6(-) C7h 111000 0110	D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100

D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100	D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100	D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100	D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100

Byte group (D30.3(+), D30.3(-)) repeat n times (n>12)

D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100	D30.3(-) 7Eh 011110 0011	D30.3(+) 7Eh 100001 1100	D3.7(-) E3h 110001 1110	D28.7(+) FCh 001110 0001	D3.7(-) E3h 110001 1110	D28.7(+) FCh 001110 0001

Figure 23 - Low transition density pattern

14.4.1.3 High transition density bit pattern sequences

High transition density patterns are those patterns containing short runs of ones and zeroes, also intended to create high frequency jitter due to inter-symbol interference, emphasized further when part of the composite pattern described in Figure 24 . For this case there are two sub-classes of high-transition density patterns:

1) Half-rate high transition density bit pattern sequence
2) Quarter-rate high transition density bit pattern sequence

An combination of the two sub-classes of high-transition density bit patterns will be used to represent high transition density test pattern.

–	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010	D21.5(-) B5h 101010 1010

Repeat n times (n>12)

D24.3(-) 78h 110011 0011	D24.3(+) 78h 001100 1100	D24.3(-) 78h 110011 0011	D24.3(+) 78h 001100 1100	D24.3(-) 78h 110011 0011	D24.3(+) 78h 001100 1100	D24.3(-) 78h 110011 0011	D24.3(+) 78h 001100 1100

Byte group (D24.3(+), D24.3(-)) repeat n times (n>12)

D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101	D10.2(-) 4Ah 010101 0101

Repeat n times (n>12)

D25.6(-) D9h 100110 0110	D6.1(-) 26h 011001 1001	D25.6(-) D9h 100110 0110	D6.1(-) 26h 011001 1001	D25.6(-) D9h 100110 0110	D6.1(-) 26h 011001 1001	D25.6(-) D9h 100110 0110	D6.1(-) 26h 011001 1001

Repeat n times (n>12)

Figure 24 - Half-rate / quarter-rate high transition density pattern

14.4.1.4 Low frequency spectral content bit pattern sequences

Bit patterns that contain low frequency spectral components are a good test of the input high pass filter circuitry, as far as introduced signal distortion, due to a marginal design.

–	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010

Repeat n times (n>12)

D11.7(-) EBh 110100 1110	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101

Byte group (D30.3(+), D30.3(-)) repeat n times (n>12)

D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.2(+) 54h 001011 0101	D20.7(+) F4h 001011 0001	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010	D11.5(-) ABh 110100 1010

Figure 25 - Low frequency spectral content pattern

14.4.1.5 Simultaneous switching outputs bit pattern sequences

Simultaneous switching outputs bit pattern sequences induce Ldi/dt noise into substrate supply, and is a good test of the receiver circuitry. This is achieved by transmitting alternating 1's complement bit patterns (10-bits) for recovery at the receiver.

D31.3(-)	D31.3(+)	D31.3(-)	D31.3(+)	D31.3(-)	D31.3(+)	D31.3(-)	D31.3(+)
7Fh	7Fh	7Fh	7Fh	7Fh	7Fh	7Fh	7Fh
101011 0011	010100 1100	101011 0011	010100 1100	101011 0011	010100 1100	101011 0011	010100 1100

Repeat n times (n>512)

Figure 26 - Simultaneous switching outputs patterns

14.4.1.6 Composite bit pattern sequences

For the measurement of jitter, patterns should combine low frequency, low transition density, and high transition density patterns. All these combinations, but the Low Frequency Spectral Content class can be performed for relatively short test time intervals, for jitter and performance measurements.

The lower frequency pattern needs to be tested for longer interval periods to be able to observe the lower frequency jitter effects on the interface.

By including a composite set of the cited patterns, the resultant composite pattern stresses the interface components within the link with low and high frequency jitter, tests for component, and various amplitude distortions due to marginal receiver input circuitry, or interface components.

Simultaneous switching outputs patterns

Repeat n times (n>512)

Half-rate/quarter-rate high transition density pattern

Repeat n times (n>12)

Low transition density pattern

Repeat n times (n>12)

Simultaneous switching outputs patterns

Repeat n times (n>12)

Low frequency spectral content pattern

Repeat n times (n>512)

Half-rate/quarter-rate transition density pattern

Repeat n times (n>12)

Figure 27- Composite patterns

14.4.2 Bit error rate testing - Informative

In order to get a fair assessment of bit-error-rate performance, bit-errors, as well as burst errors, should be considered separately.

Note that a single bit error has a high probability of causing a byte-wise error, or an 8b/10b code violation error, due to the 8b/10b encoding, thus a single bit error translates to 8-bits or 10-bits of error. Each of these occurrences are classified as "byte errors", and these form the basis for the bit-error-rate calculations.

A missing or an extra bit detected by the receiver translates into a series of errors that span across multiple byte boundaries until bit realignment via ALIGN primitives (See 14.6), worst case. This series of errors are defined as burst errors.

A third type of byte-wise error exists where, an entire byte is not received, this type of error is not classified differently, as it will cause a burst error whose span may be limited by higher-layer protocol transmission conventions, at the cost of additional overhead ALIGN primitive sequences.

A single error may result in several related errors occurring closely together which in turn may result in multiple bit-error counts. A character might have a single bit error in it that causes a code-violation error. A disparity error might occur on a following character, caused by the same single error. To prevent multiple error counts from a single cause, the following concept of an error burst is introduced:

- An “error burst” is defined as a time period 1.5 +/- 0.5 seconds long, during which one or more invalid transmission words are recognized. This time may be exceeded due to infrequent unusual conditions.

- Only one error in an error burst shall be counted toward the error-burst-rate threshold.

14.4.2.1 Error-burst-rate-thresholding measurement - Informative

The error-burst-rate thresholding process is designed to detect an increased error rate before performance degradation becomes serious. Measurement of error-burst-rate thresholding is accomplished by counting the number of error bursts that occur in a 5-minute period, when tested with the compliant frame patterns, defined by 14.4.1.2, but with the N parameters extended so as to achieve the maximum frame length. When the count equals a specific number, the threshold is exceeded. This specific number is called the “threshold error count.”

An error-burst-rate threshold is detected when 15 error bursts occur in a 5-minute period. The required accuracy of the 5-minute period mentioned above is +/-0.3 seconds. Reaching the threshold error count of 15 in a 5-minute period is a positive indication of the interface failing the error rate requirements and may be used to terminate testing. However, not reaching the threshold should not be taken as indication that the interface is passing without also confirming that the frame error rate requirements are satisfied using statistically sound measurement techniques. Being under the threshold error count after a 5-minute period should therefore not be used as a measure of system compliance.

The error-burst-rate counting process will be restarted when PHY Ready state is entered, and when an amount of time has elapsed after a error-burst-rate threshold is detected. After an error-burst-rate threshold is detected, at least 15 additional error bursts will occur before the next error-burst-rate threshold is detected. In addition, the error-burst counting process may be restarted whenever the 5-minute time period has expired even though an error-burst-rate threshold is not reached.

14.4.2.2 Bit-error-rate measurements - Informative

Bit error rates if measured and computed, byte-wise, should be no greater than 10^{-12} bit-errors when tested with the reference test patterns, cited in 14.4.1.1

Note that the Frame-Error Rate measurements constitute the basis for the applicable test requirements for this standard.

14.4.3 Frame error rate testing

Frame error rate testing is the measure of link performance using all the intermediate circuit blocks in the chain from low-level Physical layer, Link Layer, through Transport Layer. Error detection is at the frame level using the CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) error detection mechanism, and respective reporting to the higher layer levels.

14.4.3.1 Frame error-rate patterns

Frame error rate patterns contain the elements of the test bit patterns and sequence of patterns, so as to thoroughly be able to test the serial interface in system, using the higher level CRC error detection/reporting from the lower protocol level layers to the Application level layer.

The frame patterns shall be comprised of the set of the Composite Patterns, cited in 14.4.1.6, but with the N parameters extended so as to achieve the maximum frame length.
Refer to section 14.7.1 for a description of Loopback Testing configurations.

14.4.3.1.1 Loopback test

Test patterns cited in this clause used as stimulus that may be used to verify the serial interface compliance and signal integrity, using the following test models:

1) Non-compliant test patterns for jitter measurements, physical connection media tests, and electrical parameter testing.
2) Compliant test patterns for frame error rate testing and in-system tests.

14.4.4 Test requirements - non-compliant patterns

Electrical parameters of 14.4.10 shall be verified using the following set of test patterns, using the BIST FIS, Far-End Transmit Mode, described in 16.5.6:

1) Low transition density bit patterns, as per 14.4.1.2.
2) High transition density bit patterns as per 14.4.1.3
3) Low frequency spectral component bit patterns as per 14.4.1.4.
4) Simultaneous switching outputs bit patterns as per 14.4.1.5.

14.4.5 Test requirements - compliant frame patterns

The frame error rates specified in 14.4.11 shall be tested for compliance when subjected to any implementation-determined worst-case compliant patterns, as well as the following set of compliant patterns:

1) Compliant low transition density bit patterns, as per 14.4.1.2
2) Compliant high transition density bit patterns as per 14.4.1.3
3) Compliant low frequency spectral component bit patterns as per 14.4.1.4
4) Compliant simultaneous switching outputs bit patterns as per 14.4.1.5
5) Compliant composite patterns as per 14.4.1.6

Where the qualifying prefix term "compliant" signifies transmission of the cited pattern encapsulated in the data portion of the Frame Information Structure, and used in a the serial implementation of ATA operational transmission context.

Note that the cited patterns should appear on the wire, and the N parameters of the reference patterns shall be extended to achieve the maximum frame length. These compliant patterns contain the necessary SOF leading primitive, the calculated CRC, and the trailing EOF primitive, as shown in the figure below:

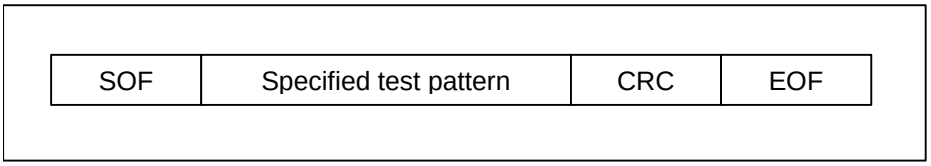


Figure 28- Compliant test patterns

14.4.6 Test requirements - loopback

As specified in 14.7.1, only one of the three types of Loopback test schemes form part of this standard: Far-End Retimed Loopback. Both Far-end and Near-End Analog Loopback schemes are classified as Vendor Specific, thus will not have specified test requirements.

14.4.6.1 Test requirements - loopback - far-end retimed

Generation of loopback test patterns is optional and vendor specific. As this loopback scheme needs a specific action from the far-end connected interface, this mode is entered by way of the BIST FIS described in 16.5.6.

This loopback test is intended for a relatively quick assessment of interface integrity, accommodating an in-system test capability,

In this Far-End Retimed Loopback mode, the interface shall operate without a CRC error for a sustained minimum period of 1000 ms at Gen1 speed, using the following set of compliant reference frame patterns if the test pattern generation is supported by the initiating device:

1) Compliant composite reference frame patterns as specified in 14.4.3.1.
2) Compliant low transition density bit patterns, as per 14.4.1.2
3) Compliant high transition density bit patterns as per 14.4.1.3
4) Compliant low frequency spectral component bit patterns as per 14.4.1.4
5) Compliant simultaneous switching outputs bit patterns as per 14.4.1.5
6) Compliant composite patterns as per 14.4.1.6

Where the qualifying prefix term "compliant" signifies transmission of the cited pattern encapsulated in the data portion of a valid Frame Information Structure, and used in a the serial implementation of ATA operational transmission context.

The Far-End Interface shall remain in this Far-End Retimed Loopback, until receipt of the COMRESET/COMINIT OOB Signaling sequence.

14.4.6.2 Test requirements - loopback - far-end analog (vendor specific)

The test requirements for this Loopback scheme are Vendor Specific.

K.2.3.3 Test requirements - loopback - near-end analog (vendor specific)

The test requirements for this Loopback scheme, are Vendor Specific.

14.4.7 Test requirements - OOB signaling tests

Out-of-band signaling is used to signal specific actions during conditions where the receiving interface is in an active mode, a low interface power state, or a test mode.

This section specifies the set of test requirements to ensure that the OOB detector circuits comply to the OOB signaling sequences under various conditions.

14.4.8 Test Method - Data Rate Frequency Variation - SSC Profile

HFTP and MFTP clock patterns are used to best verify the SSC profile, as well as the ppm extremes, the ISI effects due to the media will be minimized during these tests. Using the BIST FIS, invoke the Transmit-Only option with valid 8B10B encoded patterns that are periodic, such as sustained D10.2, or D24.3. These “clock” patterns may be processed, using cycle-averaging techniques to verify the SSC profile, for ppm-extremes, modulation-rate, and ensure that the SSC-modulation peak-jitter levels never exceed the specified jitter maximums.

Cycle-averaging is one method used that removes the high-frequency jitter components, of the captured/displayed waveform so as to focus analysis on the low-frequency effects. A set number of cycles is averaged for Gen1 (TBC-250), and Gen2 (TBC-250), and these averages of UI-periods are plotted versus Time. For analysis purposes, the waveform of the SATA channel shall be displayed as UI-period versus Time, where the time axis shall be scaled such that the entire SSC modulation period is displayed.

Separate numerical analysis shall be provided to indicate the average UI-periods, at the peaks of the modulation profile. These average-UI periods shall not exceed the ppm-extremes, per Table 11.

These methods are used to evaluate the SSC profile, for profile-shape, distortions, profile-rate, and respective peak-frequencies. The “clock patterns” are unclouded by the effects of pattern-related ISI.

14.4.9 Block diagram

The following block diagram is provided as a reference for the following clauses of this document. Although informative in nature, the functions of the blocks described herein provide the basis upon which the normative specifications apply. The individual blocks provided are representative of an approach this design and are provided as an example of one possible implementation.

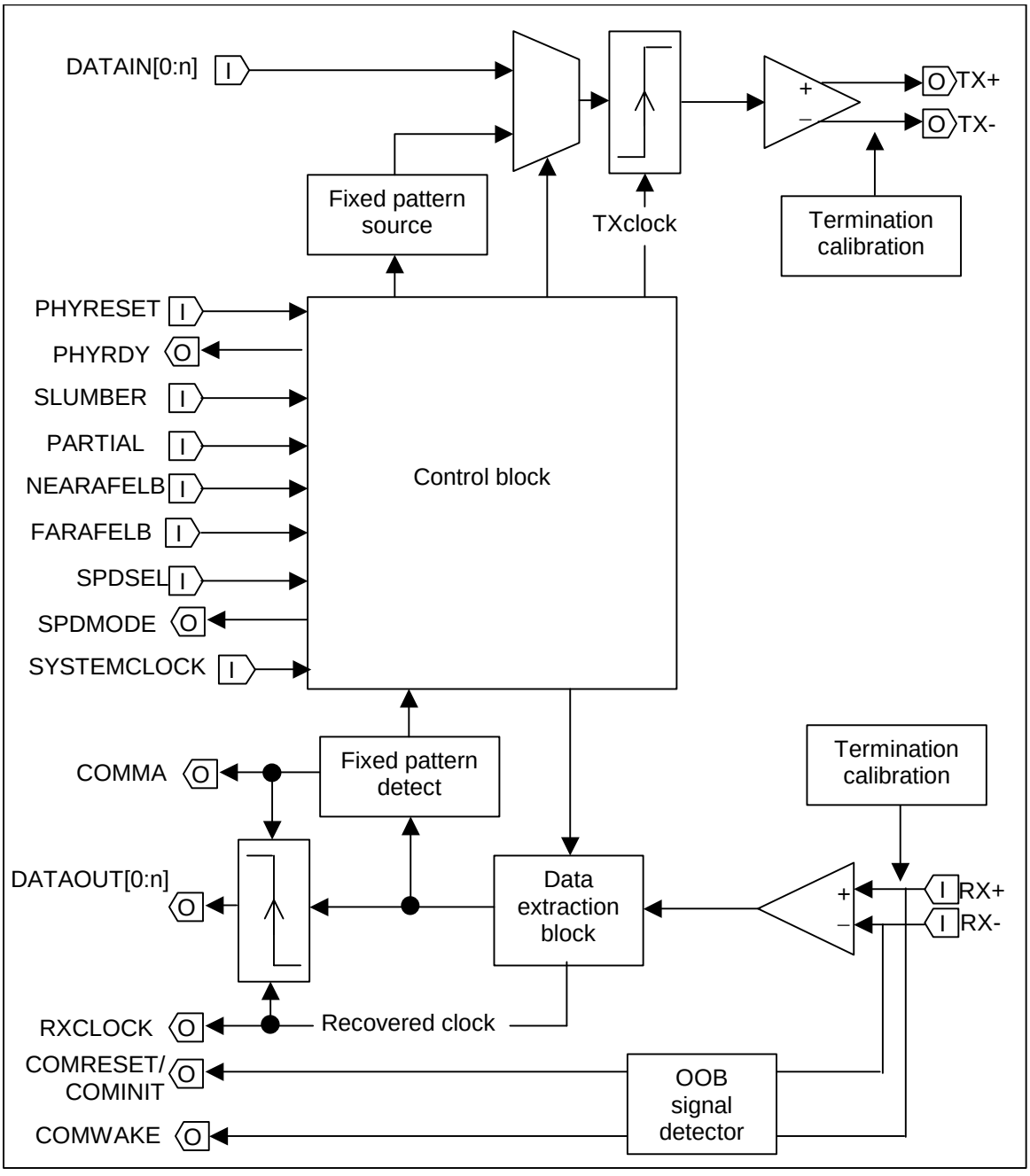


Figure 29 - Physical plant overall block diagram

Analog front end — This block is the basic interface to the transmission line. This block consists of the high speed differential drivers and receivers as well as the Out of Band signaling circuitry.

Control block	This block is a collection of logic circuitry that controls the overall functionality of the Physical plant circuitry.
Fixed pattern source	This block provides the support circuitry that generates the patterns as needed to implement the ALIGN primitive activity.
Fixed pattern detect	This block provides the support circuitry to allow proper processing of the ALIGN primitives.
Data extraction block	This block provides the support circuitry to separate the clock and data from the high speed input stream.
TX clock	This signal is internal to the Physical plant and is a reference signal that regulates the frequency at which the serial stream is sent via the high speed signal path
TX + / TX -	These signals are the outbound high speed differential signals that are connected to the serial ATA cable.
RX + / RX -	These signals are the inbound high speed differential signals that are connected to the serial ATA cable.
DATAIN	Data sent from the Link layer to the Physical layer for serialization and transmission.
PHYRESET	This input signal causes the PHY to initialize to a known state and start generating the COMRESET Out of Band signal across the interface.
PHYRDY	Signal indicating Phy has successfully established communications. The Phy is maintaining synchronization with the incoming signal to its receiver and is transmitting a valid signal on its transmitter.
SLUMBER	Causes the Physical layer to transition to the Slumber power management state.
PARTIAL	Causes the Physical layer to transition to the Partial power management state
NEARAFELB	Causes the Phy to loop back the serial data stream from its transmitter to its receiver
FARAFELB	Causes the Phy to loop back the serial data stream from its receiver to its transmitter
SPDSEL	Causes the control logic to automatically negotiate for a usable interface speed or sets a particular interface speed. The actual functionality of this input is vendor specific and varies from manufacturer to manufacturer.
SPDMODE	Output signal that reflects the current interface speed setting. The actual functionality of this signal is vendor specific and varies from manufacturer to manufacturer.
SYSTEMCLOCK	This input is the reference clock source for much of the control circuit and is the basis from which the transmitting interface speed is established.
COMMA	This signal indicates that a K28.5 character was detected in the inbound high speed data stream.
DATAOUT	Data received and deserialized by the Phy and passed to the Link layer

RX CLOCK / Recovered clock - This signal is derived from the high speed input data signal and determines when parallel data has been properly formed at the DATAOUT pins and is available for transfer to outside circuitry.

OOB signal detector — This block decodes Out of Band signal from the high speed input signal path.

COMRESET / COMINIT — Host: Signal from the out of band detector that indicates the COMINIT out of band signal is being detected.
Device: Signal from the out of band detector that indicates the COMRESET out of band signal is being detected.

COMWAKE — Signal from the out of band detector that indicates the COMWAKE out of band signal is being detected.

14.4.10 Electrical specifications

The serial implementation of the ATA physical layer electrical requirements are depicted in Table 11. The electrical performance is specified at the mated connector pair and includes the effects of the PCB. The electrical portion of the physical layer includes the driver, receiver, PCB and mated connector pair. Unless otherwise specified, all measurements shall be taken through the mated connector pair. Driver and receiver designs compensate for the effects of the path to/from the I/O connector. The receiver schematic shown in Figure 32 or the transmitter schematic shown in Figure 31 shall be used to design a test fixture.

Table 11 - Physical Layer Electrical Requirements

	Nom	Min	Max	units	Comments
T,UI		666.43	670.12	ps	Operating data period (nominal value architecture specific)
t_{rise}	0.3	0.15	0.41	UI	20%-80% at transmitter
t_{fall}	0.3	0.15	0.41	UI	80%-20% at transmitter
$V_{cm,dc}$	250	200	450	mV	Common mode DC level measured at receiver connector. This spec only applies to direct-connect designs or designs that hold the common-mode level. AC coupled designs may allow the common mode to float. See $V_{cm,ac\ coupled}$ requirements
$V_{cm,ac\ coupled\ TX}$		0	2.0	V	Open circuit DC voltage level of each signal in the TX pair at the IC side of the coupling capacitor in an AC coupled PHY. This requirement shall be met during all possible power and electrical conditions of the PHY including power off and power ramping. Transmitter common mode DC levels outside this range may be used provided that the following is met: The common mode voltage transients measured at the TX pins of the connector into an open-circuit load during all power states and transitions shall not exceed a +2.0V or -2.0V change from the CM value at the beginning of each transient. Test conditions shall include system power supply ramping at the fastest possible power ramp

(continued)

Table 11 - General electrical specifications *(continued)*

	Nom	Min	Max	units	Comments
$V_{cm,ac\ coupled\ RX}$		0	2.0	V	Open circuit DC voltage level of each signal in the RX pair at the IC side of the coupling capacitor in an AC coupled PHY. Must be met during all possible power and electrical conditions of the PHY including power off and power ramping. Receiver common mode DC levels outside this range may be used provided that the following is met: The common mode voltage transients measured at the RX pins of the connector into an open-circuit load during all power states and transitions shall not exceed a +2.0V or -2.0V change from the CM value at the beginning of each transient. Test conditions shall include system power supply ramping at the fastest possible power ramp
F_{CM}		2	200	MHz	All receivers must be able to tolerate sinusoidal common-mode noise components inside this frequency range with an amplitude of $V_{cm,ac}$.
$T_{settle,CM}$			10	ns	Maximum time for common-mode transients to settle to within 10% of DC value during transitions to and from the idle bus condition.
$V_{diff,tx}$	500	400	600	mV_{p-p}	+/- 250 mV differential nominal. Measured at Serial ATA connector on transmit side
$V_{diff,rx}$	400	325	600	mV_{p-p}	+/- 200 mV differential nominal. Measured at Serial ATA connector on receive side
Tx pair differential impedance	100	85	115	Ohm	As seen by a differential TDR with 100 ps (max) edge looking into connector (20%-80%). Measured with TDR in differential mode.
Rx pair differential impedance	100	85	115	Ohm	As seen by a differential TDR with 100 ps (max) edge looking into connector (20%-80%). Measured with TDR in differential mode.

(continued)

Table 11 - General electrical specifications *(continued)*

	Nom	Min	Max	units	Comments
Tx single-ended impedance		40		Ohm	As seen by TDR with 100 ps (max) edge looking into connector (20%-80%). TDR set to produce simultaneous positive pulses on both signals of the Tx pair. Single-ended impedance is the resulting (even mode) impedance of each signal. Both signals must meet the single ended impedance requirement. Must be met during all possible power and electrical conditions of the PHY including power off and power ramping.
Rx single-ended impedance		40		Ohm	As seen by TDR with 100 ps (max) edge looking into connector (20%-80%). TDR set to produce simultaneous positive pulses on both signals of the Rx pair. Single-ended impedance is the resulting (even mode) impedance of each signal. Both signals must meet the single ended impedance requirement. Must be met during all possible power and electrical conditions of the PHY including power off and power ramping.
$C_{ACcoupling}$			12	nF	Coupling capacitance value for AC coupled TX and RX pairs.
TX DC clock frequency skew		-350	+350	ppm	Specifies the allowed ppm tolerance for TX DC frequency variations around the nominal 1.500GHz. Excludes the +0/-5000ppm SSC downspread AC modulation per 14.5.3
TX AC clock frequency skew		-5000	+0	ppm	Specifies the allowed ppm extremes for the SSC AC modulation, subject to the “Downspread SSC” triangular modulation (30-33kHz) profile per 14.5.3. Note: Total TX Frequency variation around nominal 1.500G, includes [TXDC] + [TX AC] ppm variations.
TX differential skew			20	ps	(Nominal value architecture specific)
Squelch detector threshold	100	50	200	mV_{p-p}	Minimum differential signal amplitude
COMRESET/COMINIT detector off threshold		175	525	ns	Detector shall reject all bursts with spacings outside this spec.

(continued)

Table 11 - General electrical specifications *(continued)*

	Nom	Min	Max	units	Comments
COMRESET/COMINIT detector on threshold	320	304	336	ns	Detector shall detect all bursts with spacings meeting this period
COMRESET/COMINIT transmit spacing	320.0	310.4	329.6	ns	As measured from 100mV differential crosspoints of last and first edges of bursts
COMWAKE detector off threshold		55	175	ns	Detector shall reject all bursts with spacings outside this spec.
COMWAKE detector on threshold	106.7	101.3	112	ns	Detector shall detect all burst spacings meeting this period
COMWAKE transmit spacing	106.7	103.5	109.9	ns	As measured from 100mV differential crosspoints from last to first edges of bursts
UI_{OOB}		646.67	686.67	ps	Operating data period during OOB burst transmission

(concluded)

14.4.11 Frame error-rate measurements

Frame Error Rates of a system shall be measured and computed, to be no greater than ($8.196*10^{8}$) frame errors when tested with any given 8b/10b pattern, but shall include the Frame-Error-Rate reference patterns cited in 14.4.3

The cited patterns appear on the wire, and the N parameters of the reference patterns shall be repeated to achieve the maximum frame length, as specified in 14.4.3.1

14.4.12 Receiver Differential voltage

When subjected to the high-transition density patterns of 14.4.1.3, the Differential Voltage measured at the Receiver shall comply to the electrical specifications of 14.4.10

14.4.13 Receiver Common-mode voltage

References to peak-to-peak voltages are cited in 14.4.10.

The Receiver shall operate to within the bit error rates cited in 14.4.2, when subjected to a sinusoidal interfering signal with peak-to-peak voltage see Table 11and swept from the frequency range extremes, at a sweep rate period no shorter than 33.33 us.

The Receiver shall operate to within the frame error rates cited in 14.4.3, when subjected to a sinusoidal interfering signal with peak-to-peak voltage and swept from the frequency range extremes, at a sweep rate period no shorter than 33.33 us.

14.4.14 Transmitter Differential voltage

When subjected to the high-transition density patterns of 14.4.1.3, the Differential Voltage measured at the Transmitter shall comply to the respective electrical specifications of 14.4.10.

14.4.15 Transmitter Common-mode voltage

The Transmitter shall comply to the electrical specifications of 14.4.10, when subjected to a sinusoidal interfering signal with peak-to-peak voltage, and swept from the frequency range extremes, at a sweep rate period no shorter than 33.33 us.

14.4.16 Rise/fall times

Output rise times and fall times are measured between 20% and 80% of the signal, see Signal Rise & Fall Times, Figure 30. Rise and fall time requirements apply to differential transitions, for both In-Band and Out-Of-Band signaling.

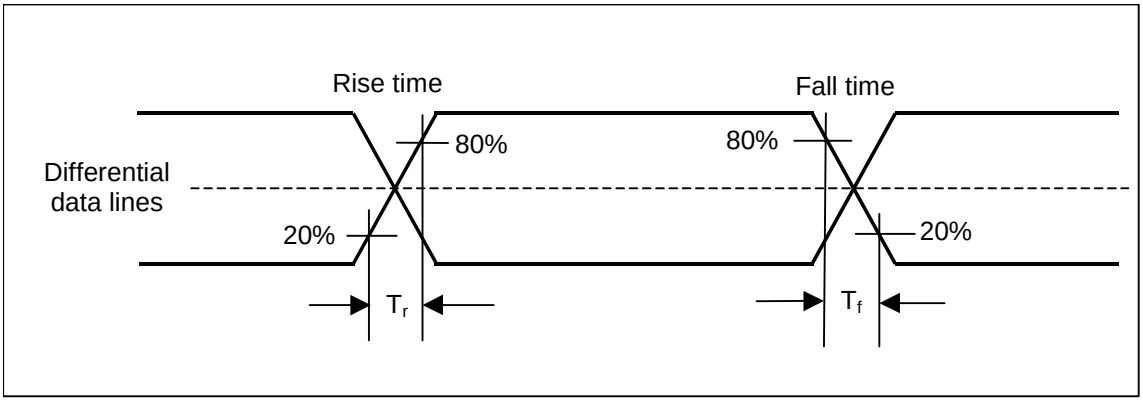


Figure 30 - Signal rise and fall times

The rise and fall times for transmitter differential buffer lines are measured with the load shown in Figure 31, at the transmitter mated connector pair, and must comply to Electrical Specification paragraph 14.4.10 as well as be matched within ± 10% of each other to minimize RFI emissions and signal skew.

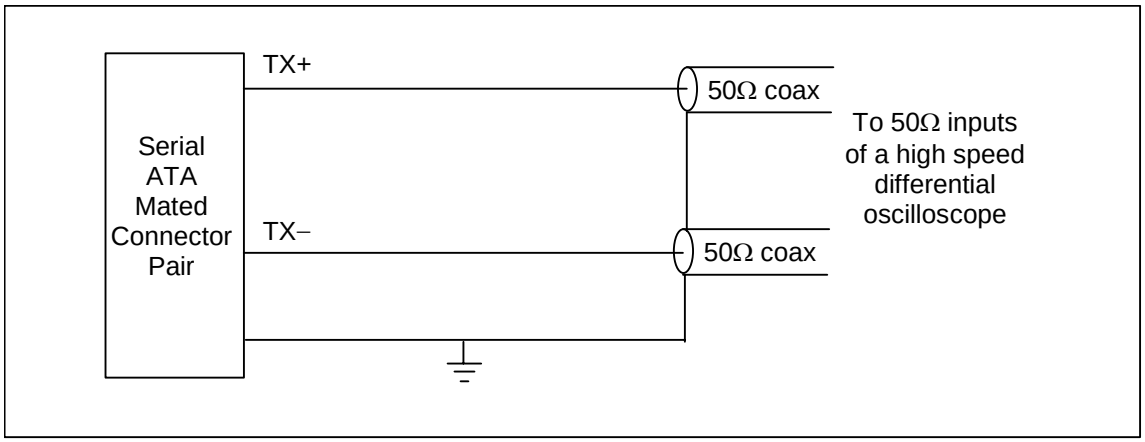


Figure 31 - Transmit test fixture

When testing the serial interface with the specified bit pattern sequences of 14.4.1, use the Receiver Test fixture as shown in Figure 32.

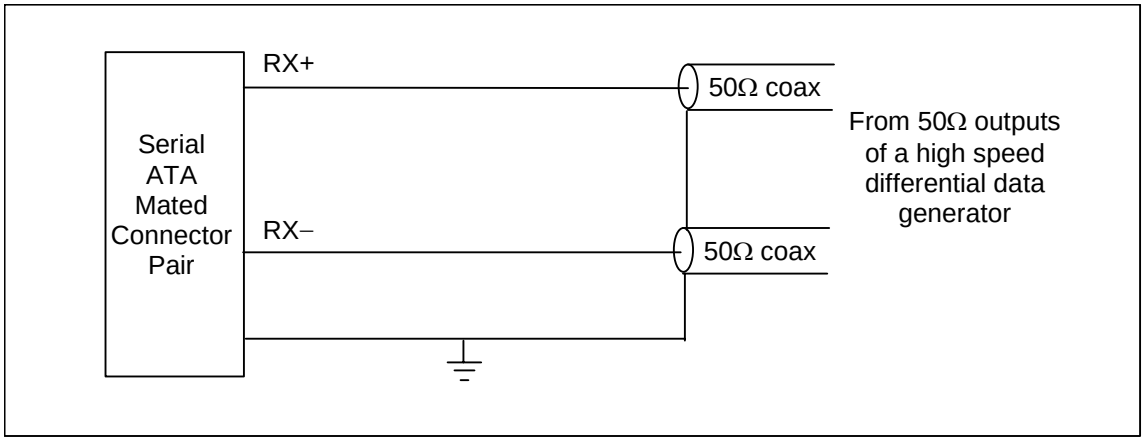


Figure 32 - Receive test fixture

14.5 Electrical features

14.5.1 Definitions

RJ Random Jitter (peak to peak). Assumed to be Gaussian and equal to 14 times the 1σ rms value given the 10^{-12} BER requirement.

DJ Deterministic Jitter (peak to peak). All jitter sources that do not have tails on their probability distribution function (i.e. values outside the bounds have probability zero). Four kinds of deterministic jitter are identified: duty cycle distortion, data dependent (ISI), sinusoidal, and uncorrelated (to the data) bounded. DJ is characterized by its bounded, peak-to-peak value.

TJ Total Jitter (peak to peak). Peak to peak measured jitter including DJ and RJ.

ISI Inter-symbol interference. Data-dependent deterministic jitter caused by the time differences required for the signal to arrive at the receiver threshold when starting from different places in bit sequences (symbols). For example media attenuates the peak amplitude of the bit sequence [0,1,0,1...], more than it attenuates the peak amplitude of the bit sequence [0,0,0,0,1,1,1,1...], thus the time required to reach the receiver threshold with the [0,1,0,1...] sequence is less than required from the [0,0,0,0,1,1,1,1...]sequence. The run length of 4 produces a higher amplitude which takes more time to overcome when changing bit values and therefore produces a time difference compared to the run length of 1 bit sequence. When different run lengths are mixed in the same transmission the different bit sequences (symbols) therefore interfere with each other. ISI is expected whenever any bit sequence has frequency components that are propagated at different rates by the transmission media. This translates into high-high-frequency, data-dependent, jitter.

UI Unit Interval. Equal to the time required to transmit one bit (666.667 ps for Gen1).

DC Strictly, the non-AC component of a signal. In this specification, DC means all frequency components below f_{dc} = 100 kHz.

Differential Signal A signal derived by taking the difference between two conductors. In this spec a differential signal is comprised of a positive conductor and a negative conductor. The differential signal is the voltage on the positive conductor minus the voltage on the negative conductor (i.e. TX+ - TX-).

Burst A short pulse of data starting from and ending with the idle condition on the interface. These are used for low-level signaling when the high-speed communication channel is not established.

SSC Spead Spectrum Clocking. The technique of modulating the operating frequency of a circuit slightly to spread its radiated emissions over a range of frequencies rather than just one tone. This reduction in the maximum emission for a given frequency helps meet FCC requirements.

14.5.2 Differential voltage/timing (EYE) diagram

The EYE diagram is more of a qualitative measurement than a spec. Any low frequency (trackable) modulation must be tracked by the oscilloscope to prevent measurement error caused by benign EYE closure. It is also unrealistic to try to capture sufficient edges to guarantee the 14 sigma RJ requirement in order to achieve an effective 10^{-12} BER. Nonetheless, this method is useful and easy to set up in the lab.

If t3-t1 is set equal to $DJ+6*RJ_{1sigma}$, then less than one in every 750 edges cross the illegal region for a well designed transmitter. By controlling the number of sweeps displayed, a quick health check may be performed with minimal setup. Note that this criteria is informative, and these conditions are not sufficient to guarantee compliance, but are to be used as part of the design guidelines.

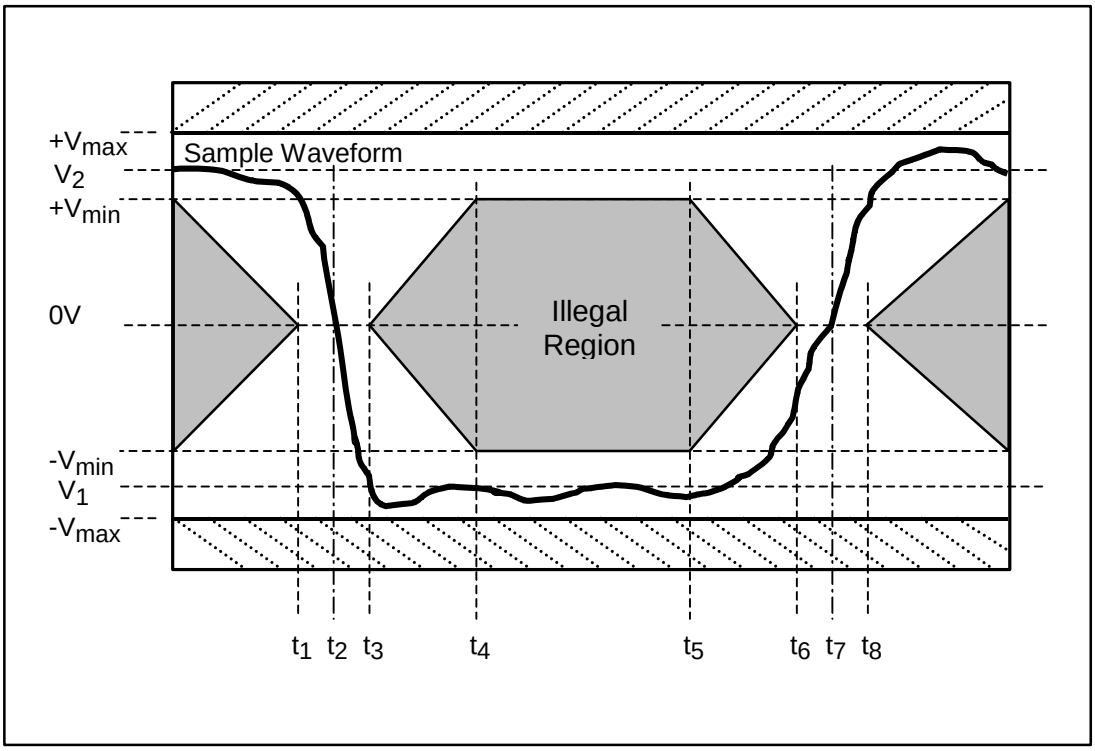


Figure 33 - Voltage / timing margin base diagram

Table 12 - Voltage / Timing Margin Definition

Name	Definition	Notes
$\mathbf{t}_{jitter}$	t3 - t1	t3 - t1 = t8 - t6
T	t7 - t2	t2 - t1 = t3 - t2 t7 - t6 = t8 - t7
$\mathbf{V}_{diff}$	$V_2 - V_1$	

14.5.2.1 Jitter output/tolerance mask

The spectral jitter shall comply to the requirements as indicated in the Jitter Output/Tolerance Graph, shown in Figure 34 with magnitudes defined in Table 13. A_x are the maximum peak to peak transmitter output and the minimum peak to peak receiver tolerance requirements as measured from data edge to any following data edge up to n_x*UI later (where x is 0,1, or 2). See Annex I.

Transmitter output data edge to data edge timing variation from t_o to t_y shall not exceed the value computed by the following:

- y is an integer from 1 to n_x,
- t_y is the time between the data transition at t_0 and a data transition y∗UI bit periods later.

This measurement may be made with an oscilloscope having a histogram function or with a Timing Interval Analyzer (TIA). For further information on jitter measurements see 14.4. A receiver shall meet the error rate requirement under the maximum allowed jitter conditions found in Table 12and Table 13.

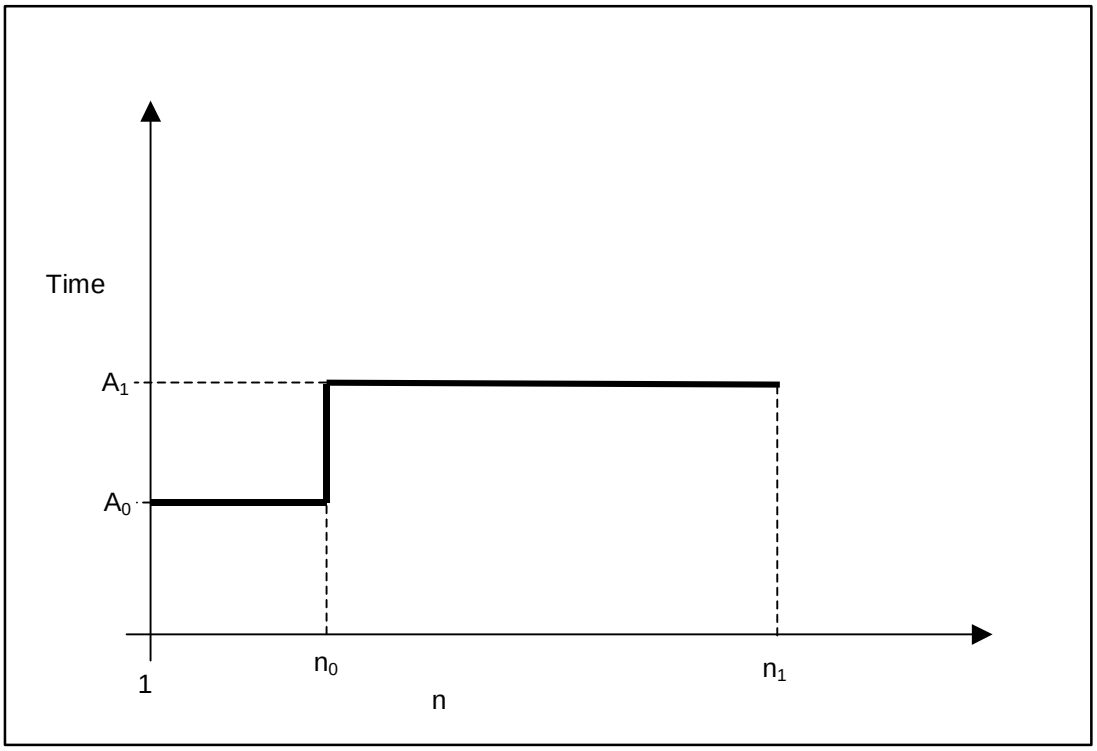


Figure 34 - Jitter output/tolerance mask

14.5.2.2 Sampling differential noise budget

Sampling jitter specifications relate to the relationship between the sampling clock and the data. Any phase error that results in the sample being improperly read (i.e. prior bit or following bit sampled) results in a bit error.

These error components have been broken out into Deterministic Jitter (DJ) and Total Jitter (TJ) where appropriate. DJ is the peak to peak phase variation in the 0 $V_{differential}$ crossing point of the data stream that is fixed given any specific set of conditions. TJ is defined as DJ + Random Jitter (RJ). RJ is defined as 14 times the rms (1 sigma) value of the jitter that is Gaussian (normal).

The serial interface jitter characteristics should comply to within the jitter budget allocations tabulated in Table 13.

Table 13 - Sampling differential noise budget

Description	Driver output (See note 1)		Driver PCB connector		Receiver PCB connector		Receiver Input (See note 2)		Notes
	DJ	TJ	DJ	TJ	DJ	TJ	DJ	TJ	
$A_{0,p-p}$ (UI)	0.15	0.33	0.175	0.355	0.25	0.43	0.275	0.455	3,4
n_0	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	3,4
$A_{1,p-p}$ (UI)	0.2	0.45	0.22	0.47	0.35	0.6	0.37	0.62	3,4
n_1	250	250	250	250	250	250	250	250	3,5

NOTES –

1. The driver output is the maximum jitter that a driver may exhibit to guarantee operation.
2. This field is the maximum jitter that a receiver must tolerate to guarantee operation.
3. Does not include UI error due to frequency skew (XTAL or SSC related)
4. Primarily determined by non-tracking architecture requirements
5. Primarily determined by tracking architecture requirements

14.5.2.3 Jitter output

Jitter output tests are intended to determine the jitter amplitudes of the random jitter, and deterministic jitter components.

14.5.2.3.1 Jitter measurements

The jitter specifications are based in a data transition to data transition Timing Interval Analyzer (TIA) format. If such instrumentation is not available, equivalent measurements may be made with an oscilloscope. The oscilloscope is set up to trigger on the data and an EYE diagram is examined some integer number of unit intervals (UI) later. The histogram function may be used to monitor the distribution of the zero crossing to extract jitter information. Figure 35 shows an example where the oscilloscope is set up to examine an edge 16 UI away from the trigger point.

The DJ and RJ (or TJ) should be less than the maximum A_x indicated in Figure 35 for n_x >= 16. For example, assume n_0 is five and n_1 is 250. In this case, the DJ and RJ for t_{16} must be less than A_1 since 250>16 but need not meet the A_0 requirement since 5<16. This method is employed because of the ease of measurement and to enable the specification to be relaxed at lower frequencies. If DJ is large enough, it can be fairly accurately measured from the histogram as the distance between the two outside peaks (there may be more than the three peaks shown in the example). If DJ and RJ are too intermixed for measurement, then other methods must be used. One such method is to transmit a clock pattern (fixed frequency components) to determine the RJ (DJ is zero for fixed frequencies), transmit a random pattern to measure

the TJ, and derive the DJ from these. Another alternative is to wait until >>10^{12} edges are included in the histogram and measure the Total Jitter (TJ).

Since t_0 is triggered from the serial signal rather than a reference clock the resulting measurements represent a combination of the jitter at t_0 and t_n.

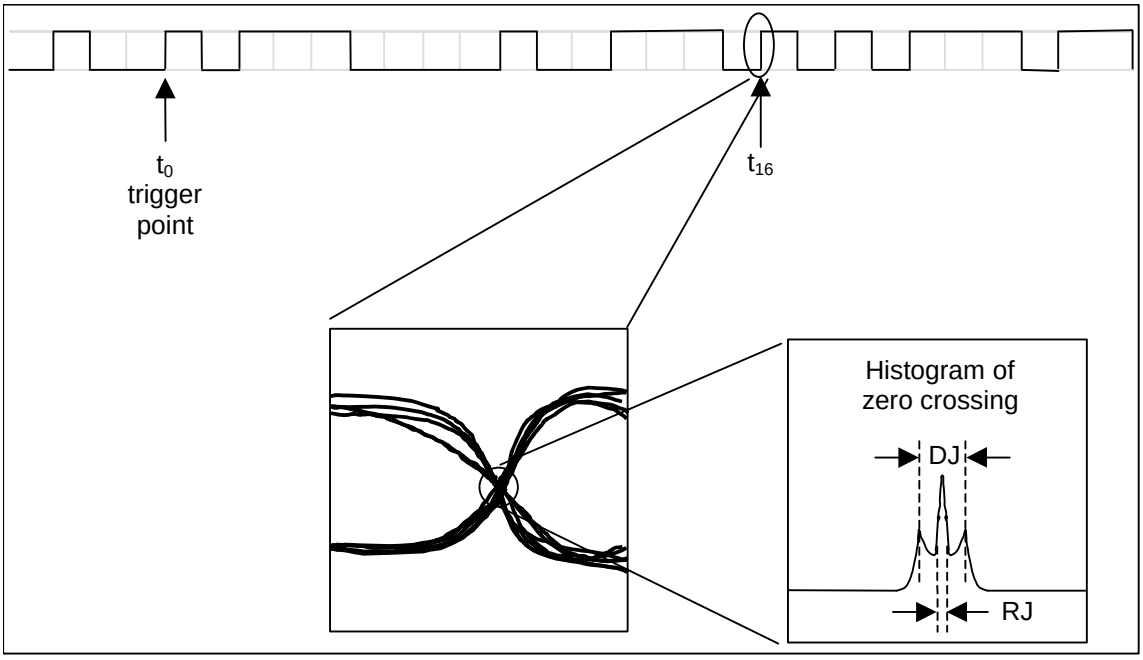


Figure 35 - Jitter measurement example

14.5.3 Spread spectrum clocking (SSC)

Spread Spectrum functionality define follows

1. All transmitter timings (including jitter, skew, min-max clock period, output rise/fall time) shall meet the existing non-spread spectrum specifications when spread spectrum is on.
2. Because the minimum clock period cannot be violated, the transmitter shall adjust the spread technique to not allow for modulation above the nominal frequency. This technique is often called “down-spreading”. An example triangular frequency modulation profile is shown in Figure 36. The modulation profile in a modulation period can be expressed as:

$$f = \begin{cases} (1-\delta)\, f_{nom} + 2 f_{nom} \cdot \delta \cdot f_{nom} \cdot t & \text{when } 0 < t < \dfrac{1}{2f_m} \\ \\ (1+\delta)\, f_{nom} - 2 f_{nom} \cdot \delta \cdot f_{nom} \cdot t & \text{when } \dfrac{1}{2f_m} < t < \dfrac{1}{f_m} \end{cases}$$

where f_{nom} is the nominal frequency in the non-SSC mode, f_m is the modulation frequency, δ is the modulation amount, and t is time.

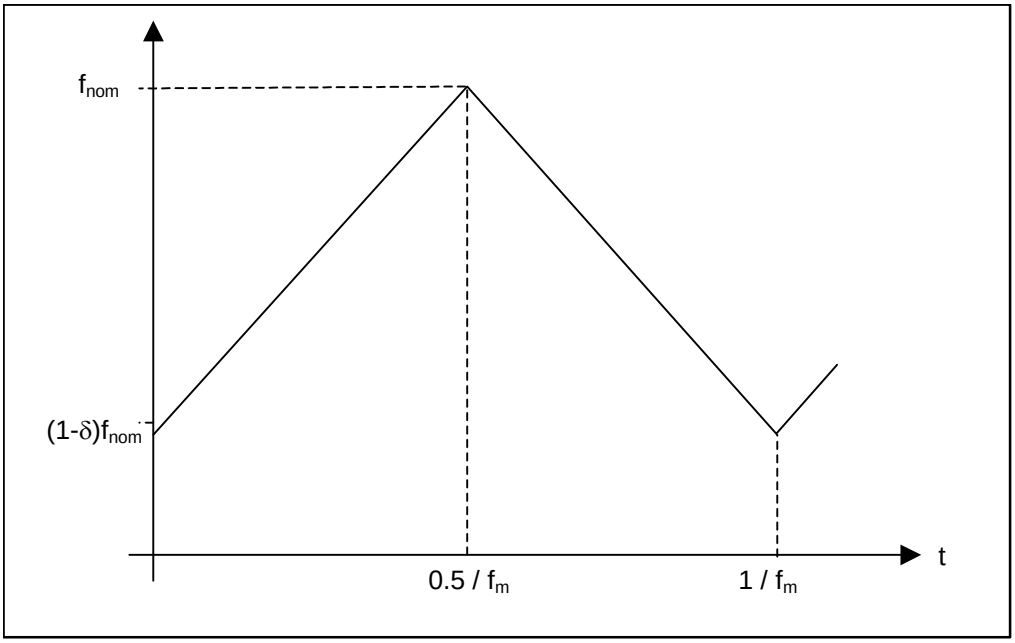


Figure 36 - Triangular frequency modulation profile

3. For triangular modulation, the clock frequency deviation (δ) is required to be no more than 0.5% "down-spread" from the corresponding nominal frequency, i.e., +0%/-0.5%. The absolute spread amount at the fundamental frequency is shown in Figure 37, as the width of its spectral distribution (between the -3 dB roll-off). The ratio of this width to the fundamental frequency cannot exceed 0.5%. This parameter can be measured in the frequency domain using a spectrum analyzer.

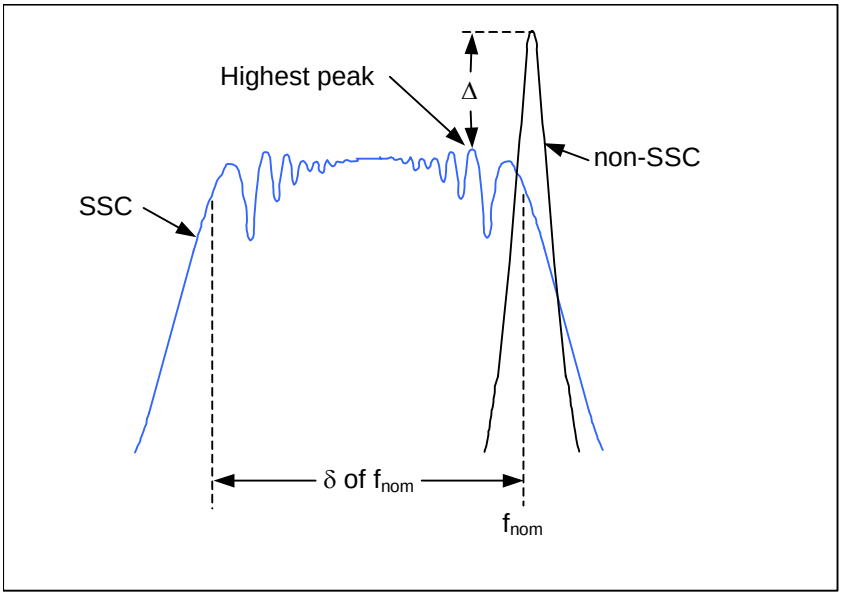


Figure 37 - Spectral fundamental frequency comparison

4. To achieved sufficient system-level EMI reduction, it is desired that SSC reduce the spectral peaks in the non-SSC mode by the amount specified in Table 14. The peak reduction Δ is defined, as shown in Figure 37, as the difference between the spectral peaks in SSC and non-SSC modes at the specified measurement frequency

Table 14 - Desired peak amplitude reduction by SSC

Clock freq.	Peak reduction Δ	Measurement freq.
66 MHz	7 dB	466 MHz (7^{th} harmonics)
75 MHz	7 dB	525 MHz (7^{th} harmonics)

NOTES –

The spectral peak reduction is not necessarily the same as the system EMI reduction. However, this relative measurement gives the component-level indication of SSC's EMI reduction capability at the system level.

It is recommended that a spectrum analyzer be used for this measurement. The spectrum analyzer should have measurement capability out to 1 GHz. The measured SSC clock needs to be fed into the spectrum analyzer via a high-impedance probe compatible with the spectrum analyzer. The output clock should be loaded with 20 pF capacitance. The resolution bandwidth of the spectrum analyzer needs to be set at 120 KHz to comply with FCC EMI measurement requirements. The video band needs to be set at higher than 300 KHz for appropriate display. 100 KHz may be used as the resolution bandwidth in case of measurement equipment limitation. The display should be set with maximum hold. The corresponding harmonic peak readings should be recorded in both the non-SSC and the SSC modes, and be compared to determine the magnitude of the spectral peak reduction.

5. The modulation frequency of SSC is required to be in the range of 30-33 KHz to avoid audio band demodulation and to minimize system timing skew.

14.5.4 Common-mode biasing

The serial interface supports both direct coupled and AC-coupled solutions, there are four scenarios to be considered when applying the DC bias to TX and RX designs. Only DC-coupled designs need sustain the specified 250 mV common-mode level to ensure interoperability.

A DC-coupled receiver (with no blocking capacitors) shall bias the common-mode level of its inputs to 250 mV. A DC-coupled transmitter shall transmit with the nominally specified 250 mV common-mode level.

An AC-coupled receiver (See Table 11) is not required to sustain the cable side of the its blocking capacitors. Similarly, an AC-coupled transmitter (See Table 11) is not required to sustain the common-mode level on the cable side of its blocking capacitors.

14.5.5 Matching

The host adapter shall provide impedance matching circuits to ensure termination for both its TX and RX as per the electrical parameters of Table 11.

Device peripherals shall provide impedance terminations, as per the specified parameters in Table 11, and may adapt their termination impedance to that of the host.

The host adapter, since it is given the first opportunity to calibrate during the power on sequence, cannot assume that the far end of the cable is calibrated yet. For this reason, the host adapter must utilize a separate reference to perform calibration. In cabled systems the cable provides the optimal impedance reference for calibration.

Using Time Domain Reflectometry (TDR) techniques, the host may launch a step waveform from its transmitter, so as to get a measure of the impedance of the transmitter, with respect to the cable, and adjust its impedance settings as necessary.

In a mobile system environment, where the cable is small or non-existent, the host adapter must make use of a separate reference (such as an accurate off-chip resistor) for the calibration phase.

The device, on the other hand, may assume that the termination on the far side (host side) of the cable is fully calibrated, and may make use of this as the reference. Using the host termination as the calibration reference allows the devices operating in both the desktop and the mobile system environment to use the same hardware.

Signals generated for the impedance calibration process shall not duplicate the OOB signals, COMWAKE, COMINIT, or COMRESET. Signals generated for the impedance calibration process shall not exceed the normal operating voltage levels, cited in 14.4.10. See the power management clause for suggested times to perform calibration during power-on.

14.5.6 Out of band signaling

There are three Out Of Band (OOB) signals used/detected by the Phy, COMRESET, COMINIT, and COMWAKE. COMINIT, COMRESET and COMWAKE OOB signaling shall be achieved by transmission of a burst of ALIGN primitives each burst being 160 UI_{OOB}. Each burst is followed by idle periods (at common-mode levels), having durations as depicted in Figure 38 and Table 15.

During OOB signaling transmissions, the differential and common mode levels of the signal lines shall comply with the same electrical specifications as for in-band data transmission, specified in 14.4.10. In Figure 38 below, COMRESET, COMINIT, and COMWAKE are shown. OOB signals shall be observed by detecting the temporal spacing between adjacent bursts of activity on the differential pair. It is not required for a receiver to check the duration of an OOB burst.

Any spacing less than or greater than the COMWAKE detector off threshold in Table 11 shall deassert the COMWAKE detector output. The COMWAKE OOB signaling is used to bring the Phy out of a power-down state (PARTIAL or SLUMBER) as described in 14.5.6.2.9. The interface shall be held inactive for at least the maximum COMWAKE detector off threshold in Table 11 after the last burst to ensure far-end detector detects the deassertion properly. The device shall hold the interface inactive no more than the maximum COMWAKE detector off threshold + 2 Gen1 DWORDs (approximately 228.3ns) at the end of a COMWAKE to prevent susceptibility to crosstalk.

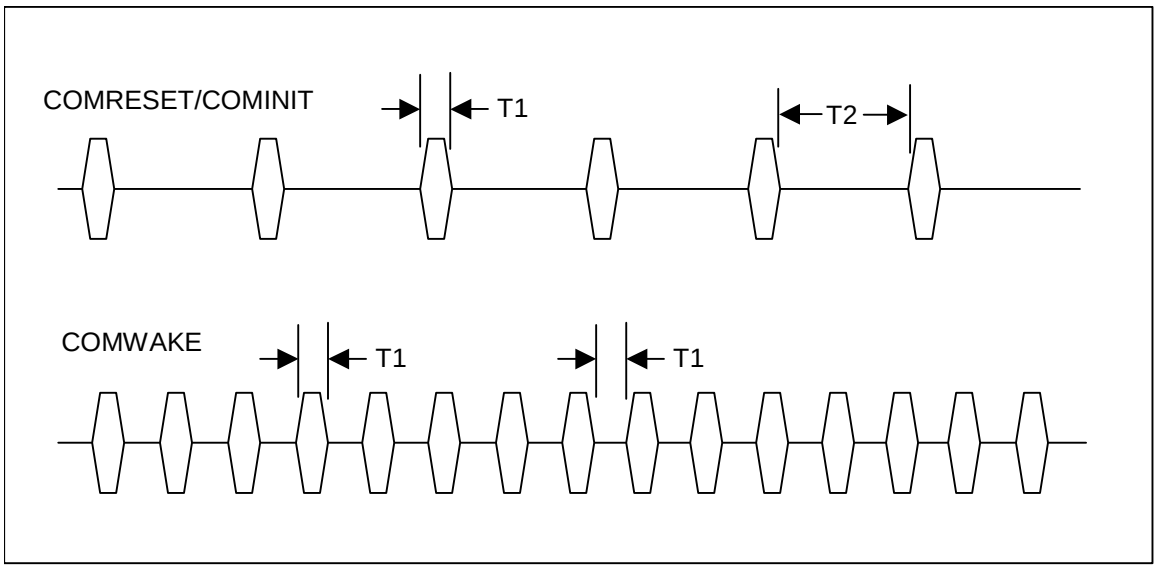


Figure 38 - Out of band signals

Table 15 – Out of band signal times

Time	Value
T1	160 UI_{oob} (106.7 ns nominal)
T2	480 UI_{oob} (320.0 ns nominal)

14.5.6.1 Idle bus status

During the idle bus condition, the differential signal diminishes to zero while the common mode level remains.

Common-mode transients, shall not exceed the maximum amplitude levels (Vcm,ac) cited in 14.4.10, and shall settle to within 25 mV of Vcm, DC within Tsettle,CM, cited in 14.4.10. Annex I shows several transmitter examples, and how the transition to and from the idle state may be implemented.

14.5.6.2 Power-up and COMRESET sequences

The following state diagrams specify the behavior of the host and device PHY from power-on or COMRESET to the establishment of an active communication channel.

In those states where the Phy relies on detection of received ALIGN primitives see 15.4.4.

14.5.6.2.1 Host power-up and COMRESET state machine

Reception of a COMINIT signal shall cause the host to reinitialize communications with the device and shall unconditionally force the Host Phy state machine to transition to the HP3:HR_AwaitNoCOMINIT state regardless of other conditions. Reception of COMINIT is effectively an additional transition into the HP3:HR_AwaitNoCOMINIT state that appears in every Host Phy state. For the sake of brevity, this implied transition has been omitted from all the states.

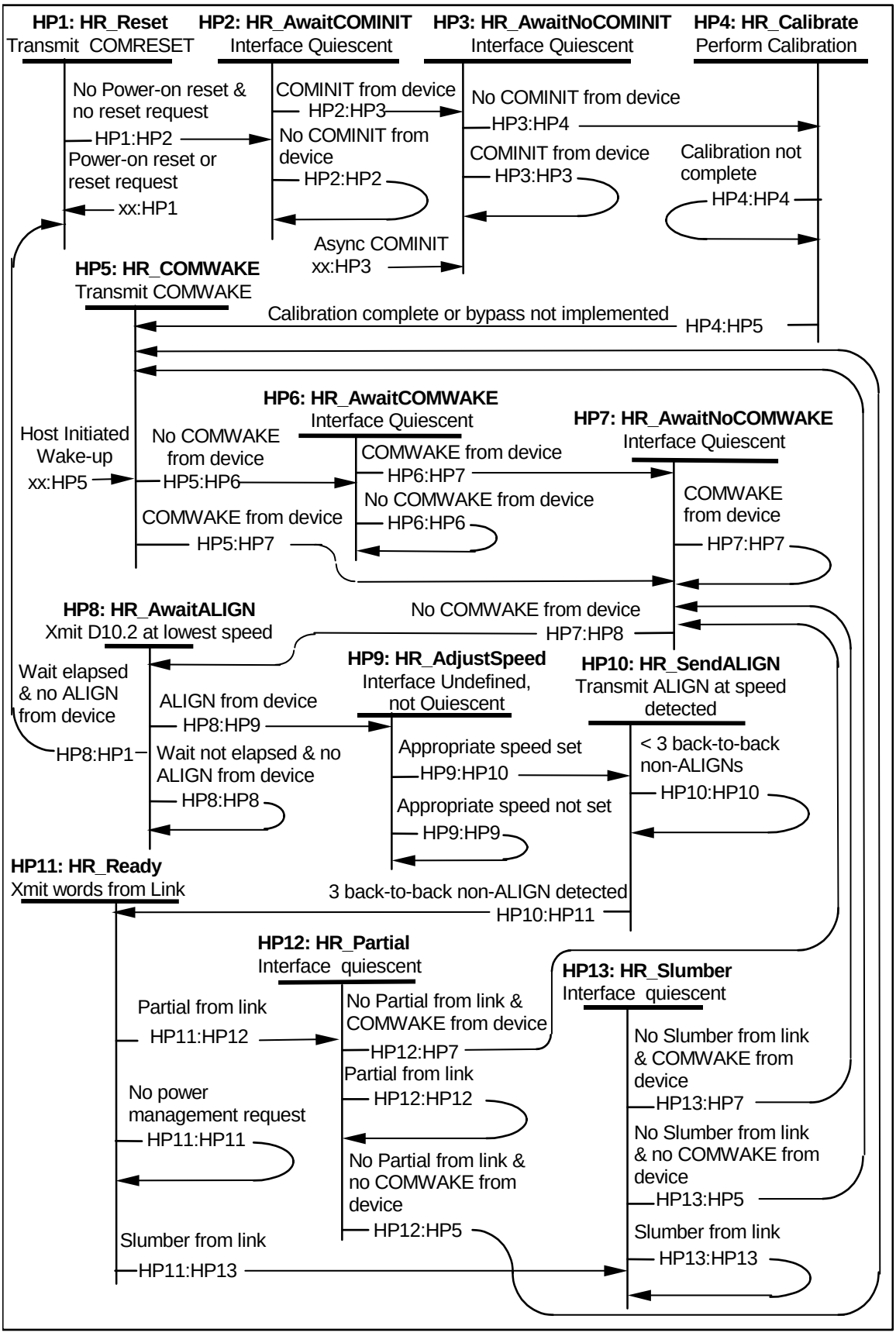


Figure 39 – Host phy initialization state machine (States HP1-HP13)

HP1: HR_Reset state: This state is entered asynchronously when power-on reset is asserted or when a host adapter reset request occurs.

The COMRESET sequence may be transmitted for the duration of this state, may be transmitted during this state and cease transmition after departure from this state, or may be transmitted upon departure from this state. The COMRESET sequence shall be transmitted for 6 bursts or a multiple of 6 bursts. See 14.5.6.2.3.1.

Transition HP1:HP2: When power-on reset is negated and no host adapter reset is requested, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP2: HR_AwaitCOMINIT state.

Transition xx:HP1: When power-on reset is asserted or a host adapter reset is requested, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP1: HR_Reset state.

HP2: HR_AwaitCOMINIT state: This state is entered when power-on reset is negated and host adapter reset is negated.

When in this state the Physical layer waits for COMINIT to be asserted.

Transition HP2:HP2: When COMINIT is not asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP2: HR_AwaitCOMINIT state.

Transition HP2:HP3: When COMINIT is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP3: HR_AwaitNoCOMINIT state.

HP3: HR_AwaitNoCOMINIT state: This state is entered when the COMINIT signal is asserted while the Physical layer is in the HR2: HR_Await COMINIT state. It is also entered asychronously at any time in response to the receipt of the COMINIT sequence unless power-on reset is asserted or a host adapter reset request is asserted (in which case HP1 is entered).

When in this state the Physical layer waits for COMINIT from the device to be negated.

Transition HP3:HP3: When the COMINIT signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP3: HR_AwaitNoCOMINIT state.

Transition HP3:HP4: When the COMINIT signal negation is detected, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP4: HR_Calibrate state.

HP4: HR_Calibrate state: This state is entered when the COMINIT signal has been negated by the device. Calibration is optional. If calibration is bypassed or not implemented this state proceeds to state HP5.

When in this state the Physical layer performs calibration if implemented and enabled.

Transition HP4:HP4: If calibration has not completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP4: HR_Calibration state.

Transition HP4:HP5: When calibration has completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP5: HR_COMWAKE state.

HP5: HR_COMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMINIT signal has been negated and optional calibration is not supported or when optional calibration has been completed, or upon a host initiated wake-up.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the COMWAKE sequence.

Transition HP5:HP6: After transmitting the COMWAKE sequence and when the COMWAKE signal is negated , the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP6: HR_AwaitCOMWAKE state.

Transition HP5:HP7: After transmitting the COMWAKE sequence and the COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

HP6: HR_AwaitCOMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE sequence has been transmitted and the COMWAKE signal is negated.

When in this state the Physical layer shall wait for the COMWAKE signal to be asserted.

Transition HP6:HP6: If the COMWAKE signal is not asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP6: HR_AwaitCOMWAKE state.

Transition HP6:HP7: When the COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal has been asserted.

When in this state the Physical layer shall wait for the COMWAKE signal to be negated.

Transition HP7:HP7: When the COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

Transition HP7:HP8: When the COMWAKE signal is negated, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP8: HR_AwaitAlign state.

HP8: HR_AwaitAlign state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal is negated.

When in this state the Physical layer shall start transmiting D10.2 characters at the lowest rate no later than 533ns (20 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) after COMWAKE is negated by the device (See 14.5.6).

Transition HP8:HP9: When the ALIGN primitive is detected from the device, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP9: HR_Adjust Speed state. Host designers should be aware that the device is allowed 53.3 ns (2 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) after terminating the COMWAKE sequence (by holding the idle condition for more than the COMWAKE detector off threshold max, see Table 11) to start sending characters. Until this occurs, the bus is in idle condition and may be susceptible to crosstalk from other sources. Care should be taken so that crosstalk during this window does not result in a false detection of an ALIGN primitive. For example, a compliant host may detect the negation of the COMWAKE sequence in as little as COMWAKE detector on threshold max (See Table 11), such a host should wait at least 116.3 ns (the COMWAKE detector off threshold max, plus 2 nominal Gen1 DWORD times, plus COMWAKE detector on threshold max (116.3 ns =175+53.3-112) after detecting the release of the COMWAKE signal to start looking for ALIGNs.

Transition HP8:HP1: If the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the device and 873.8 us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) have elapsed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP1: HR_Reset state. The host shall retry the power-on sequence indefinitely unless explicitly turned off by the application layer. The host Phy state machine may use the transition to HR_Reset as a method of speed negotiation.

Transition HP8:HP8: When the COMWAKE signal is not asserted and less than 873.8 us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) have elapsed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP8: HR_AwaitAlign state.

HP9: HR_AdjustSpeed state: This state is entered when the ALIGN primitive has been detected. The interface is undefined, but not quiescent.

When in this state the Physical layer shall complete the transition to the appropriate speed. Some implementations may undergo a transient condition where invalid signals are transmitted during the change

in their internal transmission/reception speed. The host may transmit invalid signals for a period of up to 53.3 ns (2 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) during the speed transition. Transmit jitter and unit interval timing requirements may not be met during this period but shall be met for all other bits transmitted in this state. A phase shift may occur across the speed transition time.

Transition HP9:HP10: When the appropriate speed transition has completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP10: HR_SendALIGN state.

Transition HP9:HP9: If the appropriate speed transition has not completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP9: HR_AdjustSpeed state.

HP10: HR_SendALIGN state: This state is entered when the appropriate speed is set.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the ALIGN primitive.

Transition HP10:HP11: When three back-to-back non-ALIGN primitives have been received from the device, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP11: HR_Ready state. Non-ALIGN primitives can be detected by the presence of the k28.3 control character in the byte 0 position.

Transition HP10:HP10: If three back-to-back non-ALIGN primitives have not been received from the device, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP10: HR_SendALIGN state. The host retries indefinitely unless explicitly turned off by the application layer.

HP11: HR_Ready state: This state is entered when non-ALIGN primitives have been received from the device.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the words provided by the Link layer. PHYRDY shall be asserted when in this state, and the Phy is maintaining synchronization with the incoming signal to its receiver, and is transmitting a valid signal on its transmitter.

Transition HP11:HP12: When the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP12: HR_Partial state.

Transition HP11:HP13: When the Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP13: HR_Slumber state.

Transition HP11:HP11: When neither the Partial nor Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP11: HR_Ready state.

HP12: HR_Partial state: This state is entered when the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer.

When in this state the Physical layer shall enter the Partial power mode state. The interface is quiescent in this state.

Transition HP12:HP5: When the Partial signal is negated from the Link layer and the COMWAKE signal is not asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP5: HR_COMWAKE state. The host Phy shall remember if the COMWAKE signal was detected during Partial to determine if the wakeup request originated from the host or the Phy. (See state DP4 and DP6 14.5.6.2.2).

Transition HP12:HP7: When the Partial signal is negated from the Link layer and the COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state. The host Phy shall remember if the COMWAKE signal was detected during Partial to determine if the wakeup request originated from the host or the Phy.

Transition HP12:HP12: When the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP12: HR_Partial state.

HP13: HR_Slumber state: This state is entered when the Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer.

When in this state the Physical layer shall enter the Slumber power mode state. The interface is quiescent in this state.

Transition HP13:HP5: When the Slumber signal is negated from the Link layer and no COMWAKE sequence is received from the device, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP5: HR_COMWAKE state. The host Phy shall remember if the COMWAKE signal was detected during Slumber to determine if the wakeup request originated from the host or the Phy. (See state DP4 and DP6 14.5.6.2.2).The host Phy may take this transition only after it has recovered from slumber mode and the Phy is prepared to initiate communications. If the Phy has not yet recovered from the slumber mode it shall remain in this state.

Transition HP13:HP7: When the Slumber signal is negated from the Link layer and a COMWAKE sequence is received from the device, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP7: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state. The host Phy shall remember if the COMWAKE signal was detected during Slumber to determine if the wakeup request originated from the host or the Phy (See state DP4 and DP6 14.5.6.2.2).The host Phy may take this transition only after it has recovered from slumber mode and the Phy is prepared to initiate communications. If the Phy has not yet recovered from the slumber mode it shall remain in this state.

Transition HP13:HP13: When the Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the HP13: HR_Slumber state.

14.5.6.2.2 Device power-up and COMRESET state machine

Reception of a COMRESET signal shall be treated by the device as a hard reset signal and shall unconditionally force the Device Phy state machine to transition to the DP1:DR_Reset initial state regardless of other conditions. Reception of the COMRESET signal is effectively an additional transition into the DP1:DR_Reset state that appears in every Device Phy state. For the sake of brevity, this implied transition has been omitted from all the states.

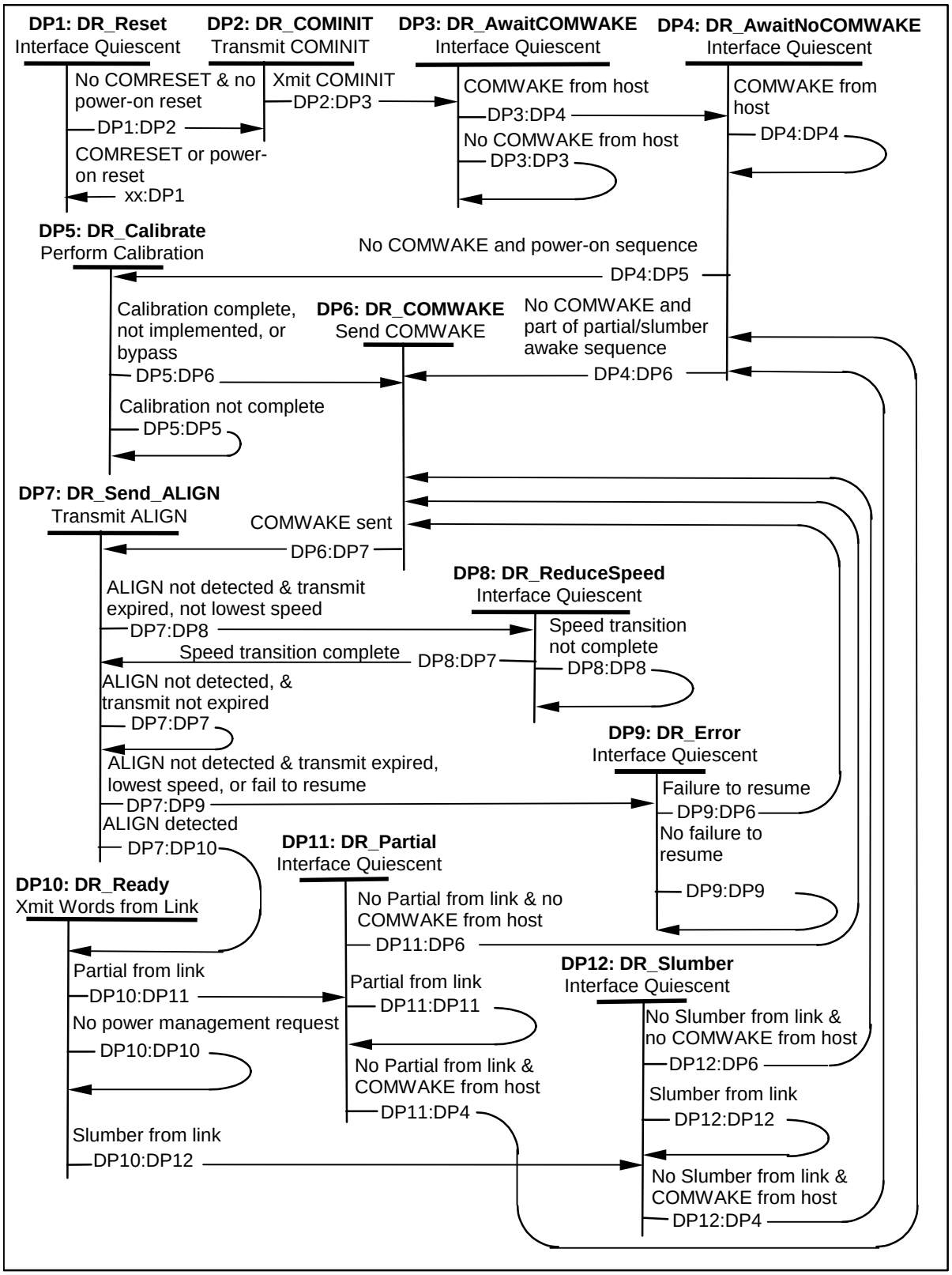


Figure 40 – Device phy initialization state machine (States DP1-DP12)

An additional transition into the DP1:DR_Reset state that appears in every state in the Device Phy Initialization state, see Figure 40. For the sake of brevity, this implied transition has been omitted from all the states.

DP1: DR_Reset state: This state is entered asynchronously at power-on or when the COMRESET sequence is detected from the host.

Transition DP1:DP2: When the COMRESET signal is not asserted and power-on reset is negated, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP2: HR_COMINIT state.

Transition xx:DP1: When the COMRESET signal is asserted or power-on reset is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP1: DR_Reset state.

DP2: DR_COMINIT state: This state is entered when the COMRESET signal is not asserted and power-on reset is negated.

When in this state the Physical layer transmits the COMINIT sequence. The COMINIT sequence shall be transmitted for a 6 burst duration. The COMINIT sequence shall be transmitted for 6 bursts or a multiple of 6 bursts.

Transition DP2:DP3: When the COMINIT sequence has been transmitted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP3: DR_AwaitCOMWAKE state.

DP3: DR_AwaitCOMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMINIT sequence has been transmitted.

When in this state the Physical layer waits for the COMWAKE signal to be asserted.

Transition DP3:DP3: If the COMWAKE signal has not been asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP3: DR_AwaitCOMWAKE state.

Transition DP3:DP4: When the COMINIT signal has been asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP4: HR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

DP4: DR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal has been asserted.

When in this state the Physical layer waits for the COMWAKE signal to be negated.

Transition DP4:DP4: If the COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP4: DR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

Transition DP4:DP5: When the COMWAKE signal has been negated and the power-on reset sequence is being executed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP5: Calibrate state. The device shall remember if it was sent to partial or slumber mode for proper wakeup action. Calibration is optional. If bypassed or not implemented, proceed directly to DP6: DR_COMWAKE.

Transition DP4:DP6: When the COMWAKE signal has been negated and the return from partial or slumber sequence is being executed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state. The device shall remember if it was sent to partial or slumber mode for proper wakeup action.

DP5: DR_Calibrate state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal has been negated and optional calibration is supported.

When in this state the Physical layer shall perform calibration. Calibration is optional. If bypassed or not implemented, proceed directly to DP6: DR_COMWAKE.

Transition DP5:DP5: If calibration has not completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP5: DR_Calibration state.

Transition DP5:DP6: When calibration has completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state.

DP6: DR_COMWAKE state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal has been negated and optional calibration is not supported or when optional calibration has been completed.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the COMWAKE sequence.

Transition DP6:DP7: After transmission of the COMWAKE sequence, the Physical layer shall make an unconditional transition to the DP7: DR_SendALIGN state.

DP7: DR_SendALIGN state: This state is entered when the COMWAKE signal has been transmitted by the Physical layer.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the ALIGN primitive. The ALIGN primitive shall be transmitted at the fastest supported speed first. ALIGNs shall be transmitted only at valid frequencies (if PLL not locked, send D10.2). After the COMWAKE signal is released as specified in 14.5.6, the device shall ensure the interface is active (transmitting D10.2 if PLL not locked, or ALIGNs, not quiescent). The device shall not leave the bus idle for more than 53.3 ns (2 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) longer than the required COMWAKE detector off threshold max (See Table 11) to negate COMWAKE.

Transition DP7:DP7: If the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the host and ALIGN primitives have been transmitted by the Phy for less than 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 ALIGN primitives) the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP7: DR_SendALIGN state.

Transition DP7:DP8: If the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the host and ALIGN primitives have been transmitted by the Phy for 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 ALIGN primitives) at speed other than the lowest, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP8: DR_ReduceSpeed state. The device shall not leave the bus idle for more than 53.3 ns (2 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) longer than the required 175 ns to negate COMWAKE. If this is part of device initiated recovery from the Slumber or Partial power management state, the device Phy shall resume at the speed previously negotiated and shall not reduce its speed in response to failure to establish communications, see Transition DP7:DP9).

Transition DP7:DP9: If the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the host and ALIGN primitives have been transmitted by the Phy for 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 ALIGN primitives) at the lowest speed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP9: DR_Error state. The device shall not leave the bus idle for more than 53.3 ns (2 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) longer than the required COMWAKE detector off threshold max (See Table 11) to negate COMWAKE. If this is part of device initiated recovery from the Slumber or Partial power management state, the device Phy shall resume at the speed previously negotiated and shall not reduce its speed in response to failure to establish communications.

Transition DP7:DP10: When the ALIGN primitive is detected from the host (device locked to incoming data), the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP10: DR_Ready state. Device designers should be aware that the host is allowed 533 ns (20 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) after detecting the negation of COMWAKE to start sending D10.2 characters. Until this occurs, the bus is in idle condition and may be susceptible to crosstalk from other sources. Care should be taken so that crosstalk during this window does not result in a false detection of an ALIGN primitive. Devices may extend this timeout up to an additional 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD Times) , for a maximum total of 109.2 μs , as necessary to allow their receiver time to lock to the host ALIGN.

DP8: DR_ReduceSpeed state: This state is entered when the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the host and ALIGN primitives have been transmitted by the Phy for 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 ALIGN primitives) at speed other than the lowest.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transition to a slower speed.

Transition DP8:DP7: When the appropriate speed transition has completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP7: DR_SendALIGN state. Transition to a new speed is defined as being complete when the device is accurately transmitting a valid signal within the defined signaling tolerances for that speed.

Transition DP8:DP8: If the appropriate speed transition has not completed, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP8: DR_ReduceSpeed state.

DP9: DR_Error state: This state is entered when the ALIGN primitive is not detected from the host and ALIGN primitives have been transmitted by the Phy for 54.6 μs (2048 nominal Gen1 ALIGN primitives) at the lowest speed, or the previous negotiated speed failed to resume from a power state.

Transition DP9:DP9: When the error is not due to failure to resume, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP9: DR_Error state.

Transition DP9:DP6: If the error is due to failure to resume, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state.

DP10: DR_Ready state: This state is entered when ALIGN primitives have been received from the host.

When in this state the Physical layer shall transmit the words provided by the Link layer. PHYRDY shall be asserted when in this state and the Phy is maintaining synchronization with the incoming signal to its receiver, and is transmitting a valid signal on its transmitter.

Transition DP10:DP11: When the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP11: DR_Partial state.

Transition DP10:DP12: When the Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP12: DR_Slumber state.

Transition DP10:DP10: When neither the Partial nor Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP10: DR_Ready state.

DP11: DR_Partial state: This state is entered when the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer.

When in this state the Physical layer shall enter the Partial power mode state.

Transition DP11:DP6: When the Partial signal is negated from the device Link layer to initiate a resume from partial, and no COMWAKE is detected from the host, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state.

Transition DP11:DP4: When the Partial signal is negated from the device Link layer to initiate a resume from Partial and COMWAKE is detected from the host to initiate a resume from Partial, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP4: DR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

Transition DP11:DP11: When the Partial signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP11: DR_Partial state.

DP12: DR_Slumber state: This state is entered when the Slumber signal is detected from the Link layer.

When in this state the Physical layer shall enter the Slumber power mode state.

Transition DP12:DP6: When the Slumber signal is negated from the device Link layer to initiate a resume from Partial and no COMWAKE signal is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state.

Transition DP12:DP4: When the Slumber signal is negated from the device Link layer to initiate a resume from Partial and COMWAKE is asserted, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP4: DR_AwaitNoCOMWAKE state.

Transition DP12:DP12: When the Slumber signal is asserted from the Link layer, the Physical layer shall make a transition to the DP12: DR_Slumber state.

14.5.6.2.3 Power-up and COMRESET timing

14.5.6.2.3.1 COMRESET

COMRESET always originates from the host controller, and forces a hard reset in the device. It is indicated by transmitting bursts (See Clause 14.5.6) separated by an idle bus condition.

The OOB COMRESET signal shall consist of no less than six bursts, and a multiple of six bursts, including inter-burst temporal spacing. The COMRESET signal shall be:

1) sustained/continued uninterrupted as long as the hard reset is asserted, or
2) started during the system hard reset and ended some time after the deassertion of system hard reset, or
3) transmitted immediately following the deassertion of the system hard reset signal.

The host controller shall ignore any signal received from the device from the assertion of the hard reset signal until the COMRESET signal is transmitted.

Each burst shall be 160 Gen1 UI_{OOB}'s long (approximately 106.7 ns) and each inter-burst idle state shall be 480 Gen1 UI_{OOB}'s long (approximately 320 ns). A COMRESET detector will look for four consecutive bursts with 320 ns spacing (nominal).

Any spacing less than the COMRESET/COMINIT detector off threshold min time(See Table 11) or greater than the COMRESET/COMINIT detector off threshold max time shall negate the COMRESET detector output. The COMRESET interface signal to the Phy layer will initiate the Reset sequence shown Figure 41 below. The interface shall be held inactive for at least the COMRESET/COMINIT detector off threshold max time after the last burst to ensure far-end detector detects the deassertion properly.

Figure 41 is provided for clarity and is informative.

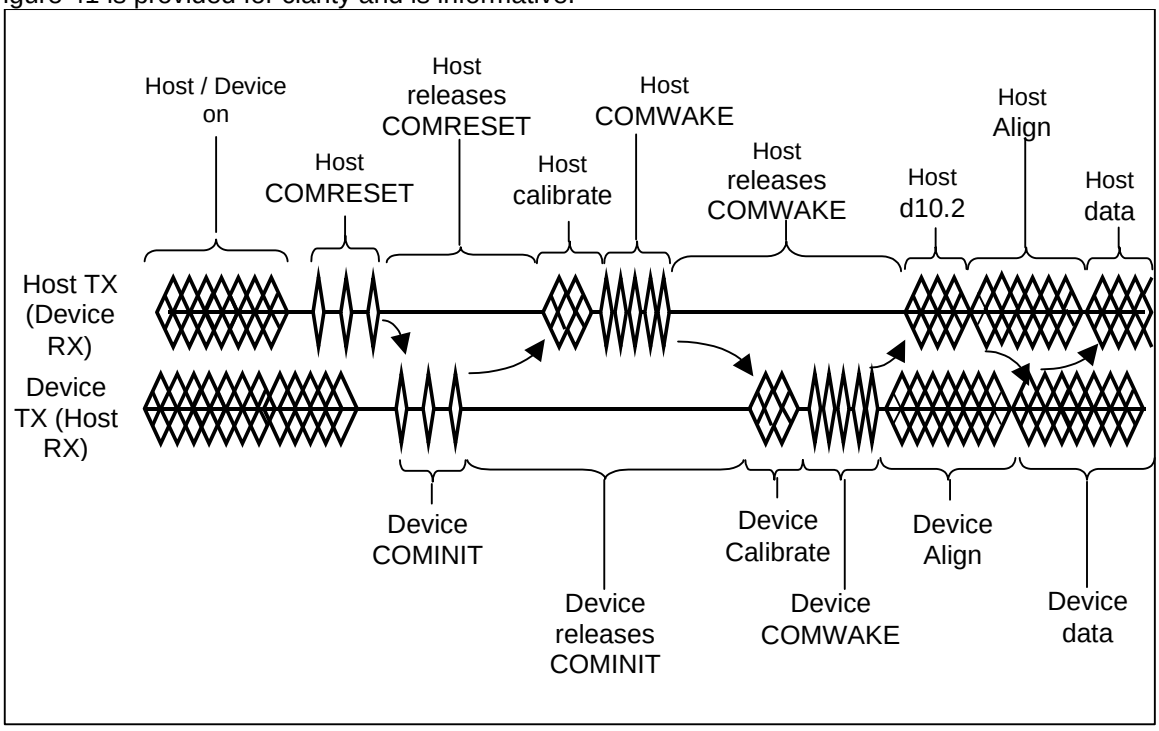


Figure 41 - COMRESET sequence

Description:

a) Host/device are powered and operating normally with some form of active communication.
b) Some condition in the host causes the host to issue COMRESET sequence.
c) Once the condition causing the COMRESET sequence is released, the host signal puts the bus in a quiescent condition.
d) When the device detects the release of COMRESET sequence, it responds with a COMINIT sequence. The device may initiate communications at any time by issuing a COMINIT sequence.
e) Host calibrates and issues a COMWAKE sequence.
f) Device responds - The device detects the COMWAKE sequence on its RX pair and calibrates its transmitter (optional). Following calibration, the device sends a six burst COMWAKE sequence and then sends a continuous stream of the ALIGN sequence starting at the device's highest supported speed. After ALIGN DWORDs have been sent for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) without a response from the host as determined by detection of ALIGN primitives received from the host, the device assumes that the host cannot communicate at that speed. If additional speeds are available, the device tries the next lower supported speed by sending ALIGN DWORDs at that rate for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times). This step is repeated for as many legacy speeds as are supported. Once the lowest speed has been reached without response from the host, the device will enter an error state.
g) Host locks - After detecting the COMWAKE sequence, the host starts transmitting D10.2 characters (See 14.6) at its lowest supported rate. Meanwhile, the host receiver locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, returns the ALIGN sequence to the device at the same speed as received. A host must be designed such that it can acquire lock in 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD DWORD times) at any given speed. The host should allow for at least 873.8us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) after detecting the release of COMWAKE to receive the first ALIGN. This will ensure interoperability with multi-generational and synchronous devices. If no is ALIGN is received within 873.8us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD times), the host restarts the power-on sequence - repeating indefinitely until told to stop by the application layer.
h) Device locks - The device locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, sends the SYNC primitive indicating it is ready to start normal operation.
i) Upon receipt of three back-to-back non-ALIGN primitives, the communication link is established and normal operation may begin.

14.5.6.2.4 COMINIT sequence

The COMINIT sequence originates from the drive and requests a communication initialization. It is executed by entering the Device phy initialization state diagram(See Figure 40) at the DP2: DR_COMINIT state. The following timing diagram is provided for clarity and is informative.

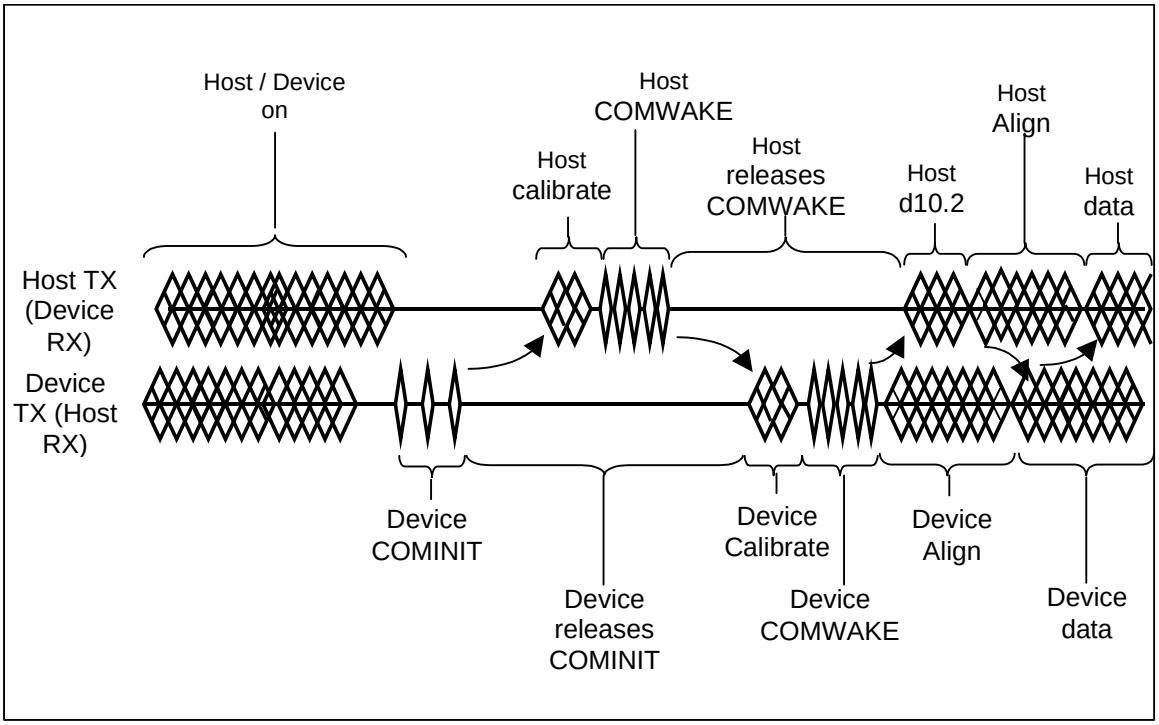


Figure 42 - COMINIT sequence

Description:

a) Host/device are powered and operating normally with some form of active communication.
b) Some condition in the device causes the device to issues a COMINIT
c) Host calibrates and issues a COMWAKE.
d) Device responds - The device detects the COMWAKE sequence on its RX pair and calibrates its transmitter (optional). Following calibration, the device sends a six burst COMWAKE sequence and then sends a continuous stream of the ALIGN sequence starting at the device's highest supported speed. After ALIGN DWORDs have been sent for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) without a response from the host as determined by detection of ALIGN primitives received from the host, the device assumes that the host cannot communicate at that speed. If additional speeds are available, the device tries the next lower supported speed by sending ALIGN DWORDs at that rate for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times). This step is repeated for as many legacy speeds as are supported. Once the lowest speed has been reached without response from the host, the device will enter an error state.
e) Host locks - After detecting the COMWAKE sequence, the host starts transmitting D10.2 characters (See 14.6) at its lowest supported rate. Meanwhile, the host receiver locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, returns the ALIGN sequence to the device at the same speed as received. A host must be designed such that it can acquire lock in 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) at any given speed. The host should allow for at least 873.8us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD times)after detecting the release of COMWAKE to receive the first ALIGN. This will ensure interoperability with multi-generational and synchronous devices. If no is ALIGN is received within 873.8us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD times), the host restarts the power-on sequence - repeating indefinitely until told to stop by the application layer..
f) Device locks - The device locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, sends the SYNC primitive indicating it is ready to start normal operation.
g) Upon receipt of three back-to-back non-ALIGN primitives, the communication link is established and normal operation may begin.

14.5.6.2.5 COMWAKE

COMWAKE can originate from either the host controller or the device. It is signaled by transmitting six bursts separated by an idle bus condition.
The OOB COMWAKE signaling shall consist of no less than six bursts, including inter-burst temporal spacing.
Each burst shall be 160 Gen1 UI_{OOB}'s (approximately 106.7ns) long and each inter-burst idle state shall be 160 Gen1 UI_{OOB}'s (approximately 106.7ns) long. A COMWAKE detector will look for four consecutive bursts with a COMWAKE transmit spacing time (approximately 106.7 ns nominal, see Table 11).
Any spacing less than COMWAKE detector off threshold min or greater than COMWAKE detector threshold max (See Table 11) shall negate the COMWAKE detector output. The COMWAKE OOB signaling is used to bring the Phy out of a power-down state (PARTIAL or SLUMBER) as described in section 14.5.6.2.6. The interface shall be held inactive for at least the COMWAKE detector off threshold max time (See Table 11). after the last burst to ensure far-end detector detects the deassertion properly. The device may hold the interface inactive no more than 228.3ns (the COMWAKE detector threshold max + 2 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) at the end of a COMWAKE to prevent susceptibility to crosstalk.

14.5.6.2.6 Interface power states

In the serial implementation of ATA, Interface Power States are controlled by the device and host adapter as defined in the Host phy initialization and Device phy initialization state diagrams see Figure 39 and Figure 40 and the Link Power Mode State Diagram see Figure 61.The Serial Interface Power States are defined in Table 16.

Table 16 - Interface power states

READY	The PHY logic and main PLL are both on and active. The interface is synchronized and capable of receiving and sending data.
Partial	The PHY logic is powered, but is in a reduced power state. Both signal lines on the interface are at a neutral logic state (common mode voltage). The exit latency from this state shall be no longer than 10μs.
Slumber	The PHY logic is powered but is in a reduced power state. Both signal lines on the interface are at the neutral logic state (common mode voltage). The exit latency from this state shall be no longer than 10ms.

14.5.6.2.6.1 Idle bus condition

During power management states (Partial and Slumber), the electrical interface shall maintain the proper common-mode levels, as cited in 14.4.10, with zero differential on both signal pairs (all four conductors at $V_{cm,dc}$) for all interface scenarios, except for the case where both the device and the host-controller are AC-coupled and the conductor pairs are allowed to float.

All transmitter designs shall ensure that transition to and from the idle bus condition do not result in a disturbance in the differential baseline on the conductors. To accomplish this, an AC-coupled transmitter shall hold its outputs at zero differential with the same common-mode level as normal operation when in the partial power management mode. When operating in the slumber power management mode, the common mode level of the AC coupled transmitter is allowed to float (while maintaining zero differential) as long as it remains within the limits cited in 14.4.10.

TX outputs shall not be held at a logical zero or one state during the idle bus condition since this results in a baseline shift when communications are resumed.

14.5.6.2.7 Power-on sequence timing diagram

The following timing diagrams and descriptions are provided for clarity and are informative. The state diagrams provided in section 14.5.6.2 comprise the normative behavior specification

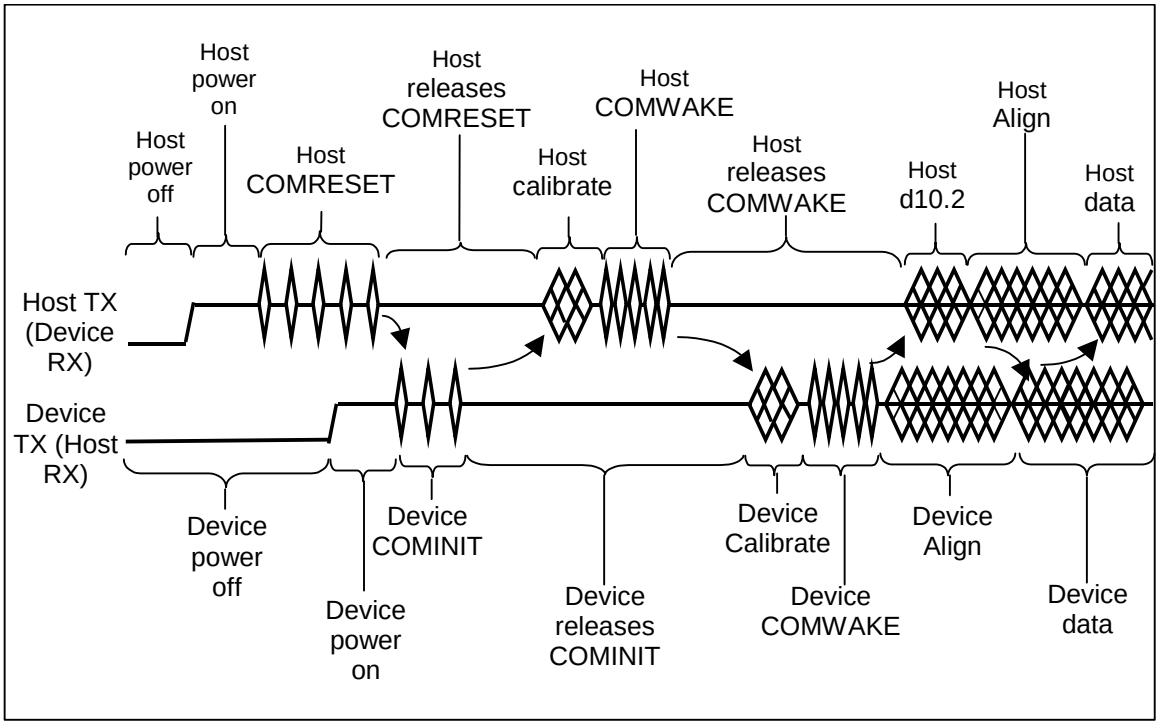


Figure 43 - Power-on Sequence

Description

a) Host/device power-off - Host and device power-off.
b) Power is applied - Host side signal conditioning pulls TX and RX pairs to neutral state (common mode voltage).
c) Host issues COMRESET sequence.
d) Once the power-on reset is released, the host puts the bus in a quiescent condition.
e) When the device detects the release of COMRESET sequence, it responds with a COMINIT sequence. This is also the entry point if the device is late starting. The device may initiate communications at any time by issuing a COMINIT.
f) Host calibrates and issues a COMWAKE sequence.
g) Device responds - The device detects the COMWAKE sequence on its RX pair and calibrates its transmitter (optional). Following calibration, the device sends a six burst COMWAKE sequence and then sends a continuous stream of the ALIGN sequence starting at the device's highest supported speed. After ALIGN DWORDs have been sent for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) without a response from the host as determined by detection of ALIGN primitives received from the host, the device assumes that the host cannot communicate at that speed. If additional speeds are available, the device tries the next lower supported speed by sending ALIGN DWORDs at that rate for 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times). This step is repeated for as many legacy speeds as are supported. Once the lowest speed has been reached without response from the host, the device will enter an error state.
h) Host locks - After detecting the COMWAKE sequence, the host starts transmitting D10.2 characters (See 14.6) at its lowest supported rate. Meanwhile, the host receiver locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, returns the ALIGN sequence to the device at the same speed as received. A host must be designed such that it can acquire lock in 54.6us (2048 nominal Gen1 DWORD times) at any given speed. The host should allow for at least 873.8us (32768 Gen1 DWORD times)after detecting the release of COMWAKE to receive the first ALIGN. This will ensure interoperability with multi-

generational and synchronous devices. If no is ALIGN is received within 873.8us (32768 nominal Gen1 DWORD times), the host restarts the power-on sequence - repeating indefinitely until told to stop by the application layer.

i) Device locks - The device locks to the ALIGN sequence and, when ready, sends the SYNC primitive indicating it is ready to start normal operation.

j) Upon receipt of three back-to-back non-ALIGN primitives, the communication link is established and normal operation may begin.

14.5.6.2.8 READY to Partial/Slumber

READY to Partial/Slumber is initiated by the transmission of the PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S and PMACK primitives as described in 15.4.9.

14.5.6.2.9 Partial/Slumber to READY

(See Figure 39) The host initiates a wakeup from the partial or slumber states by entering the initialization sequence at the HP5: HR_COMWAKE state in the Host phy initializationstate machine. Calibration and speed negotiation is bypassed since it has already been performed at power-on and system performance depends on quick resume latency. The device, therefore, transmits ALIGNs at the speed determined at power-on.

(See Figure 40) The device initiates a wakeup from the partial or slumber states by entering the initialization sequence at the DP6: DR_COMWAKE state in the Device phy initializationstate machine. Calibration and speed negotiation is bypassed since it has already been performed at power-on and system performance depends on quick resume latency. The device, therefore, transmits ALIGNs at the speed determined at power-on.

14.5.6.3 On to Partial/Slumber

14.5.6.3.1 Host initiated

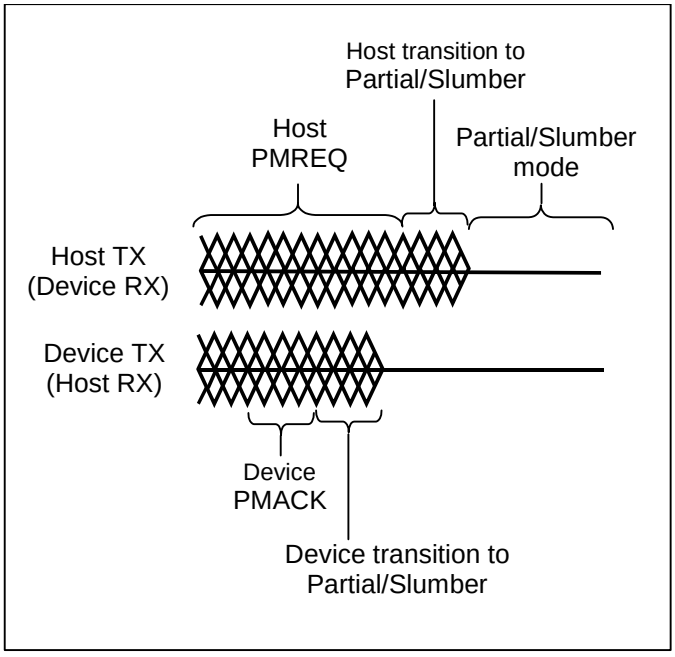


Figure 44 - On to Partial/Slumber - host initiated

14.5.6.3.2 Detailed sequence

a) Host Application layer sends request to host Transport layer.
b) Host Transport layer transmits request to host Link layer.
c) Host Link layer encodes request as PMREQ primitive and transmits it four times to host Phy layer.
d) Host Phy layer serializes PMREQ primitives and transmits them to device Phy layer.
e) Device Phy de-serializes PMREQ primitives and transmits them to device Link layer.
f) Device Link layer decodes PMREQ primitives and transmits request to device Transport layer.
g) Device Transport layer transmits request to device Application layer.
h) Device Application layer processes and accepts request. Issues accept to device Transport layer.
i) Device Transport layer transmits acceptance to device Link layer.
j) Device Link layer encodes acceptance as PMACK primitive and transmits it four times to device Phy layer.
k) Device Phy layer transmits four PMACK primitives to host Phy layer.
l) Device Link layer places device Phy layer in Partial/Slumber state.
m) Host Phy layer de-serializes PMACK primitives and transmits them to host Link layer.
n) Host Link layer decodes PMACK primitives and transmits acceptance to host Transport layer.
o) Host Link layer places host Phy layer in Partial/Slumber State.
p) Host Transport layer transmits acceptance to host Application layer.

14.5.6.3.3 Device initiated

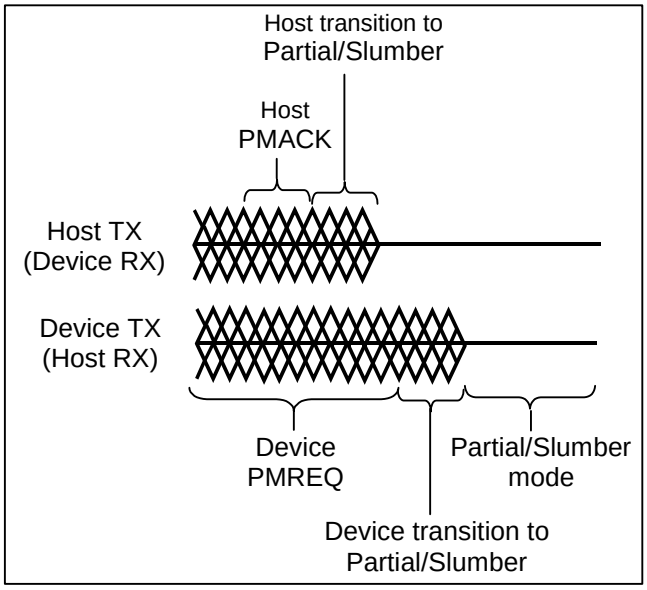


Figure 45 - ON to Partial/Slumber - device initiated

14.5.6.3.4 Detailed sequence

a) Device Application layer sends request to device Transport layer.
b) Device Transport layer transmits request to device Link layer.
c) Device Link layer encodes request as PMREQ primitive and transmits it to device Phy layer.
d) Device Phy layer serializes PMREQ primitives and transmits them to host Phy layer.
e) Host Phy de-serializes PMREQ primitives and transmits them to host Link layer.
f) Host Link layer decodes PMREQ primitives and transmits request to host Transport layer.
g) Host Transport layer transmits request to host Application layer.

NOTE – In this context, the host Application layer does not necessarily imply BIOS or other host CPU programming. Rather, the Application layer is the intelligent control section of the chipset logic.

h) Host Application layer processes and accepts request. Issues accept to host Transport layer.
i) Host Transport layer transmits acceptance to host Link layer.
j) Host link layer encodes acceptance as PMACK primitive and transmits it four times to host Phy layer.
k) Host Phy layer transmits four PMACK primitives to device Phy layer.
l) Host Link layer asserts Partial/Slumber signal and places host Phy layer in Partial/Slumber state.
m) Host Phy layer negates Ready signal.
n) Device Phy layer de-serializes PMACK primitives and transmits them to device Link layer.
o) Device Link layer decodes PMACK primitives and transmits acceptance to device Transport layer.
p) Device Link layer asserts Partial/Slumber signal and places device Phy layer in Partial/Slumber State.
q) Device Phy layer negates Ready signal.
r) Device Transport layer transmits acceptance to device Application layer.

14.6 Elasticity buffer management

Elasticity buffer circuitry may be required to absorb the slight differences in frequencies between the host and device. The greatest frequency difference result from a SSC compliant device talking to a non SSC device. The average frequency difference will be just over 0.25% with excursions as much as 0.5%. Since an elasticity buffer has a finite length, there needs to be a mechanism at the physical layer protocol level that allows this receiver buffer to be reset without dropping or adding any bits to the data stream. This is especially important during reception of long continuous streams of data. This physical layer protocol must not only support oversampling architectures but must also accommodate unlimited frame sizes (the frame size is limited by the CRC polynomial).

The Link Layer shall keep track of a resettable counter that rolls over at most every 1024 transmitted characters (256 DWORDs). Prior to, or at the pre-roll-over point (all 1's), the Link Layer shall trigger the issuance of dual, consecutive ALIGN primitives which shall be included in the DWORD count.

After communications have been established, the first and second words out of the Link Layer shall be the dual-ALIGN primitive sequence, followed by at most 254 non-ALIGN DWORDs. The cycle repeats starting with another dual-consecutive ALIGN primitive sequence. The Link may issue more than one dual ALIGN primitive sequence but shall not send an unpaired ALIGN primitive (i.e. ALIGN primitives are always sent in pairs) except as noted for retimed loopback.

14.7 BIST (Built in self test)

BIST provides loopback testing of portions of the physical layer. BIST is initiated by the BIST ACTIVATE FIS (See 16.5.6).

14.7.1 Loopback testing

Three types of Loopback test schemes are defined.

1) Far-End Retimed - Mandatory
2) Far-End Analog - Optional
3) Near-End Analog (Effectively Retimed) - Optional

14.7.1.1 Loopback -- Far end retimed

Figure 46 below, illustrates the scope, at the architectural block diagram level, of the Far-End Retimed loopback. As this loopback scheme needs a specific action from the far-end connected interface, this mode shall be entered by way of the BIST FIS described in 16.5.6.

The Far-End Interface shall remain in this Far-End Retimed Loopback, until receipt of the COMRESET/COMINIT OOB Signaling sequence.

As a minimum, Far-End Retimed Loopback shall involve far-end circuitry such that the datastream, at the Far-End interface, is extracted by the Serializer/Deserializer (SerDes) and data recovery circuit (DRC) before being sent back through the SerDes and Transmitter with appropriately inserted retiming ALIGN primitives. The data may be decoded and descrambled in order to provide testing coverage for those portions of the host/device, provided the data is re-scrambled using the same sequence of scrambler syndromes. The returned data shall be the same as the received data with the exception that the returned data may be encoded with different starting running disparity.

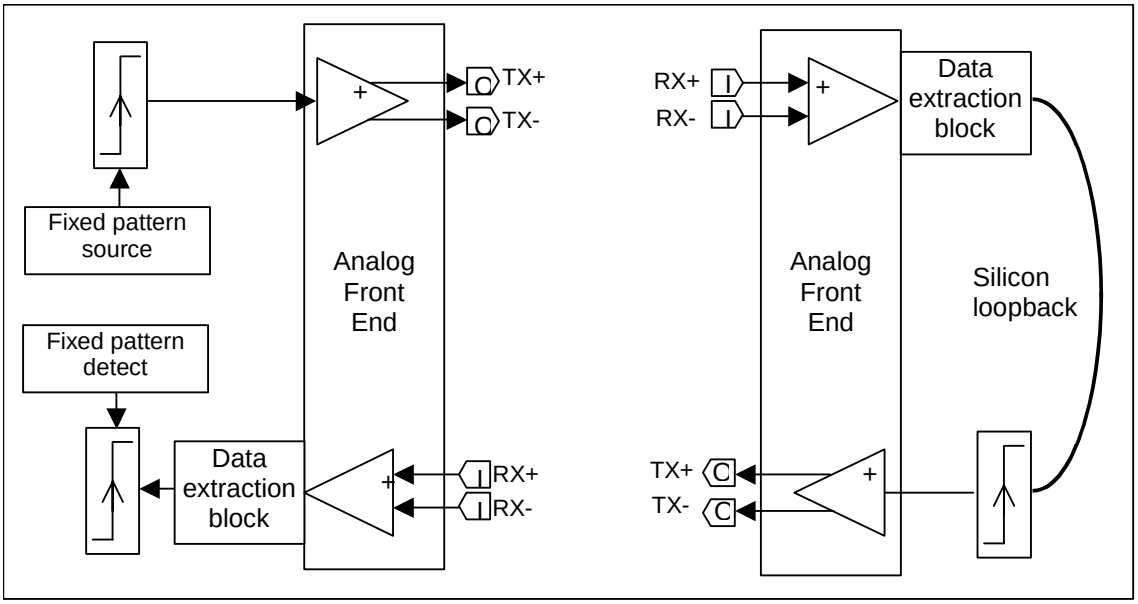


Figure 46 - Loopback far-end retimed

The initiator of the retimed loopback mode must account for the loopback host/device consuming up to two ALIGN primitives (one ALIGN sequence) every 256 DWORDs transmitted and, if it requires any ALIGN primitives to be present in the returned data stream, it shall insert additional ALIGN's in the transmitted stream. The initiator shall transmit additional ALIGN sequences in a single burst at the normal interval of every 256 DWORDs transmitted (as opposed to inserting ALIGN sequences at half the interval).

The loopback host/device may remove zero, one, or two ALIGN primitives from the received data. It may insert one or more ALIGN primitives if they are directly preceded or followed by the initiator inserted ALIGN primitives (resulting in ALIGN sequences consisting of at least two ALIGN primitives) or it may insert two or more ALIGN primitives if not preceded or followed by the initiator's ALIGN primitives. One side effect of the loopback retiming is that the returned data stream may have instances of an odd number of ALIGN primitives, however, returned ALIGN's are always in bursts of two and if the initiator transmitted dual ALIGN sequences (four consecutive ALIGN's), then the returned data stream shall include ALIGN bursts that are no shorter than two ALIGN primitives long (although the length of the ALIGN burst may be odd). The initiator of the retimed loopback mode shall not assume any relationship between the relative position of the ALIGN's returned by the loopback host/device and the relative position of the ALIGN's sent by the initiator.

In retimed loopback mode, the initiator shall transmit only valid 8b/10b characters so the loopback host/device may 10b/8b decode it and re-encode it before retransmission. If the loopback host/device descrambles incoming data it is responsible for rescrambling it with the same sequence of scrambling syndromes in order to ensure the returned data is unchanged from the received data. The loopback host/device's running disparity for its transmitter and receiver are not guaranteed to be the same and thus the loopback initiator shall 10b/8b decode the returned data rather than use the raw 10b returned stream for the purpose of data comparison. The loopback host/device shall return all received data unaltered and shall disregard protocol processing of primitives. Only the OOB signals and ALIGN processing is acted on by the loopback host/device, while all other data is retransmitted without interpretation.

14.7.1.2 Loopback -- far-end analog (Optional)

Figure 47 below, illustrates the scope, at the architectural block diagram level, of the Far-End Analog loopback. As this loopback scheme needs a specific action from the far-end connected interface, this mode, if implemented, shall be entered by way of the BIST FIS described in 16.5.6.

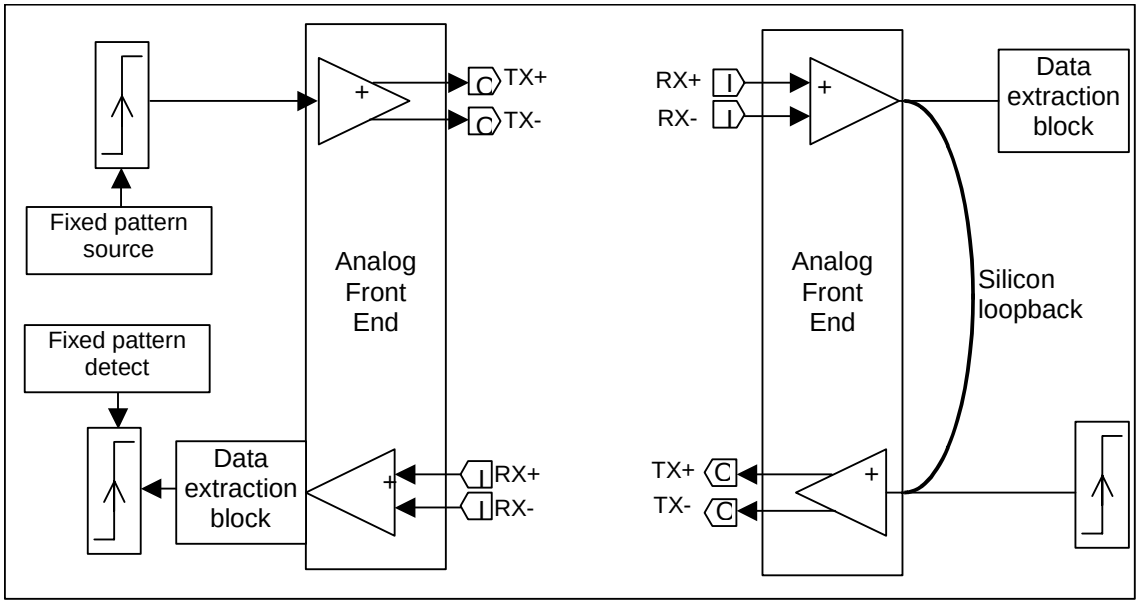


Figure 47 - Loopback far-end analog

Once entered, the Far-End Interface shall remain in this Far-End Analog Loopback mode, until receipt of the COMRESET/COMINIT OOB Signaling sequence.

The implementation of Far End AFE Loopback is optional due to the round-trip characteristics of the test as well as the lack of retiming. This mode is intended to give a quick indication of connectivity, and test failure is not an indication of system failure.

14.7.1.2.1 Loopback -- near-end analog (Optional)

Figure 48 below, illustrates the scope, at the architectural block diagram level, of the Near-End Analog loopback. This loopback scheme, if implemented, needs the far-end connected interface to be in a non-transmitting mode, such as Slumber, or Partial interface power management states.

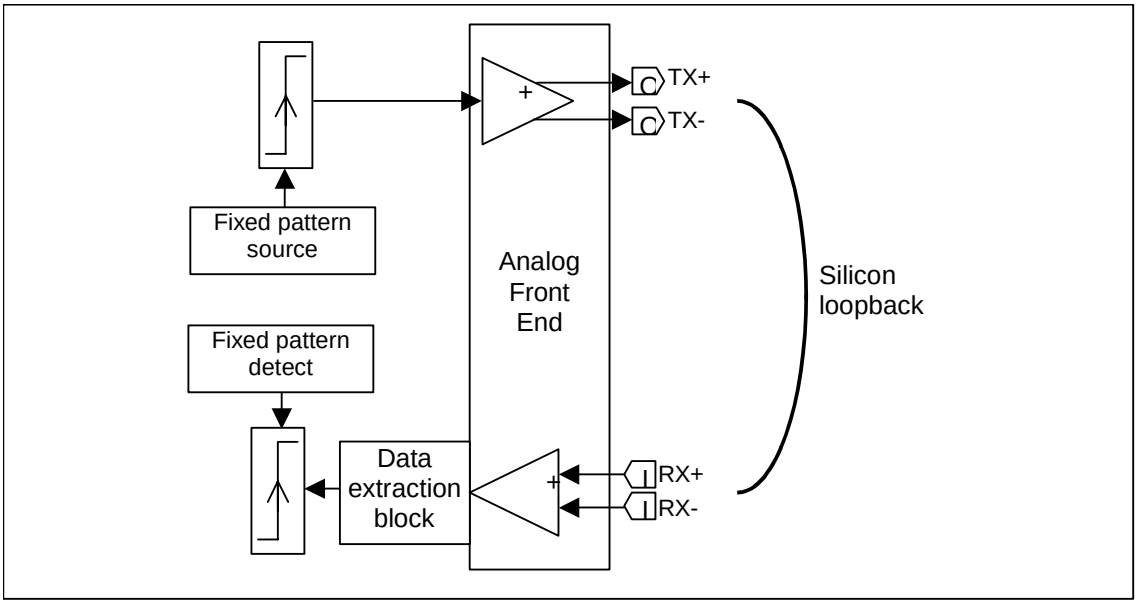


Figure 48 - Loopback - near-end analog

15 Serial interface Link layer

15.1 Overview

The Link layer transmits and receives frames, transmits primitives based on control signals from the Transport layer, and receives primitives from the Physical layer which are converted to control signals to the Transport layer. The Link layer need not be cognizant of the content of frames. Host and device Link layer state machines differ only in the fact that the host shall back-off in the event of a collision when attempting to transmit a frame (See Figure 59 – Link transmit state diagram).

15.1.1 Frame transmission

When requested by the Transport layer to transmit a frame, the Link layer provides the following services:

- Negotiates with its peer Link layer to transmit a frame, resolves arbitration conflicts if both host and device request transmission
- Inserts frame envelope around Transport layer data (i.e., SOF, CRC, EOF, etc.).
- Receives data in the form of DWORDs from the Transport layer.
- Calculates CRC on Transport layer data.
- Transmits frame.
- Provides frame flow control in response to requests from the FIFO or the peer Link layer.
- Receives frame receipt acknowledge from peer Link layer.
- Reports good transmission or Link/Physical layer errors to Transport layer.
- Performs 8b/10b encoding
- Scrambles (transforms) control and data DWORDs in such a way to distribute the potential EMI emissions over a broader range.

15.1.2 Frame receipt

When data is received from the Physical layer, the Link layer provides the following services:

- Acknowledges to the peer Link layer readiness to receive a frame.
- Receives data in the form of encoded characters from the Physical layer.
- Decodes the encoded 8b/10b character stream into aligned DWORDs of data.
- Removes the envelope around frames (i.e., SOF, CRC, EOF).
- Calculates CRC on the received DWORDs.
- Provides frame flow control in response to requests from the FIFO or the peer Link layer.
- Compares the calculated CRC to the received CRC.
- Reports good reception or Link/Physical layer errors to Transport layer and the peer Link layer.
- Descrambles (untransforms) the control and data DWORDs received from a peer Link layer.

15.2 Encoding method

Information to be transmitted over the serial interface shall be encoded a byte (eight bits) at a time along with a data or control character indicator into a 10-bit encoded character and then sent serially bit by bit. Information received over the serial interface shall be collected ten bits at a time, assembled into an encoded character, and decoded into the correct data characters and control characters. The 8b/10b code allows for the encoding of all 256 combinations of eight-bit data. A smaller subset of the control character set is utilized by the serial implementation of ATA.

15.2.1 Notation and conventions

The coding scheme uses a letter notation for describing data bits and control variables. A description of the translation process between these notations follows. This section also describes a convention used to differentiate data characters from control characters. Finally, translation examples for both a data character and a control character are presented. See 3.2.10.

An unencoded byte of data is composed of eight bits A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H and the control variable Z. The encoding process results in a 10 bit character a,b,c,d,e,i,f,g,h,j. A bit is either a binary zero or binary one. The control variable, Z, has a value of D or K. When the control variable associated with a byte has the value D, the byte is referred to as a data character. When the control variable associated with a byte has the value K, the byte is referred to as a control character.

If a data byte is not accompanied with a specific control variable value the control variable Z is assumed to be Z = D and the data byte shall be encoded as a data character.

The following figure illustrates the association between the numbered unencoded bits in a byte, the control variable, and the letter-labeled bits in the encoding scheme:

Data byte notation	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Control variable
Unencoded bit notation	H	G	F	E	D	C	B	A	Z

Figure 49 - Bit designations

Each character is given a name Zxx.y where Z is the value of the control variable (D for a data character, K for a control character), xx is the decimal value of the binary number composed of the bits E, D, C, B and A in that order, and y is the decimal value of the binary number composed of the bits H, G and F.

Figure 50, following, shows the relationship between the various representations.

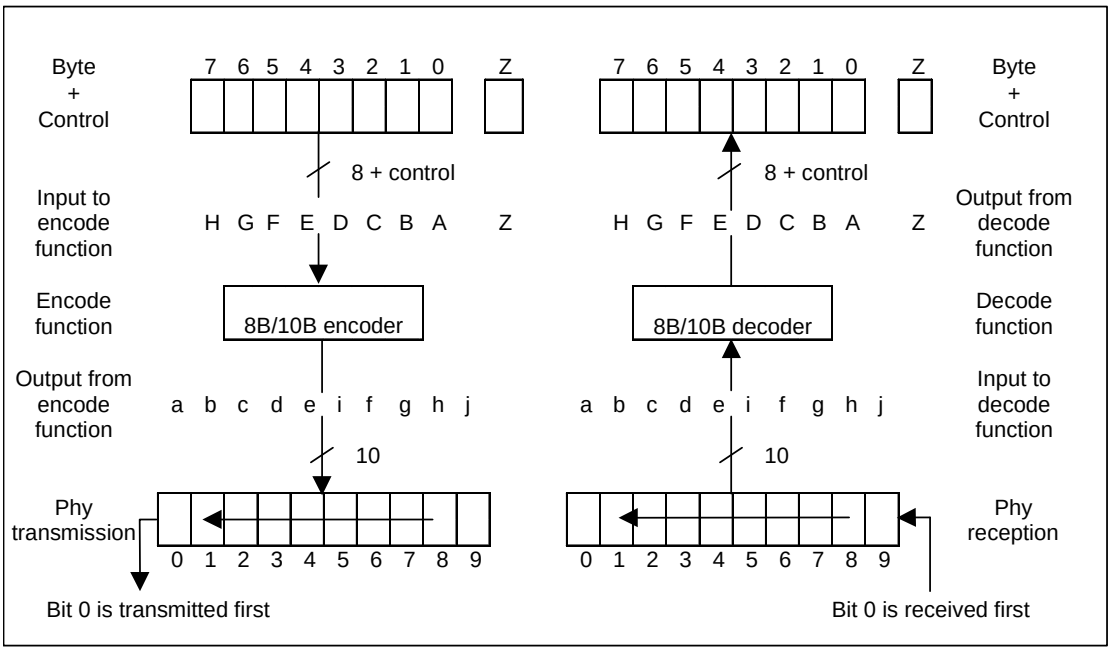


Figure 50 - Nomenclature reference

Figure 51 shows conversions from byte notation to character notation for a control and data byte.

Byte notation	BCh, control character		4Ah, data character	
Bit notation	76543210	Control variable	76543210	Control variable
	10111100	K	01001010	D
Unencoded bit notation	HGF EDCBA	Z	HGF EDCBA	Z
	101 11100	K	010 01010	D
Bit notation reordered to conform with Zxx.y convention	Z	EDCBA HGF	Z	EDCBA HGF
	K	11100 101	D	01010 010
Character name	K 28 .5		D 10 .2	

Figure 51 - Conversion examples

15.2.2 Character code

The coding scheme translates unencoded data and control bytes to characters. The encoded characters are then transmitted by the physical layer over the serial line where they are received from the physical layer and decoded into the corresponding byte and control value.

The coding scheme uses a subset of the 8b/10b coding method. The code used in the serial implementation of ATA uses all 256 data byte encodings while only two of the control codes are used. The reception of any unused code is a class of reception error referred to as a code violation. See 15.2.4.1.

15.2.2.1 Code construction

The 8b/10b coding process is defined in two stages. The first stage encodes the first five bits of the unencoded input byte into a six bit sub-block using a 5B/6B encoder. The input to this stage includes the current running disparity value. The second stage uses a 3B/4B encoder to encode the remaining three bits of the data byte and the running disparity as modified by the 5B/6B encoder into a four bit value.

In the derivations that follow, the control variable (Z) is assumed to have a value of D, and thus is an implicit input.

15.2.2.2 The concept of running disparity

Running Disparity is a binary parameter with either the value negative (-) or the value positive (+).

After transmitting any encoded character, the transmitter shall calculate a new value for its Running Disparity based on the value of the transmitted character.

After a COMRESET sequence, initial power-up, exiting any power management state, or exiting any diagnostic mode, the receiver shall assume either the positive or negative value for its initial Running Disparity. Upon reception of an encoded character the receiver shall determine whether the encoded character is valid according to the following rules and tables and shall calculate a new value for its Running Disparity based on the contents of the received character.

The following rules shall be used to calculate a new Running Disparity value for the transmitter after it sends an encoded character (transmitter's new Running Disparity) and for the receiver upon reception of an encoded character (receiver's new Running Disparity).

Running Disparity for an encoded character shall be calculated on two sub-blocks where the first six bits (abcdei) form one sub-block - the six-bit sub-block. The last four bits (fghj) form the second sub-block - the

four-bit sub-block. Running Disparity at the beginning of the six-bit sub-block is the Running Disparity at the end of the last encoded character or the initial conditions described above for the first encoded character transmitted or received. Running Disparity at the beginning of the four-bit sub-block is the resulting Running Disparity from the six-bit sub-block. Running Disparity at the end of the encoded character - and the initial Running Disparity for the next encoded character - is the Running Disparity at the end of the four-bit sub-block.

Running Disparity for each of the sub-blocks shall be calculated as follows:

> Running Disparity at the end of any sub-block is positive if the sub-block contains more ones than zeros. It is also positive at the end of the six-bit sub-block if the value of the six-bit sub-block is 000111, and is positive at the end of the four-bit sub-block if the value of the four-bit sub-block is 0011.
>
> Running Disparity at the end of any sub-block is negative if the sub-block contains more zeros than ones. It is also negative at the end of the six-bit sub-block if the value of the six-bit sub-block is 111000, and is negative at the end of the four-bit sub-block if the value of the four-bit sub-block is 1100.
>
> Otherwise, for any sub-block with an equal number of zeros and ones, the Running Disparity at the end of the sub-block is the same as at the beginning of the sub-block. Sub-blocks with an equal number of zeros and ones are said to have neutral disparity.

The 8b/10b code restricts the generation of the 000111, 111000, 0011 and 1100 sub-blocks in order to limit the run length of zeros and ones between sub-blocks. Sub-blocks containing 000111 or 0011 are generated only when the running disparity at the beginning of the sub-block is positive, resulting in positive Running Disparity at the end of the sub-block. Similarly, sub-blocks containing 111000 or 1100 are generated only when the running disparity at the beginning of the sub-block is negative and the resulting Running Disparity is negative.

The rules for Running Disparity result in generation of a character with disparity that is either the opposite of the previous character or neutral.

Sub-blocks with non-zero (non-neutral) disparity shall be of alternating disparity.

15.2.2.3 Data encoding

Table 17 - 5b/6b coding and Table 18 - 3b/4b coding describe the code and running disparity generation rules for each of the sub-blocks. The results can be used to generate the data in the data character tables.

In the tables which follow rd+ or rd- represent the current (incoming) running disparity and rd' represents the resulting Running Disparity. The resulting Running Disparity columns use -rd to indicate a change in Running Disparity polarity while rd indicates the resulting sub-block has neutral disparity.

Table 17 - 5b/6b coding

Inputs		abcdei outputs		rd'	Inputs		abcdei outputs		rd'
Dx	EDCBA	rd+	rd-		Dx	EDCBA	rd+	rd-	
D0	00000	011000	100111	-rd	D16	10000	100100	011011	-rd
D1	00001	100010	011101	-rd	D17	10001	100011		rd
D2	00010	010010	101101	-rd	D18	10010	010011		rd
D3	00011	110001		rd	D19	10011	110010		rd
D4	00100	001010	110101	-rd	D20	10100	001011		rd
D5	00101	101001		rd	D21	10101	101010		rd
D6	00110	011001		rd	D22	10110	011010		rd
D7	00111	000111	111000	rd	D23	10111	000101	111010	-rd
D8	01000	000110	111001	-rd	D24	11000	001100	110011	-rd
D9	01001	100101		rd	D25	11001	100110		rd
D10	01010	010101		rd	D26	11010	010110		rd
D11	01011	110100		rd	D27	11011	001001	110110	-rd
D12	01100	001101		rd	D28	11100	001110		rd
D13	01101	101100		rd	D29	11101	010001	101110	-rd
D14	01110	011100		rd	D30	11110	100001	011110	-rd
D15	01111	101000	010111	-rd	D31	11111	010100	101011	-rd

Table 18 - 3b/4b coding

Inputs		fghj outputs		rd'
Dx.y	HGF	rd+	rd-	
Dx.0	000	0100	1011	-rd
Dx.1	001	1001		rd
Dx.2	010	0101		rd
Dx.3	011	0011	1100	rd
Dx.4	100	0010	1101	-rd
Dx.5	101	1010		rd
Dx.6	110	0110		rd
Dx.P7	111	0001	1110	-rd
Dx.A7	111	1000	0111	-rd
NOTE – A7 replaces P7 if[(rd>0) and (e=i=0)] or [(rd<0) and (e=i=1)]				

15.2.2.4 Encoding examples

The coding examples in Figure 52 illustrate how the running disparity calculations are done.

The first conversion example completes the translation of data byte value 4Ah (which is the character name of D10.2) into an encoded character value of "abcdei fghj" = "010101 0101". This value has special significance because (1) it is of neutral disparity, and also contains an alternating zero/one pattern that represents the highest data frequency which can be generated.

In the second example the 8b/10b character named D11.7 is encoded. Assuming a positive value for the incoming Running Disparity, this example shows the Dx.P7/Dx.A7 substitution. With an initial rd+ value, D10

translates to an abcdei value of 110100, with a resulting Running Disparity of positive for the 6-bit sub-block. Encoding the 4-bit sub-block triggers the substitution clause of Dx.A7 for Dx.P7 since [(rd>0) AND (e=i=0)].

Initial rd	Character name	abcdei output	6-bit sub-block rd	fghj output	4-bit sub-block rd	Encoded character	Ending rd
-	D10.2	010101	-	0101	-	010101 0101	-
+	D11.7	110100	+	1000	-	110100 1000	-

Figure 52 - Coding examples

15.2.2.5 8b/10b valid encoded characters

The following tables define the valid data characters and valid control characters. These tables shall be used for generating encoded characters (encoding) for transmission. In the reception process, the table is used to look up and verify the validity of received characters (decoding).

In the tables, each data character and control character has two columns that represent two encoded characters. One column represents the output if the current Running Disparity is negative and the other is the output if the current Running Disparity is positive.

15.2.2.5.1 Data characters

Table 19 - Valid data characters

Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output		Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output	
		Current rd-	Current rd+			Current rd-	Current rd+
D0.0	00h	100111 0100	011000 1011	D0.1	20h	100111 1001	011000 1001
D1.0	01h	011101 0100	100010 1011	D1.1	21h	011101 1001	100010 1001
D2.0	02h	101101 0100	010010 1011	D2.1	22h	101101 1001	010010 1001
D3.0	03h	110001 1011	110001 0100	D3.1	23h	110001 1001	110001 1001
D4.0	04h	110101 0100	001010 1011	D4.1	24h	110101 1001	001010 1001
D5.0	05h	101001 1011	101001 0100	D5.1	25h	101001 1001	101001 1001
D6.0	06h	011001 1011	011001 0100	D6.1	26h	011001 1001	011001 1001
D7.0	07h	111000 1011	000111 0100	D7.1	27h	111000 1001	000111 1001
D8.0	08h	111001 0100	000110 1011	D8.1	28h	111001 1001	000110 1001
D9.0	09h	100101 1011	100101 0100	D9.1	29h	100101 1001	100101 1001
D10.0	0Ah	010101 1011	010101 0100	D10.1	2Ah	010101 1001	010101 1001
D11.0	0Bh	110100 1011	110100 0100	D11.1	2Bh	110100 1001	110100 1001
D12.0	0Ch	001101 1011	001101 0100	D12.1	2Ch	001101 1001	001101 1001
D13.0	0Dh	101100 1011	101100 0100	D13.1	2Dh	101100 1001	101100 1001
D14.0	0Eh	011100 1011	011100 0100	D14.1	2Eh	011100 1001	011100 1001
D15.0	0Fh	010111 0100	101000 1011	D15.1	2Fh	010111 1001	101000 1001
D16.0	10h	011011 0100	100100 1011	D16.1	30h	011011 1001	100100 1001
D17.0	11h	100011 1011	100011 0100	D17.1	31h	100011 1001	100011 1001
D18.0	12h	010011 1011	010011 0100	D18.1	32h	010011 1001	010011 1001
D19.0	13h	110010 1011	110010 0100	D19.1	33h	110010 1001	110010 1001
D20.0	14h	001011 1011	001011 0100	D20.1	34h	001011 1001	001011 1001
D21.0	15h	101010 1011	101010 0100	D21.1	35h	101010 1001	101010 1001
D22.0	16h	011010 1011	011010 0100	D22.1	36h	011010 1001	011010 1001
D23.0	17h	111010 0100	000101 1011	D23.1	37h	111010 1001	000101 1001
D24.0	18h	110011 0100	001100 1011	D24.1	38h	110011 1001	001100 1001
D25.0	19h	100110 1011	100110 0100	D25.1	39h	100110 1001	100110 1001
D26.0	1Ah	010110 1011	010110 0100	D26.1	3Ah	010110 1001	010110 1001
D27.0	1Bh	110110 0100	001001 1011	D27.1	3Bh	110110 1001	001001 1001
D28.0	1Ch	001110 1011	001110 0100	D28.1	3Ch	001110 1001	001110 1001
D29.0	1Dh	101110 0100	010001 1011	D29.1	3Dh	101110 1001	010001 1001
D30.0	1Eh	011110 0100	100001 1011	D30.1	3Eh	011110 1001	100001 1001
D31.0	1Fh	101011 0100	010100 1011	D31.1	3Fh	101011 1001	010100 1001

(continued)

Table 19 - Valid data characters *(continued)*

Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output		Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output	
		Current rd-	Current rd+			Current rd-	Current rd+
D0.2	40h	100111 0101	011000 0101	D0.3	60h	100111 0011	011000 1100
D1.2	41h	011101 0101	100010 0101	D1.3	61h	011101 0011	100010 1100
D2.2	42h	101101 0101	010010 0101	D2.3	62h	101101 0011	010010 1100
D3.2	43h	110001 0101	110001 0101	D3.3	63h	110001 1100	110001 0011
D4.2	44h	110101 0101	001010 0101	D4.3	64h	110101 0011	001010 1100
D5.2	45h	101001 0101	101001 0101	D5.3	65h	101001 1100	101001 0011
D6.2	46h	011001 0101	011001 0101	D6.3	66h	011001 1100	011001 0011
D7.2	47h	111000 0101	000111 0101	D7.3	67h	111000 1100	000111 0011
D8.2	48h	111001 0101	000110 0101	D8.3	68h	111001 0011	000110 1100
D9.2	49h	100101 0101	100101 0101	D9.3	69h	100101 1100	100101 0011
D10.2	4Ah	010101 0101	010101 0101	D10.3	6Ah	010101 1100	010101 0011
D11.2	4Bh	110100 0101	110100 0101	D11.3	6Bh	110100 1100	110100 0011
D12.2	4Ch	001101 0101	001101 0101	D12.3	6Ch	001101 1100	001101 0011
D13.2	4Dh	101100 0101	101100 0101	D13.3	6Dh	101100 1100	101100 0011
D14.2	4Eh	011100 0101	011100 0101	D14.3	6Eh	011100 1100	011100 0011
D15.2	4Fh	010111 0101	101000 0101	D15.3	6Fh	010111 0011	101000 1100
D16.2	50h	011011 0101	100100 0101	D16.3	70h	011011 0011	100100 1100
D17.2	51h	100011 0101	100011 0101	D17.3	71h	100011 1100	100011 0011
D18.2	52h	010011 0101	010011 0101	D18.3	72h	010011 1100	010011 0011
D19.2	53h	110010 0101	110010 0101	D19.3	73h	110010 1100	110010 0011
D20.2	54h	001011 0101	001011 0101	D20.3	74h	001011 1100	001011 0011
D21.2	55h	101010 0101	101010 0101	D21.3	75h	101010 1100	101010 0011
D22.2	56h	011010 0101	011010 0101	D22.3	76h	011010 1100	011010 0011
D23.2	57h	111010 0101	000101 0101	D23.3	77h	111010 0011	000101 1100
D24.2	58h	110011 0101	001100 0101	D24.3	78h	110011 0011	001100 1100
D25.2	59h	100110 0101	100110 0101	D25.3	79h	100110 1100	100110 0011
D26.2	5Ah	010110 0101	010110 0101	D26.3	7Ah	010110 1100	010110 0011
D27.2	5Bh	110110 0101	001001 0101	D27.3	7Bh	110110 0011	001001 1100
D28.2	5Ch	001110 0101	001110 0101	D28.3	7Ch	001110 1100	001110 0011
D29.2	5Dh	101110 0101	010001 0101	D29.3	7Dh	101110 0011	010001 1100
D30.2	5Eh	011110 0101	100001 0101	D30.3	7Eh	011110 0011	100001 1100
D31.2	5Fh	101011 0101	010100 0101	D31.3	7Fh	101011 0011	010100 1100

(continued)

Table 19 - Valid data characters *(continued)*

Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output		Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output	
		Current rd-	Current rd+			Current rd-	Current rd+
D0.4	80h	100111 0010	011000 1101	D0.5	A0h	100111 1010	011000 1010
D1.4	81h	011101 0010	100010 1101	D1.5	A1h	011101 1010	100010 1010
D2.4	82h	101101 0010	010010 1101	D2.5	A2h	101101 1010	010010 1010
D3.4	83h	110001 1101	110001 0010	D3.5	A3h	110001 1010	110001 1010
D4.4	84h	110101 0010	001010 1101	D4.5	A4h	110101 1010	001010 1010
D5.4	85h	101001 1101	101001 0010	D5.5	A5h	101001 1010	101001 1010
D6.4	86h	011001 1101	011001 0010	D6.5	A6h	011001 1010	011001 1010
D7.4	87h	111000 1101	000111 0010	D7.5	A7h	111000 1010	000111 1010
D8.4	88h	111001 0010	000110 1101	D8.5	A8h	111001 1010	000110 1010
D9.4	89h	100101 1101	100101 0010	D9.5	A9h	100101 1010	100101 1010
D10.4	8Ah	010101 1101	010101 0010	D10.5	AAh	010101 1010	010101 1010
D11.4	8Bh	110100 1101	110100 0010	D11.5	ABh	110100 1010	110100 1010
D12.4	8Ch	001101 1101	001101 0010	D12.5	ACh	001101 1010	001101 1010
D13.4	8Dh	101100 1101	101100 0010	D13.5	ADh	101100 1010	101100 1010
D14.4	8Eh	011100 1101	011100 0010	D14.5	AEh	011100 1010	011100 1010
D15.4	8Fh	010111 0010	101000 1101	D15.5	AFh	010111 1010	101000 1010
D16.4	90h	011011 0010	100100 1101	D16.5	B0h	011011 1010	100100 1010
D17.4	91h	100011 1101	100011 0010	D17.5	B1h	100011 1010	100011 1010
D18.4	92h	010011 1101	010011 0010	D18.5	B2h	010011 1010	010011 1010
D19.4	93h	110010 1101	110010 0010	D19.5	B3h	110010 1010	110010 1010
D20.4	94h	001011 1101	001011 0010	D20.5	B4h	001011 1010	001011 1010
D21.4	95h	101010 1101	101010 0010	D21.5	B5h	101010 1010	101010 1010
D22.4	96h	011010 1101	011010 0010	D22.5	B6h	011010 1010	011010 1010
D23.4	97h	111010 0010	000101 1101	D23.5	B7h	111010 1010	000101 1010
D24.4	98h	110011 0010	001100 1101	D24.5	B8h	110011 1010	001100 1010
D25.4	99h	100110 1101	100110 0010	D25.5	B9h	100110 1010	100110 1010
D26.4	9Ah	010110 1101	010110 0010	D26.5	BAh	010110 1010	010110 1010
D27.4	9Bh	110110 0010	001001 1101	D27.5	BBh	110110 1010	001001 1010
D28.4	9Ch	001110 1101	001110 0010	D28.5	BCh	001110 1010	001110 1010
D29.4	9Dh	101110 0010	010001 1101	D29.5	BDh	101110 1010	010001 1010
D30.4	9Eh	011110 0010	100001 1101	D30.5	BEh	011110 1010	100001 1010
D31.4	9Fh	101011 0010	010100 1101	D31.5	BFh	101011 1010	010100 1010

(continued)

Table 19 - Valid data characters *(continued)*

Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output		Name	Byte	abcdei fghj output	
		Current rd-	Current rd+			Current rd-	Current rd+
D0.6	C0h	100111 0110	011000 0110	D0.7	E0h	100111 0001	011000 1110
D1.6	C1h	011101 0110	100010 0110	D1.7	E1h	011101 0001	100010 1110
D2.6	C2h	101101 0110	010010 0110	D2.7	E2h	101101 0001	010010 1110
D3.6	C3h	110001 0110	110001 0110	D3.7	E3h	110001 1110	110001 0001
D4.6	C4h	110101 0110	001010 0110	D4.7	E4h	110101 0001	001010 1110
D5.6	C5h	101001 0110	101001 0110	D5.7	E5h	101001 1110	101001 0001
D6.6	C6h	011001 0110	011001 0110	D6.7	E6h	011001 1110	011001 0001
D7.6	C7h	111000 0110	000111 0110	D7.7	E7h	111000 1110	000111 0001
D8.6	C8h	111001 0110	000110 0110	D8.7	E8h	111001 0001	000110 1110
D9.6	C9h	100101 0110	100101 0110	D9.7	E9h	100101 1110	100101 0001
D10.6	CAh	010101 0110	010101 0110	D10.7	EAh	010101 1110	010101 0001
D11.6	CBh	110100 0110	110100 0110	D11.7	EBh	110100 1110	110100 1000
D12.6	CCh	001101 0110	001101 0110	D12.7	ECh	001101 1110	001101 0001
D13.6	CDh	101100 0110	101100 0110	D13.7	EDh	101100 1110	101100 1000
D14.6	CEh	011100 0110	011100 0110	D14.7	EEh	011100 1110	011100 1000
D15.6	CFh	010111 0110	101000 0110	D15.7	EFh	010111 0001	101000 1110
D16.6	D0h	011011 0110	100100 0110	D16.7	F0h	011011 0001	100100 1110
D17.6	D1h	100011 0110	100011 0110	D17.7	F1h	100011 0111	100011 0001
D18.6	D2h	010011 0110	010011 0110	D18.7	F2h	010011 0111	010011 0001
D19.6	D3h	110010 0110	110010 0110	D19.7	F3h	110010 1110	110010 0001
D20.6	D4h	001011 0110	001011 0110	D20.7	F4h	001011 0111	001011 0001
D21.6	D5h	101010 0110	101010 0110	D21.7	F5h	101010 1110	101010 0001
D22.6	D6h	011010 0110	011010 0110	D22.7	F6h	011010 1110	011010 0001
D23.6	D7h	111010 0110	000101 0110	D23.7	F7h	111010 0001	000101 1110
D24.6	D8h	110011 0110	001100 0110	D24.7	F8h	110011 0001	001100 1110
D25.6	D9h	100110 0110	100110 0110	D25.7	F9h	100110 1110	100110 0001
D26.6	DAh	010110 0110	010110 0110	D26.7	FAh	010110 1110	010110 0001
D27.6	DBh	110110 0110	001001 0110	D27.7	FBh	110110 0001	001001 1110
D28.6	DCh	001110 0110	001110 0110	D28.7	FCh	001110 1110	001110 0001
D29.6	DDh	101110 0110	010001 0110	D29.7	FDh	101110 0001	010001 1110
D30.6	DEh	011110 0110	100001 0110	D30.7	FEh	011110 0001	100001 1110
D31.6	DFh	101011 0110	010100 0110	D31.7	FFh	101011 0001	010100 1110

(concluded)

15.2.2.5.2 Control characters

Table 20 - Valid control characters

Name	abcdei fghj output		Description
	Current rd-	Current rd+	
K28.3	001111 0011	110000 1100	Occurs only at byte 0 of all primitives except for the ALIGN primitive
K28.5	001111 1010	110000 0101	Occurs only at byte 0 of the ALIGN primitive

In the serial implementation of ATA, only the K28.3 and K28.5 control characters are valid and are always used as the first byte in a four-byte primitive. The K28.3 control character is used to prefix all primitives other than the ALIGN primitive, while the K28.5 control character is used to prefix the ALIGN primitive. The encoding of characters within primitives follow the same rules as that applied to non-primitives, when calculating the running disparity between characters and between subblocks of each character within the primitive. The control characters K28.3 and K28.5 invert the current running disparity.

The running disparity at the end of the ALIGN primitive is the same as the running disparity at the beginning of the ALIGN primitive.

15.2.3 Transmission summary

15.2.3.1 Transmission order

15.2.3.1.1 Bits within a byte

The bits within an encoded character are labeled a,b,c,d,e,i,f,g,h,j. Bit “a” shall be transmitted first, followed in order by “b”, “c”, “d”, “e”, “i”, “f”, “g”, “h” and “j”. Note that bit “i” is transmitted between bits “e” and “f”, and that bit “j” is transmitted last, and not in the order that would be indicated by the letters of the alphabet. Figure 53 illustrates the transmission order within a byte

15.2.3.1.2 Bytes within a DWORD

For all transmissions and receptions, the serial implementation of ATA organizes all values as DWORDs. Even when representing a 32-bit value, the DWORD shall be considered a set of four bytes. The transmission order of the bytes within the DWORD shall be from the least-significant byte (byte 0) to the most-significant byte (byte 3). This right-to-left transmission order differs from Fibre Channel. Figure 53 illustrates how the bytes are arranged in a DWORD and the order in which bits are sent.

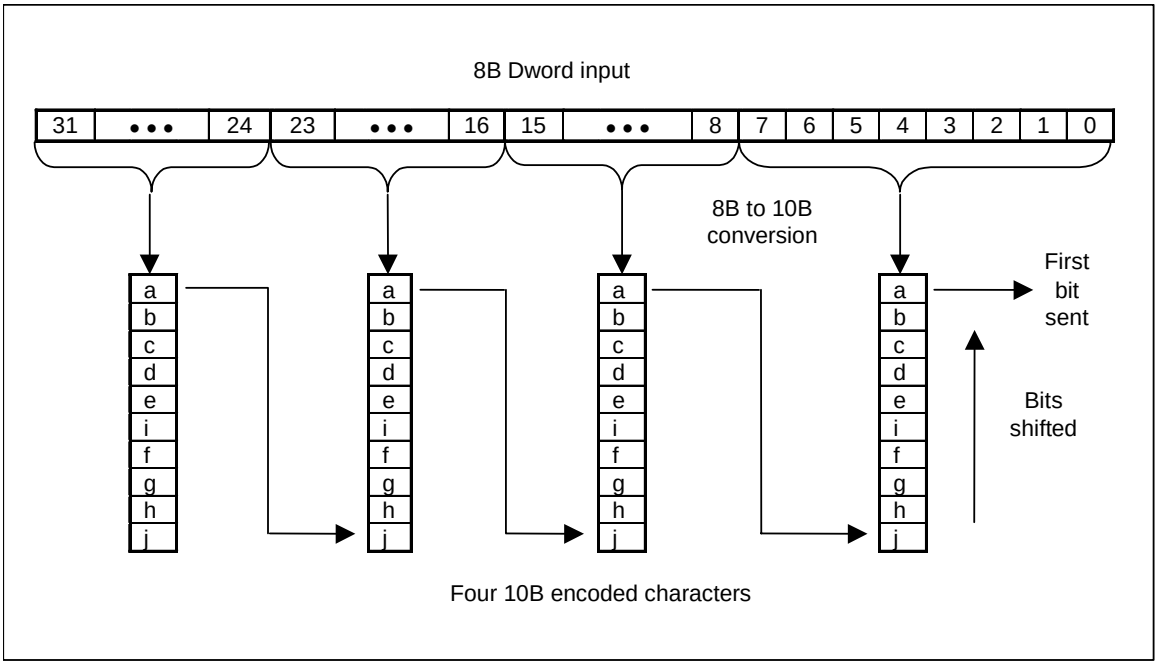


Figure 53 - Bit ordering and significance

15.2.3.1.3 Dwords within a frame

A frame (as described in 16.3) shall be transmitted sequentially in ascending DWORD order starting with the SOF delimiter, followed by the DWORDs of the frame contents, followed by the CRC, and ending with the EOF delimiter.

NOTE – Although the serial implementation of ATA employs a strict hierarchy of DWORD transmission as an ordered series of bytes, it is not the intent to restrict implementations from implementing a wider data path. It is possible, and even desirable, to perform transmission in word-sized fields. 8b/10b encoders with a 16(unencoded)/20(encoded) data path do exist. The only restriction is the transmission order of each byte and running disparity for each sub-block is preserved.

15.2.4 Reception

Upon reception of an encoded character the column corresponding to the receiver's current Running Disparity is searched for the encoded character value. If the encoded character value is found in the table the received encoded character shall be a legal character and decoded, and the decoded character value is made available to the Link layer.

If the received encoded character is not found in that column, then the encoded character shall be marked as code violation and reported to the Link layer.

15.2.4.1 Disparity and the detection of a code violation

Due to the propagation characteristics of the 8b/10b code, it is possible that a single bit error might not be detected until several characters after the error is introduced. The following examples illustrate this effect. The first example shows a bit error being propagated two characters before being detected. The second shows a single character of propagation.

It is important to note that the serial implementation of ATA sends data in DWORD increments, but the transmitter and receiver operate in units of a byte (character). The examples don't show DWORD boundaries, so it is possible that an error in either of these cases could be deferred one full DWORD.

The frequency of disparity errors and code violations is an indicator of channel quality and corresponds directly to the bit error rate of the physical serial link between a host and device. Implementations may elect to count such events and make them available to external firmware or software, although the method by which such counters are exposed is not defined in this standard.

Initial Running Disparity and the Running Disparity for each character is shown. In order to discover the errors note that Running Disparity is actually computed at the end of each sub-block and subsequently forwarded to the next sub-block. Footnotes indicate where the disparity error is detected. The error bit is underlined.

	rd	Character	rd	Character	rd	Character	rd
Transmitted character stream	-	D21.1	-	D10.2	-	D23.5	+
Transmitted bit stream	-	101010 1001	-	010101 0101	-	111010 1010	+
Received bit stream	-	101010 1011 (See note 1)	+	010101 0101	+	111010 1010 (See note 2)	+
Decoded character stream	-	D21.0	+	D10.2	+	Code violation (See note 2)	+(See note 3)

NOTES –

1. Bit error introduced: 1001 → 1011
2. Sub-blocks with non-neutral disparity must alternate polarity (i.e., + → -). In this case, rd does not alternate (it stays positive for two sub-blocks in a row). The resulting encoded character does not exist in the rd+ column in the data or control code table, and so an invalid encoded character is recognized.
3. Running disparity is computed on the received character regardless of the validity of the encoded character.

Figure 54 - Single bit error with two character delay

	rd	Character	rd	Character	rd	Character	rd
Transmitted character stream	-	D21.1	-	D23.4	-	D23.5	+
Transmitted bit stream	-	101010 1001	-	111010 0010	-	111010 1010	+
Received bit stream	-	101010 1011 (See note 1)	+	111010 0010 (See note 2)	-	111010 1010	+
Decoded character stream	-	D21.0	+	Code violation (See note 2)	-	D23.5	+ (See note 3)

NOTES–

1. Bit error introduced: 1001 → 1011
2. Sub-blocks with non-neutral disparity alternate polarity (i.e., + → -). In this case, rd does not alternate (it stays positive for two sub-blocks in a row). The resulting encoded character does not exist in the rd+ column in the data or control code table, and so an invalid encoded character is recognized.
3. Running disparity is computed on the received character regardless of the validity of the encoded character.

Figure 55 - Single bit error with one character delay

15.3 Transmission Method

The information on the serial line is a sequence of 8b/10b encoded characters. The smallest unit of communication is a DWORD. The contents of each DWORD are grouped to provide low-level control information or to transfer information between a host and an attached device.

The two types of structures are primitives and frames.

A primitive consists of a single DWORD and is the simplest unit of information that may be exchanged between a host and a device. When the bytes of a primitive are encoded the resulting pattern is difficult to misinterpret as any other primitive or random pattern. Primitives are used primarily to convey real-time state information, to control the transfer of information and coordinate host / device communication. All bytes in a primitive are constants and the first byte is always a control character. Since all of the bytes are constants, a primitive cannot be used to convey variable information. Later sections describe the contents of the primitives used in the serial implementation of ATA.

A frame consists of multiple DWORDs, and always starts with an SOF primitive, followed by a user payload called a Frame Information Structure (FIS), a CRC, and ends with an EOF primitive. The CRC is defined to be the last non-primitive DWORD immediately preceding the EOF primitive. Some number of flow control primitives (HOLD or HOLDA, or a CONT stream to sustain a HOLD or HOLDA state) are allowed between the SOF and EOF primitives to throttle data flow for speed matching purposes.

The following figure shows an example of a sequence of transmissions.

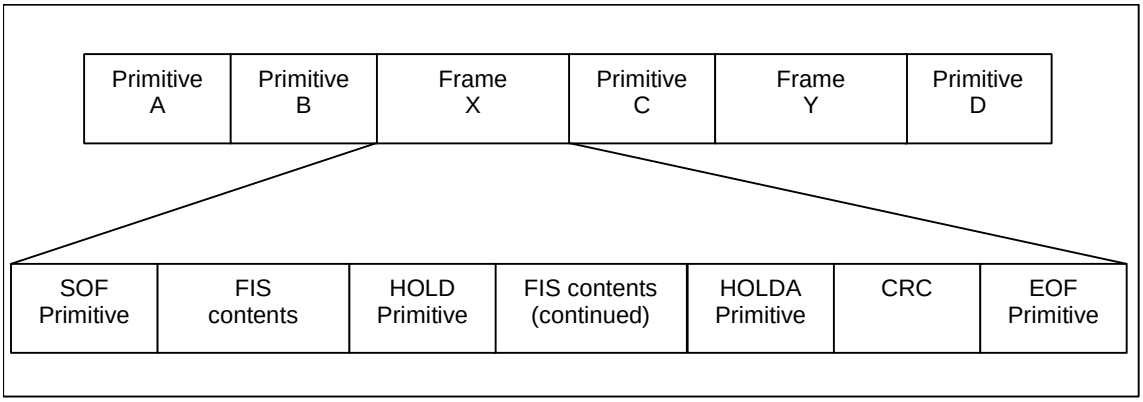


Figure 56 - Transmission structures

15.4 Primitives

15.4.1 Overview

Primitives are used to control and provide status of the serial line.

Primitives begin with a control character; all primitives use the K28.3 control character to signify the beginning of a primitive except for the ALIGN primitive which begins with the K28.5 control character. ALIGN thus represents the only primitive that contains the comma character (K28.5). Following the control character, three additional characters are encoded to complete the DWORD. Table is a summary of the character combinations that make up each primitive.

15.4.1.1 Primitive disparity

Primitives begin with either positive or negative disparity and end in either positive or negative disparity Normal 8b/10b encoding disparity rules are applied when encoding primitives.

The ALIGN primitive is chosen to have neutral disparity so that it can be inserted into the stream without affecting the disparity of previously encoded characters. Disparity at the end of the ALIGN primitive is the same as the ending disparity of the last character transmitted before the ALIGN primitive.

Each primitive is described and the encoding defined in the following sections.

15.4.1.2 Primitive handshakes

Some primitives are transmitted in response to receipt of other primitives to acknowledge receipt. For example, the HOLDA primitive is transmitted in response to the receipt of HOLD primitives and R_OK or R_ERR is transmitted in response to WTRM primitives. Due to the different clock domains between to two ends of the cable, the number of response primitives may not match the number of primitives to which they are responding. For example, a host or device may send five HOLD primitives but receive six HOLDA primitives in response. Neither the sender nor recipient of these primitives need count the number of primitives or match the number sent and received. There are boundary cases where a zero number of response primitives such as HOLDA may be sent.

15.4.2 Primitive descriptions

The following table contains the primitive mnemonics and a brief description of each.

Table 21 - Description of primitives

Primitive	Name	Description	Usage
ALIGN	Physical layer control	Upon receipt of an ALIGN, the physical layer readjusts internal operations as necessary to perform its functions correctly. This primitive is always sent in pairs - there is no condition where an odd number of ALIGN primitives shall be sent (except as noted for retimed loopback).	Repeated
CONT	Continue repeating previous primitive	The CONT primitive allows long strings of repeated primitives to be eliminated. The CONT primitive is used to signal that the previously transmitted primitive pair is to be sustained until another primitive is received.	Single
DMAT	DMA terminate	This primitive is sent as a request to the transmitter to terminate a DMA data transmission early by computing a CRC on the data sent and ending with a EOF primitive. The transmitter context is assumed to remain stable after the EOF primitive has been sent.	Single
EOF	End of frame	EOF marks the end of a frame. The previous non-primitive DWORD is the CRC for the frame.	Single
HOLD	Hold data transmission	HOLD is transmitted in place of payload data within a frame when the transmitter does not have the next payload data ready for transmission. HOLD is also transmitted on the backchannel when a receiver is not ready to receive additional payload data.	Repeated Note 1
HOLDA	Hold acknowledge	This primitive is sent by a transmitter as long the HOLD primitive is received by its companion receiver.	Repeated Note 1
PMACK	Power management acknowledge	Sent in response to a PMREQ_S or PMREQ_P when a receiving node is prepared to enter a power mode state.	Repeated
PMNAK	Power management denial	Sent in response to a PMREQ_S or PMREQ_P when a receiving node is not prepared to enter a power mode state or when power management is not supported.	Repeated
PMREQ_P	Power management request to partial	This primitive is sent continuously until PMACK or PMNAK is received. When PMACK is received, current node (host or device) will stop PMREQ_P and enters the Partial power management state.	Repeated Note 1
PMREQ_S	Power management request to Slumber	This primitive is sent continuously until PMACK or PMNAK is received. When PMACK is received, current node (host or device) will stop PMREQ_S and enters the Slumber power management state.	Repeated Note 1
R_ERR	Reception error	Current node (host or device) detected error in received payload.	Repeated Note 1
R_IP	Reception in Progress	Current node (host or device) is receiving payload.	Repeated Note 1
R_OK	Reception with no error	Current node (host or device) detected no error in received payload.	Repeated Note 1
R_RDY	Receiver ready	Current node (host or device) is ready to receive payload.	Repeated Note 1

(continued)

Table 21 - Description of primitives (continued)

Primitive	Name	Description	Usage
SOF	Start of frame	Start of a frame. Payload and CRC follow to EOF.	Single
SYNC	Synchronization	Synchronizing primitive - always idle.	Repeated Note 1
WTRM	Wait for frame termination	After transmission of any of the EOF, the transmitter will transmit WTRM while waiting for reception status from receiver.	Repeated Note 1
X_RDY	Transmission data ready	Current node (host or device) has payload ready for transmission	Repeated Note 1
Note 1: This primitive may be continued by use of the CONT primitive.			

15.4.3 Primitive encoding

The following table defines the encoding for each primitive.

Table 22 - Primitive encoding

Primitive name	Byte 3 contents	Byte 2 contents	Byte 1 contents	Byte 0 contents
ALIGN	D27.3	D10.2	D10.2	K28.5
CONT	D25.4	D25.4	D10.5	K28.3
DMAT	D22.1	D22.1	D21.5	K28.3
EOF	D21.6	D21.6	D21.5	K28.3
HOLD	D21.6	D21.6	D10.5	K28.3
HOLDA	D21.4	D21.4	D10.5	K28.3
PMACK	D21.4	D21.4	D21.4	K28.3
PMNAK	D21.7	D21.7	D21.4	K28.3
PMREQ_P	D23.0	D23.0	D21.5	K28.3
PMREQ_S	D21.3	D21.3	D21.4	K28.3
R_ERR	D22.2	D22.2	D21.5	K28.3
R_IP	D21.2	D21.2	D21.5	K28.3
R_OK	D21.1	D21.1	D21.5	K28.3
R_RDY	D10.2	D10.2	D21.4	K28.3
SOF	D23.1	D23.1	D21.5	K28.3
SYNC	D21.5	D21.5	D21.4	K28.3
WTRM	D24.2	D24.2	D21.5	K28.3
X_RDY	D23.2	D23.2	D21.5	K28.3

15.4.4 ALIGN primitive

This primitive is always sent in pairs - there is no condition where an odd number of ALIGN primitives are sent (except as noted for retimed loopback).

The Link layer shall ignore reception of ALIGN primitives. The Physical layer may consume received ALIGN primitives. Implementations where the Phy does not consume received ALIGN primitives shall drop received ALIGN primitives at the input to the Link layer or shall include Link layer processing that yields behavior equivalent to the behavior produced if all received ALIGN primitives are consumed by the Phy and not presented to the Link.
After communications have been established, the first and second words out of the Link Layer shall be the dual-ALIGN primitive sequence, followed by at most 254 non-ALIGN DWORDs. The cycle repeats starting with another dual-consecutive ALIGN primitive sequence. The Link may issue more than one dual ALIGN primitive sequence but shall not send an unpaired ALIGN primitive (i.e. ALIGN primitives are always sent in pairs) except as noted for retimed loopback.

The ALIGN primitive encoding is defined in Table 22.

15.4.5 CONT primitive

The CONT primitive allows long strings of repeated primitives, as defined by Table 21 to be eliminated. The CONT primitive causes the previously received repeated primitive to be sustained until another primitive is received. The reception of any primitive other than CONT or ALIGN shall terminate the stream of repeated primitives. For an example of the usage of the CONT primitive, see Figure 57 - CONT usage example.

In order to accommodate EMI reductions, scrambling of data is incorporated in the serial implementation of ATA as described in 15.6. The scrambling of data is with a linear feedback shift register (LFSR) used in generating the scrambling pattern being reset at each SOF primitive, or rolling over every 2048 DWORDs. However, the scrambling of primitives is not as effective or simple because of the small number of control characters available. In order to accommodate EMI reductions, repeated primitives are eliminated through the use of the CONT primitive.

Any repeated primitive (See Table 21) may be sustained through the use of the CONT primitive. The recipient of the CONT primitive shall ignore all data received after the CONT primitive until the reception of any primitive, excluding ALIGN. After transmitting the CONT character, the transmitter may send any sequence of data characters to the recipient provided that no primitives are included. The transmitter shall send a minimum of two identical repeated primitives (e.g SYNC SYNC, HOLD HOLD, etc) immediately preceding the CONT primitive, excluding ALIGNs. Valid CONT transmission sequences are shown in Table 23.

Table 23 - Valid CONT Transmission Sequences

PRIM	PRIM	CONT	XXXX	XXXX	XXXX
PRIM	ALIGN	ALIGN	PRIM	CONT	XXXX
PRIM	PRIM	ALIGN	ALIGN	CONT	XXXX
PRIM	PRIM	CONT	ALIGN	ALIGN	XXXX
PRIM = any primitive defined as repeated that may be continued in accordance with Table 21. XXXX = Output of LFSR or any primitive other than CONT.					

To improve overall protocol robustness and avoid potential timeout situations caused by a reception error in a primitive, all repeated primitives shall be transmitted a minimum of twice before a CONT primitive is transmitted. The first primitive correctly received is the initiator of any action within the receiver. This avoids scenarios, for example, where X_RDY is sent from the host, followed by a CONT, and the X_RDY is received improperly resulting in the device not returning an R_RDY and causing the system to deadlock until a timeout/reset condition occurs. Reception of a CONT primitive when one of the two preceding DWORDs is not a valid repeated primitive results in undefined behavior.

The transmission of a CONT primitive is optional, but the ability to receive and properly process the CONT primitive is required.
For a list of primitives that may be followed by a CONT see Table 21.

The host PHY initialization state machine consumes the first few received primitives before communications between the host and device have been established (See state HP10:HR_SendAlign in 14.5.6.2.1). In order to ensure proper synchronization between the host and device after entry into the L1:L_IDLE state from the LS3:L_SendAlign state or the LPM8:L_WakeUp2 state (See 15.7.1.1 and 15.7.1.4), the use of the CONT primitive is not allowed after a transition from the LS3:L_SendAlign state or the LPM8:L_WakeUp2 state to the L1:L_IDLE state until either a minimum of 10 non-ALIGN primitives have been transmitted or until receipt of a primitive other than SYNC or ALIGN has been detected.

15.4.5.1 Scrambling of data following the CONT primitive

The data following the CONT shall be the output of an LFSR which implements the same polynomial as is used to scramble FIS contents. That polynomial is defined in 15.6.

The resulting LFSR value shall be encoded using the 8b/10b rules for encoding data characters before transmission by the Link layer.

The LFSR used to supply data after the CONT primitive shall be reset to the initial value upon detection of a COMINIT or COMRESET event.

Since the data following a CONT primitive is discarded by the Link layer, the value of the LFSR is undefined between CONT primitives. That is, the LFSR result used for CONT sequence N is not required to be continuous from the last LFSR result of CONT sequence N-1.

The sequence of LFSR values used to scramble the payload contents of an FIS shall not be affected by the scrambling of data used during repeated primitive suppression. That is, the data payload LFSR shall not be advanced during repeated primitive suppression and shall only be advanced for each payload data character that is scrambled using the data payload LFSR. See 15.6 for additional information on scrambling and repeated primitive suppression.

15.4.6 DMAT primitive

> Note: No consistent use of the DMAT facility is defined, and its use may impact software compatibility. Implementations should tolerate reception of DMAT as defined in the standard but should avoid transmission of DMAT in order to minimize potential interaction problems. One valid response to reception of DMAT is to ignore it and complete the transfer.

This primitive is sent as a request to the transmitter to terminate a DMA data transmission early by computing a CRC on the data sent and ending with a EOF primitive. The DMA context is assumed to remain stable after the EOF primitive has been sent.

In a parallel implementation of ATA, devices can abort a DMA transfer and post an error, by negating DMA Request, updating the Error and Status registers, and possibly setting the INTRQ line. This can be performed for both reads from and writes to the device.

For example, in the serial implementation of ATA. a DMA read from device a device may terminate the transfer with an EOF, and send a Register Device to Host FIS to the host, with Error and Status registers updated appropriately. In the case of a DMA write to device, the device sends a DMA Activate FIS to the host, and then after receiving an SOF, accepts all data until receiving an EOF from the host. Since the device cannot terminate such a transfer once started, a DMAT primitive is used.

The DMA Terminate (DMAT) primitive may be sent on the back channel during transmission of a Data FIS to signal the transmitter to terminate the transfer in progress. It may be used for both host to device transfers and for device to host transfers. If processed, reception of the DMAT signal shall cause the recipient to close the current frame by inserting the CRC and EOF, and return to the idle state.

For host to device data transfers, upon receiving the DMAT signal the host may terminate the transfer in progress by deactivating its DMA engine and closing the frame with valid CRC and EOF. The host DMA engine shall preserve its state at the point it was deactivated so that the device may resume the transmission at a later time by transmitting another DMA Active FIS to re-activate the DMA engine. The device is responsible for either subsequently resuming the terminated transfer by transmitting another DMA Activate FIS or closing the affected command with appropriate status.

For device to host transfers, receipt of DMAT signal by the device results in permanent termination of the transfer and is not resumable. The device may terminate the transmission in progress and close the frame with a valid CRC and EOF, and shall thereafter clean up the affected command by indicating appropriate status for that command. No facility for resuming a device to host transfer terminated with the DMAT signal is provided.

Some implementations may have an implementation-dependent latency associated with closing the affected Data FIS in response to the DMAT signal. For example, a host adapter may have a small transmit FIFO, and in order for the DMA engine to accurately reflect a resumable state, the data already transferred by the DMA engine to the transmit FIFO may have to be transmitted prior to closing the affected Data FIS. Designs should minimize the DMAT response latency while being tolerant of other devices having a long latency.

15.4.7 EOF primitive

EOF marks the end of a frame. The previous non-primitive DWORD is the CRC for the frame.

15.4.8 HOLD/HOLDA primitives

HOLD is transmitted in place of payload data within a frame when the transmitter does not have the next payload data ready for transmission. HOLD is also transmitted on the backchannel when a receiver is not ready to receive additional payload data.

The HOLDA primitive is sent by a transmitter as long the HOLD primitive is received by its companion receiver.

15.4.8.1 Flow Control Signaling Latency

There is a finite pipeline latency in a round-trip handshake across the serial interface, In order to accommodate efficient system design with sufficient buffering headroom to avoid buffer overflow in flow control situations, the maximum tolerable latency from when a receiver issues a HOLD signal until it receives the HOLDA signal from the transmitter is bounded. This allows the limit to be set in the receive FIFO so as to avoid buffer overflow while avoiding excessive buffering/FIFO space.

In the case where the receiver wants to flow control the incoming data, it transmits HOLD characters on the back channel. Some number of received DWORDs later, valid data ceases, and HOLDA characters are received. The larger the latency between transmitting HOLD until receiving HOLDA, the larger the receive FIFO needs to be. The maximum allowed latency from the time the MSB of the HOLD primitive is on the wire, until the MSB of the HOLDA is on the wire shall be no more than 20 DWORD times. The LSB is transmitted first. A receiver shall be able to accommodate reception of 20 DWORDs of additional data after the time it transmits the HOLD flow control character to the transmitter, and the transmitter shall respond with a HOLDA in response to receiving a HOLD character within 20 DWORD times. See Figure 59 and Figure 60 for HOLD/HOLD transition cases that do respond with HOLDA within 20 DWORD latency times.

The specified maximum latency figure is based on the layers and states described throughout this document. It is recognized that the Link Layer may have two separate clock domains -- transmit clock domain, and the receive clock domain. It is also recognized that a Link state machine could run at the DWORD clock rate, implying synchronizers between three potential clock domains. In practice more efficient implementations would be pursued and the actual latencies may be less than indicated here. This accounting assumes a worst case synchronizer latency of 2.99 clocks in any clock domain and is rounded to three whole clocks. A one meter cable contains less than one-half DWORD and is therefore rounded to 0. Two DWORDs of pipeline delay are assumed for the Phy, and the FIFO is assumed to run at the Link state machine rate. No synchronization is needed between the two.

Table 24 outlines the origin of the 20 DWORD latency standard. The example illustrates the components of a round trip delay when the receiver places a HOLD on the bus until reception of the HOLDA from the transmitter. This corresponds to the number of DWORDs that the receiver must be able to accept after transmitting a HOLD character.

Table 24 -Latency example

Receiver sends HOLD:		
	1 DWORD	Convert to 40 bit data.
	1 DWORD	10b/8b conversion.
	1 DWORD	De scrambling.
	3 DWORDs	Synchronization between receive clock, and Link state machine clock.
	1 DWORD	Link state machine is notified that primitive has been received.
	1 DWORD	Link state machine takes action.
	1 DWORD	FIFO is notified of primitive reception.
	1 DWORD	FIFO stops sending data to Link layer.
	1 DWORD	Link is notified to insert HOLDA.
	1 DWORD	Link acts on notification and inserts HOLDA into data stream.
	1 DWORD	Scrambling
	1 DWORD	8b/10b conversion.
	1 DWORD	Synchronize to transmit clock (3 transmit clocks, which are four times the Link state machine rate).
	1 DWORD	Convert to 10 bit data.
	2 DWORDs	Phy, transmit side.
HOLDA on the cable.		

Table 25 - SRST write from host to device transmission breaking through a device to host Data FIS

Host driver	Device driver	Description
…	…	Previous activity abbreviated for clarity
R_IP	Data n	Device transmitting data
R_IP	Data n+1	
R_IP	HOLD	Device transmit FIFO empty, and flow control applied
R_IP	HOLD	Host receives and decodes HOLD flow control
HOLDA	HOLD	Host acknowledges flow control. Device internally deadlocked and no more data forthcoming (drive hung)
HOLDA	HOLD	
…	…	System in this state until host decides to reset drive
HOLDA	HOLD	Host detects SRST write to control register, needs to break deadlock
SYNC	HOLD	Host transmits SYNC primitive to abort current transmission
SYNC	HOLD	Device receives and decodes SYNC, abandons transmission in progress
SYNC	SYNC	Host sends SYNC / Device sends SYNC (both returned to idle state)
SYNC	SYNC	Host receives and decodes SYNC, may now initiate new FIS transmission
X_RDY	SYNC	Host ready to send Shadow Control Block for SRST write
X_RDY	SYNC	Device decodes X_RDY
X_RDY	R_RDY	Device indicates ready to receive
X_RDY	R_RDY	Host decodes R_RDY
SOF	R_RDY	Host starts a frame
etc	etc	etc

15.4.9 PMREQ_P, PMREQ_S, PMACK, and PMNAK primitives

The PMREQ_P primitive is sent continuously to enter Partial power management state until PMACK or PMNAK is received. When PMACK is received, current node (host or device) will stop PMREQ_P and enters the Partial power management state.

The PMREQ_S primitive is sent continuously to enter Slumber power management state until PMACK or PMNAK is received. When PMACK is received, current node (host or device) will stop PMREQ_S and enters the Slumber power management state.

PMACK is sent in response to a PMREQ_S or PMREQ_P when a receiving node is prepared to enter a power mode state.

PMNAK is sent in response to a PMREQ_S or PMREQ_P when a receiving node is not prepared to enter a power mode state or when power management is not supported.

15.4.10 R_ERR primitive

Current node (host or device) detected an error in received payload.

15.4.11 R_IP primitive

Current node (host or device) is receiving payload.

15.4.12 R_OK primitive

Current node (host or device) detected no error in received payload.

15.4.13 R_RDY primitive

Current node (host or device) is ready to receive payload.

15.4.14 SOF primitive

Start of a frame. Payload and CRC follow to EOF.

15.4.15 SYNC primitive

Synchronizing primitive - Indicates physical interface is idle.

15.4.16 WTRM primitive

After transmission of the EOF primitive, the transmitter transmits WTRM while waiting for reception of a R_ERR or R_OK primitive from the receiver.

15.4.17 X_RDY primitive

Current node (host or device) has payload ready for transmission

15.4.18 Examples

The following examples illustrate basic primitive usage.

Figure 57 illustrates use of the CONT primitive in the transmission of an FIS.

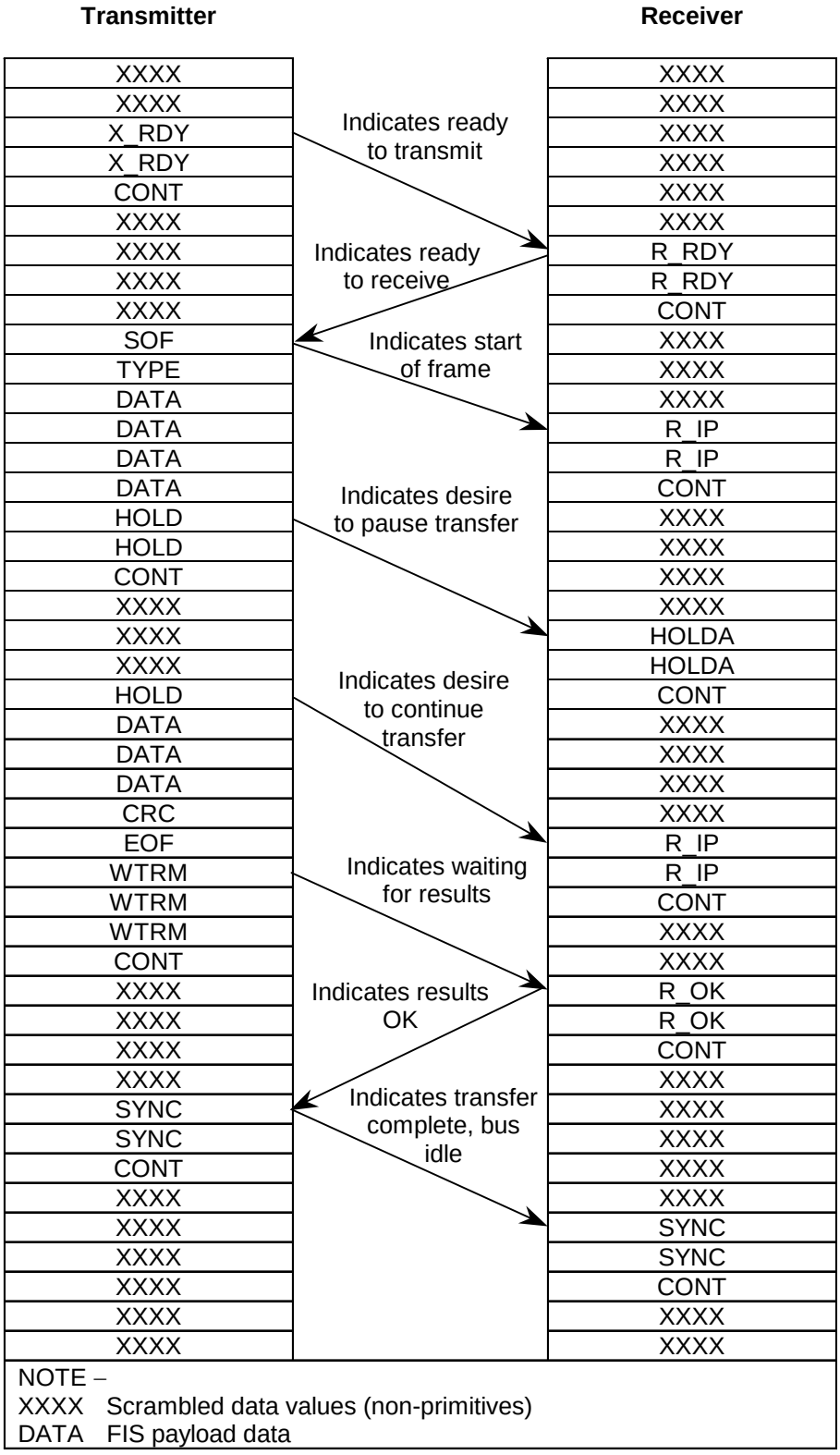


Figure 57 - CONT usage example

Table 26 - Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block transmission example

Host driver	Device driver	Description
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
X_RDY	SYNC	Host ready to send Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block
X_RDY	SYNC	Device decodes X_RDY
X_RDY	R_RDY	Device indicates ready to receive
X_RDY	R_RDY	Host decodes R_RDY
SOF	R_RDY	Host starts a frame
Hdr 0	R_RDY	Host sends Register FIS DWORD 0 / device decodes SOF
Hdr 1	R_IP	Host sends Register FIS DWORD 1 / device stores Hdr 0
…	…	…
Hdr n	R_IP	Host sends Register FIS DWORD n / device stores Hdr n-1
CRC	R_IP	Host sends CRC / device stores Hdr n
EOF	R_IP	Host sends EOF / device stores CRC
WTRM	R_IP	Device decodes EOF
WTRM	R_IP	Device computes good CRC and releases TF contents
WTRM	R_OK	Device sends good end
WTRM	R_OK	Host decodes R_OK as good results
SYNC	R_OK	Host releases interface
SYNC	R_OK	Device decodes release by host - is allowed to release
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition

Table 27 - Data from host to device transmission example

Host driver	Device driver	Description
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
X_RDY	SYNC	Host ready to send Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block
X_RDY	SYNC	Device decodes X_RDY
X_RDY	R_RDY	Device indicates ready to receive
X_RDY	R_RDY	Host decodes R_RDY
SOF	R_RDY	Host starts a frame
Hdr 0	R_RDY	Host sends header DWORD 0 / device decodes SOF
Hdr 1	R_IP	Host sends header DWORD 1 / device stores header DWORD 0
...	..	...
Dat x	R_IP	Host sends data DWORD x / device stores data DWORD (x-1)
HOLD	R_IP	Host sends HOLD / device stores data DWORD (x) and decodes HOLD
HOLD	HOLDA	Device acknowledges HOLD
HOLD	HOLDA	Host decodes HOLDA - host may release HOLD at any time
Dat(n-3)	HOLDA	Host sends (n-2)th data DWORD / device decodes data DWORD
Dat(n-2)	R_IP	Host sends (n-1)th data DWORD / device Stores (n-2)th data DWORD
Dat(n-1)	R_IP	Host sends nth data DWORD / device ores (n-1)th data DWORD
CRC	R_IP	Host sends CRC / device stores nth data DWORD
EOF	R_IP	Host sends EOF / device stores CRC
WTRM	R_IP	Device decodes EOF
WTRM	R_IP	Device computes good CRC and releases data contents
WTRM	R_OK	Device sends good end
WTRM	R_OK	Host decodes R_OK as good results
SYNC	R_OK	Host releases interface
SYNC	R_OK	Device decodes release by host - is allowed to release
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition

Table 28 - DMA data from host to device, device terminates transmission example

Host driver	Device driver	Description
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition
X_RDY	SYNC	Host ready to send data
X_RDY	SYNC	Device decodes X_RDY
X_RDY	R_RDY	Device indicates ready to receive
X_RDY	R_RDY	Host decodes R_RDY
SOF	R_RDY	Host starts a frame
Hdr 0	R_RDY	Host sends header DWORD 0 / device decodes SOF
Dat 0	R_IP	Host sends data DWORD 0
...	..	Host sends data DWORD x / device stores data DWORD
Dat x	DMAT	Device decides to terminate, sends DMAT
Dat x	R_IP	Host decodes DMAT - host prepares to terminate
CRC	R_IP	Host sends current CRC value
EOF	R_IP	Host sends EOF / device stores CRC
WTRM	R_IP	Device decodes EOF
WTRM	R_IP	Device computes good CRC and releases data contents
WTRM	R_OK	Device sends good end
WTRM	R_OK	Host decodes R_OK as good results
SYNC	R_OK	Host releases interface
SYNC	R_OK	Device decodes release by host - is allowed to release
SYNC	SYNC	Idle condition

15.5 CRC calculation

The CRC (Cyclic Redundancy Check) of a frame is a DWORD (32-bit) field that shall follow the last DWORD of the contents of an FIS and precede the EOF primitive. The CRC calculation covers all of the FIS transport data between the SOF and EOF primitives, and excludes any intervening primitives and CONT stream contents. The CRC value shall be computed on the contents of the FIS before encoding for transmission (scrambling) and after decoding upon reception.

The CRC shall be calculated on DWORD quantities. If an FIS contains an odd number of words the last word of the FIS shall be padded with zeros to a full DWORD before the DWORD is used in the calculation of the CRC.

The CRC shall be aligned on a DWORD boundary.

The CRC shall be calculated using the following 32-bit generator polynomial:

$$G(X) = X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^{8} + X^{7} + X^{5} + X^{4} + X^{2} + X + 1$$

The CRC value shall be initialized with a value of 52325032h before the calculation begins.

The maximum number of DWORDs between the SOF primitive to the EOF primitive shall not exceed 2064 DWORDs including the FIS type and CRC.

15.6 Scrambling

15.6.1 Frame content scrambling

The contents of a frame, that is, all data words between the SOF and EOF including the CRC, shall be scrambled before transmission by the physical layer.

Scrambling shall be performed on DWORD quantities by XORing the data to be transmitted with the output of a linear feedback shift register (LFSR). The shift register shall implement the following polynomial:

$$G(X) = X^{16} + X^{15} + X^{13} + X^4 + 1$$

The serial shift register shall be initialized with a value of FFFFh before the first shifted output. The shift register shall be initialized to the seed value before the SOF primitive.

15.6.1.1 Relationship between scrambling and CRC

The order of application of scrambling shall be as follows. For a DWORD of data following the SOF primitive the DWORD shall be used in the calculation of the CRC. The same DWORD value shall be XORed with the scrambler output, and the resulting DWORD submitted to the 8b/10b encoder for transmission. Similarly, on reception, the DWORD shall be decoded using a 10b/8b decoder, the scrambler output shall be XORed with the resulting DWORD, and the resulting DWORD presented to the Link layer and subsequently used in calculating the CRC. The CRC DWORD shall be scrambled according to the same rules.

15.6.2 Repeated primitive suppression

A second linear feedback shift register shall be used to provide scrambled data for the suppression of repeated primitives with the CONT primitive (See 15.4.5). This LFSR shall implement the same polynomial as the frame scrambling LFSR but need not be reinitialized.

15.6.2.1 Relationship between scrambling of FIS data and repeated primitives

There are two separate scramblers used in the serial implementation of ATA. One scrambler is used for the data payload encoding and a separate scrambler is used for repeated primitive suppression. The scrambler used for data payload encoding shall maintain consistent and contiguous context over the scrambled payload data characters of a frame (between SOF and EOF), and shall not have its context affected by the scrambling of data used for repeated primitive suppression.

Scrambling is applied to all data (non-primitive) DWORDs. Primitives, including ALIGN, do not get scrambled and shall not advance the data payload LFSR register. Similarly, the data payload LFSR shall not be advanced during transmission of DWORDs during repeated primitive suppression (i.e. after a CONT primitive). Since it is possible for a repeated primitive stream to occur in the middle of a data frame - multiple HOLD/HOLDA primitives are likely - care must be taken to ensure that the data payload LFSR is only advanced for each data payload data character that it scrambles and that it is not advanced for primitives or for data characters transmitted as part of repeated primitive suppression.

15.7 Link layer state diagrams

15.7.1.1 Link idle state diagram

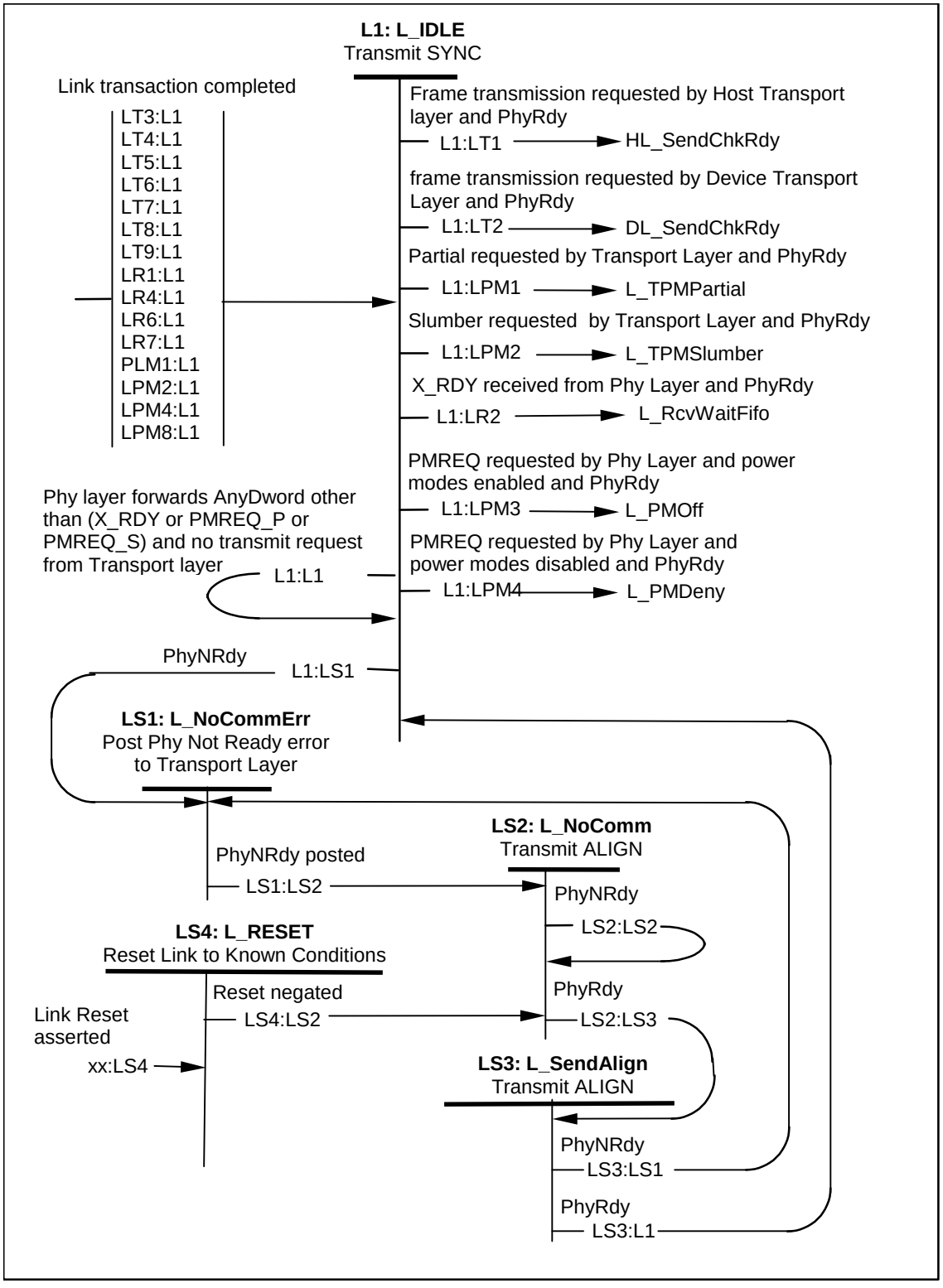


Figure 58 – Link idle state diagram (States L1, LS1-LS3)

L1: L_IDLE state: This state is entered when a frame transmission has been completed by the Link layer or from Power Management or as a result of errors in the Link Transmit or Link Receive states. When entered from the LS3:L1 SendAlign state or the LPM8:L1 WakeUp2 state, use of the CONT primitive is subject to restrictions as outlined in 15.4.5.

When in this state, the Link layer transmits the SYNC primitive and waits for an X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer or a frame transmission request from the Transport layer.

Transition L1:LT1: When the host Link layer receives a request to transmit a frame from the Transport layer and the Physical layer is ready, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT1: HL_SendChkRdy state. This transition is taken even if errors such as 10b decoding errors are detected.

Transition L1:LT2: When the device Link layer receives a request to transmit a frame from the Transport layer and the Physical layer is ready, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT2: DL_SendChkRdy state. This transition is taken even if errors such as 10b decoding errors are detected.

Transition L1:LPM1: When the Link layer receives a request to enter the Partial power mode from the Transport layer and the Physical layer is ready, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LPM1: L_TPMPartial state. This transition is taken even if errors such as 10b decoding errors are detected.

Transition L1:LPM2: When the Link layer receives a request to enter the Slumber power mode from the Transport layer and the Physical layer is ready, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LPM2: L_TPMSlumber state. This transition is taken even if errors such as 10b decoding errors are detected.

Transition L1:LR2: When the Link layer receives an X_RDY from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state.

Transition L1:LPM3 Phy layer forwards (PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) and power modes are enabled: When the Link layer receives a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S from the Physical layer and is enabled to perform power management modes, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LPM3: L_PMOff state.

Transition L1:LPM4 Phy layer forwards (PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) and power modes are disabled: When the Link layer receives a PMREQ_P or a PMREQ_S from the Physical layer and is not enabled to perform power management modes, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LPM4: L_PMDeny state.

Transition L1:L1 Phy layer forwards AnyDword other than (X_RDY or PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) and no transmit request from Transport layer: When the Link layer does not receive a request to transmit a frame from the Transport layer, does not receive a request to go to a power mode from the Transport layer, does not receive an X_RDY from the Physical layer or does not receive a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S from the Physical layer the Link layer shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state. This transition is taken even if errors such as 10b decoding errors are detected. This state ignores any unrecognized sequences or primitives not defined by this standard.

Transition L1:LS1: If the Physical layer becomes not ready even if the Transport layer is requesting an operation, the Link layer transitions to the L_NoCommErr state.

LS1: L_NoCommErr state: This state is entered upon detection of a not ready condition of the Physical layer while attempting to process another state. The entry into this state indicates an error condition in the Link layer.

Transition LS1:LS2: The transition is made to LS2:L_NoComm when the error has been passed to the transport layer.

LS2: L_NoComm state: This state is entered directly from the LS1:L_NoCommErr state or the LS4:L_RESET State. The Link Layer remains in this state until the Phy signals that it has established communications and is ready.

While in this state, enable Physical Layer and transmit ALIGN primitives.

Transition LS2:LS2: If the Physical layer signals it is not ready, the transition is made to LS2: L_NoComm.

Transition LS2:LS3: When the Physical layer signals it is ready, a transition is made to LS3: L_SendAlign.

LS3: L_SendAlign state: This state is entered when PhyRdy is detected.
When in this state ALIGN is transmitted.

Transition LS3:LS1: If the Physical layer becomes not ready, then a transition is made to LS1: L_NoCommErr.

Transition LS3:L1: If the Phy indicates that it is ready, a transition is made to the L1: L_IDLE state.

LS4: L_RESET state: This state is entered whenever the Link Reset control is active. All Link layer hardware is initialized to and held at initial conditions. While in this state all requests or triggers from other layers are ignored. While in this state, the Phy reset signal is also asserted.

Transition xx:LS4: While the RESET control is active a transition is made back to the LS4: L_RESET state.

Transition LS4:LS2: When the RESET control goes inactive a transition is made to the LS2: L_NoComm state.

15.7.1.2 Link transmit state diagram

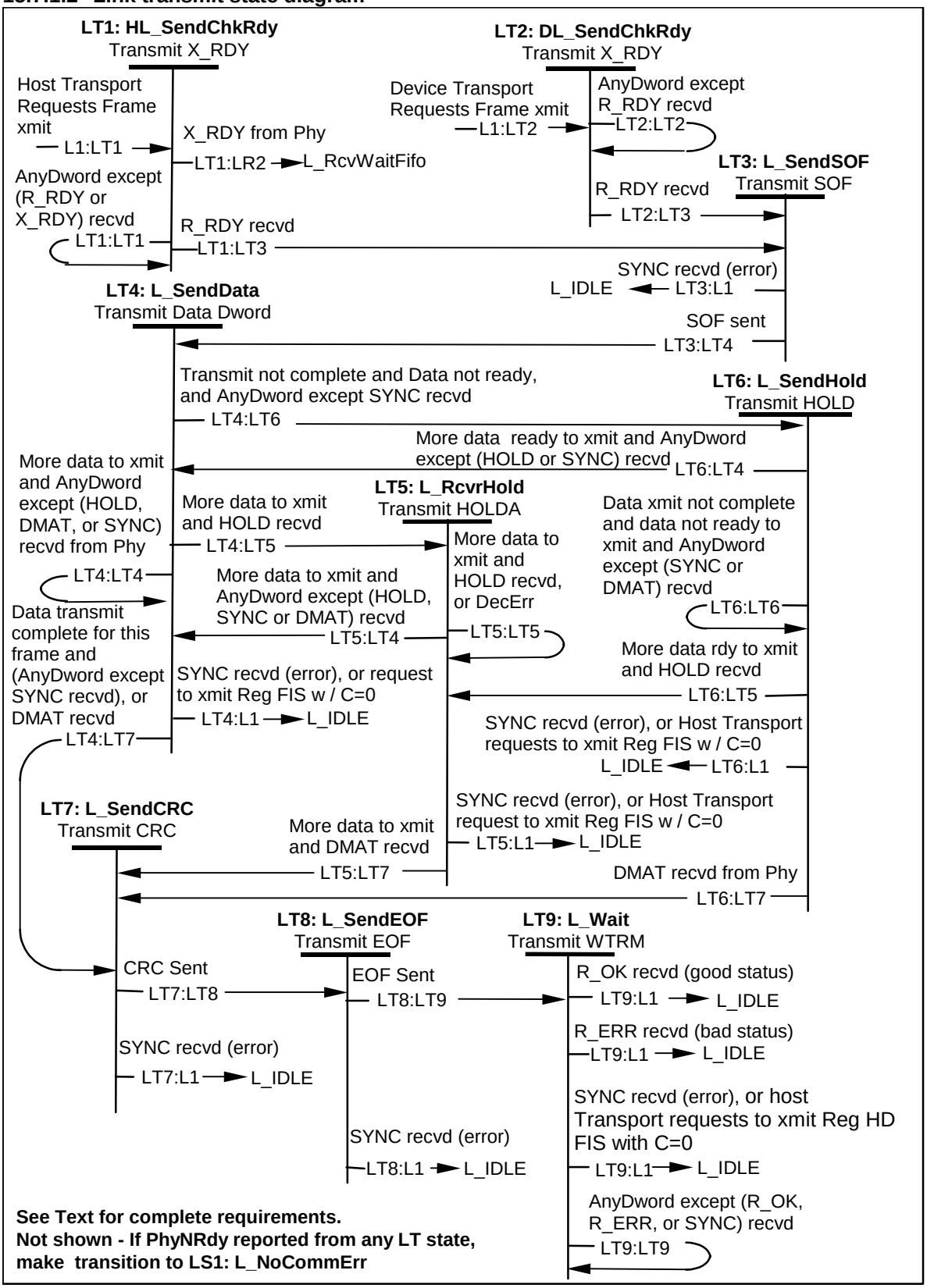


Figure 59 – Link transmit state diagram (States LT1-LT9)

In any state of the Link transmit state diagram, if the Link layer detects the Phy layer is not ready, the Link layer will notify the Transport layer, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to LS1: L_NoCommErr. These transitions are not shown in the state diagram to improve clarity.

LT1: HL_SendChkRdy state: This state is entered when a frame transmission has been requested by the host Transport layer.

When in this state, the Link layer transmits an X_RDY primitive and waits for an X_RDY primitive or R_RDY primitive from the Physical layer.

NOTE - It is possible that both the host and the device simultaneously request frame transmission by transmitting X_RDY. If the host receives X_RDY while transmitting X_RDY, the host shall back-off and enter the LR1: L_RcvChkRdy state, postponing its desired frame transmission until the device has completed its frame transmission and the bus is idle.

Transition LT1:LT3: When the host Link layer receives an R_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT3: L_SendSOF state.

Transition LT1:LR2: When the host Link layer receives an X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state.

Transition LT1:LT1 AnyDword other than (R_RDY or X_RDY) received from Phy layer: When the host Link layer receives any DWORD other than an R_RDY or an X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT1: HL_SendChkRdy state. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT1:LS1: When the host Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LT2: DL_SendChkRdy state: This state is entered when a frame transmission has been requested by the device Transport layer.

When in this state, the Link layer transmits an X_RDY primitive and waits for an R_RDY primitive from the Physical layer.

Transition LT2:LT3: When the device Link layer receives an R_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT3: L_SendSOF state.

Transition LT2:LT2 AnyDword other than R_RDY received from Phy: When the device Link layer does not receive an R_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT2: DL_SendChkRdy state.

Transition LT2:LS1: When the device Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LT3: L_SendSOF state: This state is entered an R_RDY primitive has been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer transmits an SOF primitive.

Transition LT3:LT4: When the device Link layer has transmitted an SOF primitive, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT4: L_SendDATA state. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT3:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

Transition LT3:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition and shall make a transition to the L1:L_IDLE state.

LT4: L_SendData state This state is entered when an SOF primitive has been transmitted.

When in this state, the Link layer takes a data DWORD from the Transport layer, encodes the DWORD, and transmits it. The DWORD is also entered into the CRC calculation before encoding.

Transition LT4:LT4 More data to transmit and AnyDword other than (HOLD or DMAT or SYNC) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD, DMAT, or SYNC primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates a DWORD is available for transfer, the Link layer may make a transition to the LT4: L_SendData state. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6)The DMAT signal is advisory and data transmission should be halted at the earliest opportunity but is not required to cease immediately. It is therefore allowable to stay in the LT4: L_SendData state when there is more data to transmit and DMAT is received. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT4:LT5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT5: L_RcvrHold state.

Transition LT4:LT6 Data transmit not complete and data not ready to transmit and AnyDword other than SYNC received from Phy: When the Transport layer indicates that the next DWORD is not available to transfer and any DWORD other than a SYNC primitive has been received from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT6: L_SendHold state.

Transition LT4:LT7 DMAT received from Phy or data transmit complete and AnyDword other than SYNC received from Phy: When the Transport layer indicates that all data for the frame has been transferred and any DWORD other than a SYNC primitive has been received from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT7: L_SendCRC state. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6) When the Link layer receives a DMAT primitive from the Physical layer, it may notify the Transport layer and terminate the transmission in progress as described in 15.4.6 and shall transition to the LT7: L_SendCRC state. The DMAT signal is advisory and data transmission should be halted at the earliest opportunity but is not required to cease immediately. It is therefore allowable to stay in the LT4: L_SendData state when there is more data to transmit and DMAT is received. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT4:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition, fail the attempted transfer, and shall make a transition to the L1:L_IDLE state.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Register FIS with C=0 is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), the current transfer shall be aborted and a transition to the L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the receiving Link layer to also transition to the L1: L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS Host to Device. When this condition is true, the associated transition has priority over all other transitions exiting this state.

Transition LT4:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LT5: L_RcvrHold state: This state is entered when a HOLD primitive has been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the HOLDA primitive.

Transition LT5:LT4 More data to transmit and AnyDword other than (HOLD or SYNC or DMAT) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD, SYNC, or a DMAT primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates that a DWORD is available for transfer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT4: L_SendData state.

Transition LT5:LT5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer or a decoding error was detected, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT5: L_RcvrHold state.

Transition LT5:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error, fail the attempted transfer, and shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Register FIS with C=0 is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), the current transfer shall be aborted and a transition to the L1:L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L1:L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the receiving Link layer to also transition to the L1:L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS Host to Device. When this condition is true, the associated transition has priority over all other transitions exiting this state.

Transition LT5:LT7: When the Link layer receives a DMAT primitive from the Physical layer, it may notify the Transport layer and terminate the transmission in progress as described in 15.4.6 and may transition to the LT7: L_SendCRC state. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6) The DMAT signal is advisory and data transmission should be halted at the earliest opportunity but is not required to cease immediately. It is therefore allowable to stay in the LT5: L_RcvrHold state when there is more data to transmit and DMAT is received. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT5:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LT6: L_SendHold state: This state is entered when the Transport layer indicates a DWORD is not available for transfer and a HOLD primitive has not been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the HOLD primitive.

Transition LT6:LT4 More data ready to transmit and AnyDword other than (HOLD or SYNC) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD or SYNC primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates that a DWORD is available for transfer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT4: L_SendData state.

Transition LT6:LT5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates a DWORD is available for transfer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT5: L_RcvrHold state.

Transition LT6:LT6 Data transmit not complete and data not ready to transmit and AnyDword other than (SYNC or DMAT) received from Phy: When the Transport layer indicates that a DWORD is not available for transfer and any DWORD other than a SYNC or DMAT primitive is received from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT6: L_SendHold state.

Transition LT6:LT7: When the Link layer receives a DMAT primitive from the Physical layer, it may notify the Transport layer and terminate the transmission in progress as described in 15.4.6 and transition to the LT7:L_SendCRC state. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6) The DMAT signal is advisory and data transmission should be halted at the earliest opportunity but is not required to cease immediately. It is therefore allowable to stay in the LT6: L_SendHold state when there is more data to transmit and DMAT is received. Any received errors such as 10b decoding errors and invalid primitives are ignored.

Transition LT6:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state. The Transport layer shall be notified of the illegal transition error condition and fail the attempted transfer.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Register FIS with C=0 is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), the current transfer shall be aborted and a transition to the L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the receiving Link layer to also transition to the L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS Host to Device. When this condition is true, the associated transition has priority over all other transitions exiting this state.

Transition LT6:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LT7: L_SendCRC state: This state is entered when the Transport layer indicates that all data DWORDs have been transferred for this frame.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the calculated CRC for the frame.

Transition LT7:LT8: When the CRC has been transmitted, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT8: L_SendEOF state.

Transition LT7:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

Transition LT7:L1: If the Phy is Ready and the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition, fail the attempted transfer, and shall make a transition to the L1:L_IDLE state.

LT8: L_SendEOF state: This state is entered when the CRC for the frame has been transmitted.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the EOF primitive.

Transition LT8:LT9: When the EOF primitive has been transmitted, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT9: L_Wait state.

Transition LT8:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

Transition LT8:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition, fail the attempted transfer, and shall make a transition to the L1:L_IDLE state.

LT9: L_Wait state: This state is entered when the EOF primitive has been transmitted.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the WTRM primitive.

Transition LT9:L1: When the Link layer receives a R_OK primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer and make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LT9:L1: When the Link layer receives a R_ERR primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LT9:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state. If

the Host transport requests to transmit a Register HD FIS with C=0, the transport shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LT9:LT9 AnyDword other than (R_OK or R_ERR , or SYNC) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than an R_OK, R_ERR, or SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LT9: L_Wait state.

Transition LT9:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

15.7.1.3 Link receive state diagram

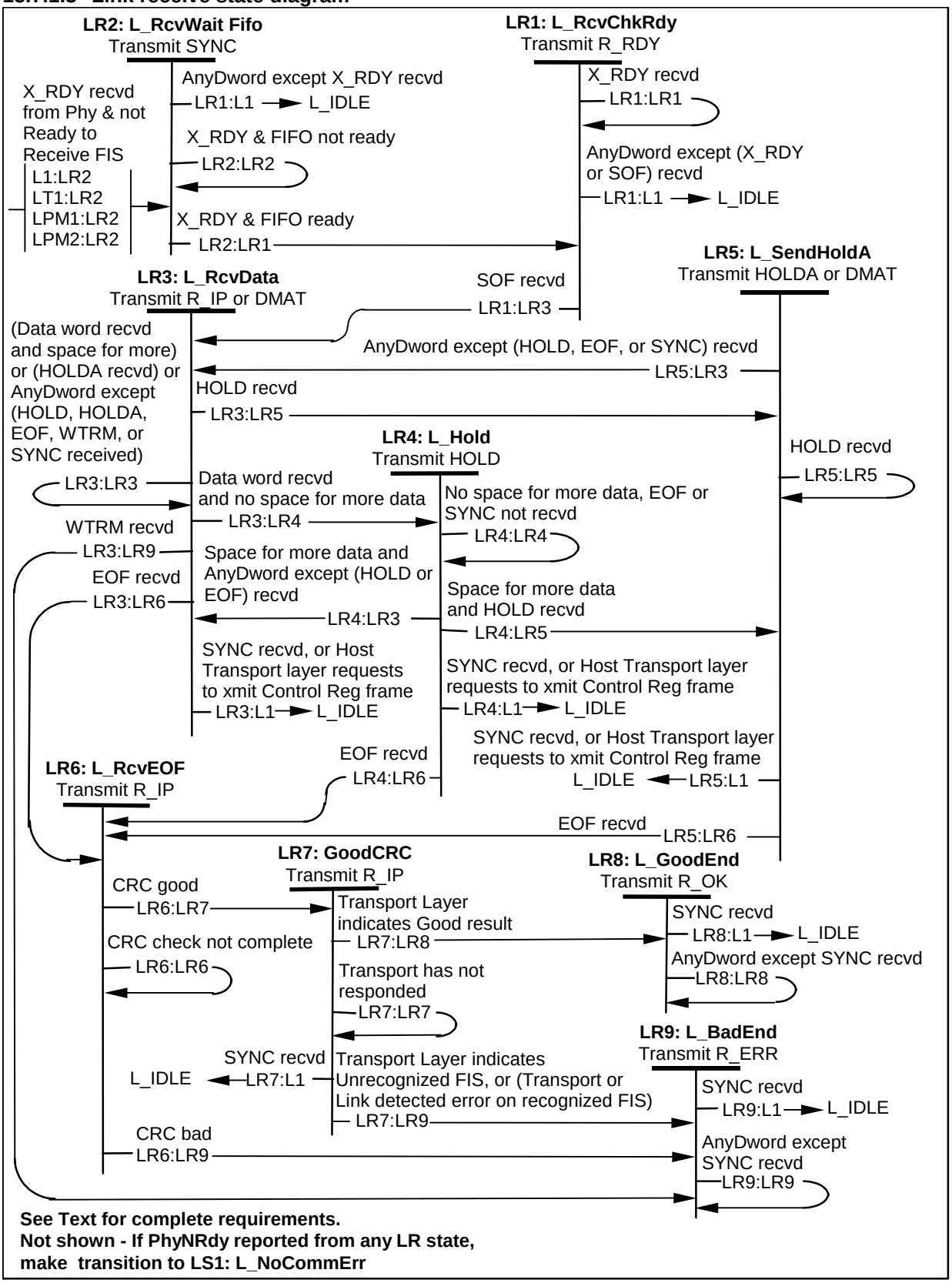


Figure 60 – Link receive state diagram (States LR1-LR9)

In any state of the Link receive state diagram, if the Link layer detects the Phy layer is not ready, the Link layer will notify the Transport layer, fail the attempted transfer, and make a transition to LS1: L_NoCommErr. These transitions are not shown in the state diagram to improve clarity.

LR1: L_RcvChkRdy state: This state is entered when an X_RDY primitive has been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit an R_RDY primitive and wait for an SOF primitive from the Physical layer.

Transition LR1:LR1: When the Link layer receives an X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR1: L_RcvChkRdy state.

Transition LR1:LR2: When the Link layer receives an SOF primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR2: L_RcvData state.

LR1:L1 Any DWORD other than (X_RDY or SOF) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than an X_RDY or SOF primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LR1:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall Notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state: This state is entered when an X_RDY has been received, and the FIFO is not ready to receive an FIS.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the SYNC primitive.

Transition LR2:LR1: When the Link layer receives a X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer and the FIFO is ready to accept data, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR1: L_RcvChkRdy state.

Transition LR2:LR2: When the Link layer receives a X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer and the FIFO is not ready to accept data, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state.

Transition LR2:L1: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than an X_RDY primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LR2:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR3: L_RcvData state: This state is entered when an SOF primitive has been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer receives an encoded character sequence from the Physical layer, decodes it into a DWORD, and passes the DWORD to the Transport layer. The DWORD is also entered into the CRC calculation. When in this state the Link layer either transmits a R_IP primitive to signal transmission to continue or transmits a DMAT primitive (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6) to signal the transmitter to terminate the transmission.

Transition LR3:LR3 (Data DWORD received from Phy and FIFO space) or HOLDA received from Phy: When the Transport layer indicates that space is available in its FIFO, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR3: L_RcvData state.

Transition LR3:LR3 AnyDword other than (HOLD or EOF or HOLDA or SYNC or WTRM) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD, HOLDA, EOF, or SYNC,or WTRMprimitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR3: L_RcvData state.

Transition LR3:LR4: When the Transport layer indicates that sufficient space is not available in its FIFO, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR4: L_Hold state.

Transition LR3:LR5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR5: L_SendHoldA state.

Transition LR3:LR6: When the Link layer receives an EOF primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR6: L_RcvEOF state.

Transition LR3:LR9: When the Link layer receives a WTRM primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR9: L_BadEnd state.

Transition LR3:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer that reception was aborted and shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Control Register Frame is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), a transition to the L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the transmitting Link layer to also transition to the L1:L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS from host to device.

Transition LR3:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR4: L_Hold state: This state is entered when the Transport layer indicates that sufficient space is not available in its receive FIFO.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the HOLD primitive and may receive an encoded character from the Physical layer.

Transition LR4:LR3 FIFO space available and AnyDword other than HOLD or EOF received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD primitive or EOF primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates that sufficient space is now available in its receive FIFO, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR3: L_RcvData state.

Transition LR4:LR5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer and the Transport layer indicates that space is now available in its FIFO, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR5: L_SendHoldA state.

Transition LR4:LR6: When the Link layer receives a EOF primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR6: L_RcvEOF state. Note that due to pipeline latency, an EOF may be received when in the L_Hold state in which case the receiving Link shall use its FIFO headroom to receive the EOF and close the frame reception.

Transition LR4:LR4 No FIFO space available and EOF not received from Phy and SYNC not received from Phy and PhyRdy: When the Transport layer indicates that there is not sufficient space available in its FIFO and the Physical layer is ready, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR4: L_Hold state.

Transition LR4:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

Transition LR4:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition and shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Control Register Frame is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), a transition to the L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the transmitting Link layer to also transition to the L1:L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS from host to device.

LR5: L_SendHoldA state: This state is entered when a HOLD primitive has been received from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer shall either transmit the HOLDA primitive to signal transmission to proceed when the transmitter becomes ready or transmit a DMAT primitive (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6) to signal the transmitter to terminate the transmission.

Transition LR5:LR3 AnyDword other than (HOLD or EOF or SYNC) received from Phy: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a HOLD or EOF or SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR3: L_RcvData state.

Transition LR5:LR5: When the Link layer receives a HOLD primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR5: L_SendHoldA state.

Transition LR5:LR6: When the Link layer receives a EOF primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR6: L_RcvEOF state.

Transition LR5:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state. The Transport layer shall be notified of the illegal transition error condition.

When the host Link layer receives notification from the host Transport layer that a Control Register Frame is pending for transmission (typically due to SRST being toggled), a transition to the L_IDLE state shall be made. The return to the L_IDLE state results in the transmission of SYNC primitives, which causes the transmitting Link layer to also transition to the L1:L_IDLE state. The Register FIS with C=0 may then be transmitted as a Register FIS from host to device.

Transition LR5:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR6: L_RcvEOF state: This state is entered when the Link layer has received an EOF primitive from the Physical layer.

When in this state, the Link layer shall check the calculated CRC for the frame and transmit one or more R_IP primitives.

Transition LR6:LR6: If the CRC calculation and check is not yet completed, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR6: L_RcvEOF state.

Transition LR6:LR7: When the CRC indicates no error, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer and make a transition to the LR7: L_GoodCRC state.

Transition LR6:LR9: When the CRC indicates an error has occurred, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer and make a transition to the LR9: L_BadEnd state.

Transition LR6:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR7: L_GoodCRC state: This state is entered when the CRC for the frame has been checked and determined to be good.

Upon entering this state for the first time, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer that the CRC for this frame is valid. When in this state, the Link layer shall wait for the Transport Layer to check the frame and transmit one or more R_IP primitives.

Transition LR7:LR8: When the Transport Layer indicates a good result, the Link Layer shall transition to the LR8: L_GoodEnd state.

Transition LR7:LR9: When the Transport Layer indicates an unrecognized FIS, the Link Layer shall transition to the LR9: L_BadEnd state.

When the Transport layer or Link layer indicates an error was encountered during the reception of the recognized FIS, the Link layer shall transition to the LR9: L_BadEnd state.

Transition LR7:LR7: If the Transport Layer has not supplied status, then the Link Layer shall transition to the LR7: L_GoodCRC state.

Transition LR7:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

Transition LR7:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the illegal transition error condition and shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

LR8: L_GoodEnd state: This state is entered when the CRC for the frame has been checked and determined to be good.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the R_OK primitive.

Transition LR8:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LR8:LR8: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR8: L_GoodEnd state.

Transition LR8:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready, the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LR9: L_BadEnd state: This state is entered when the CRC for the frame has been checked and determined to be bad or when the Transport layer has notified the Link layer that the received FIS is invalid.

When in this state, the Link layer shall transmit the R_ERR primitive.

Transition LR9:L1: When the Link layer receives a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LR9:LR9: When the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a SYNC primitive from the Physical layer, the Link layer shall make a transition to the LR8:BadEnd state.

Transition LR9:LS1: When the Link layer detects that the Physical layer is not ready the Link layer shall notify the Transport layer of the condition and make a transition to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

15.7.1.4 Link power mode state diagram

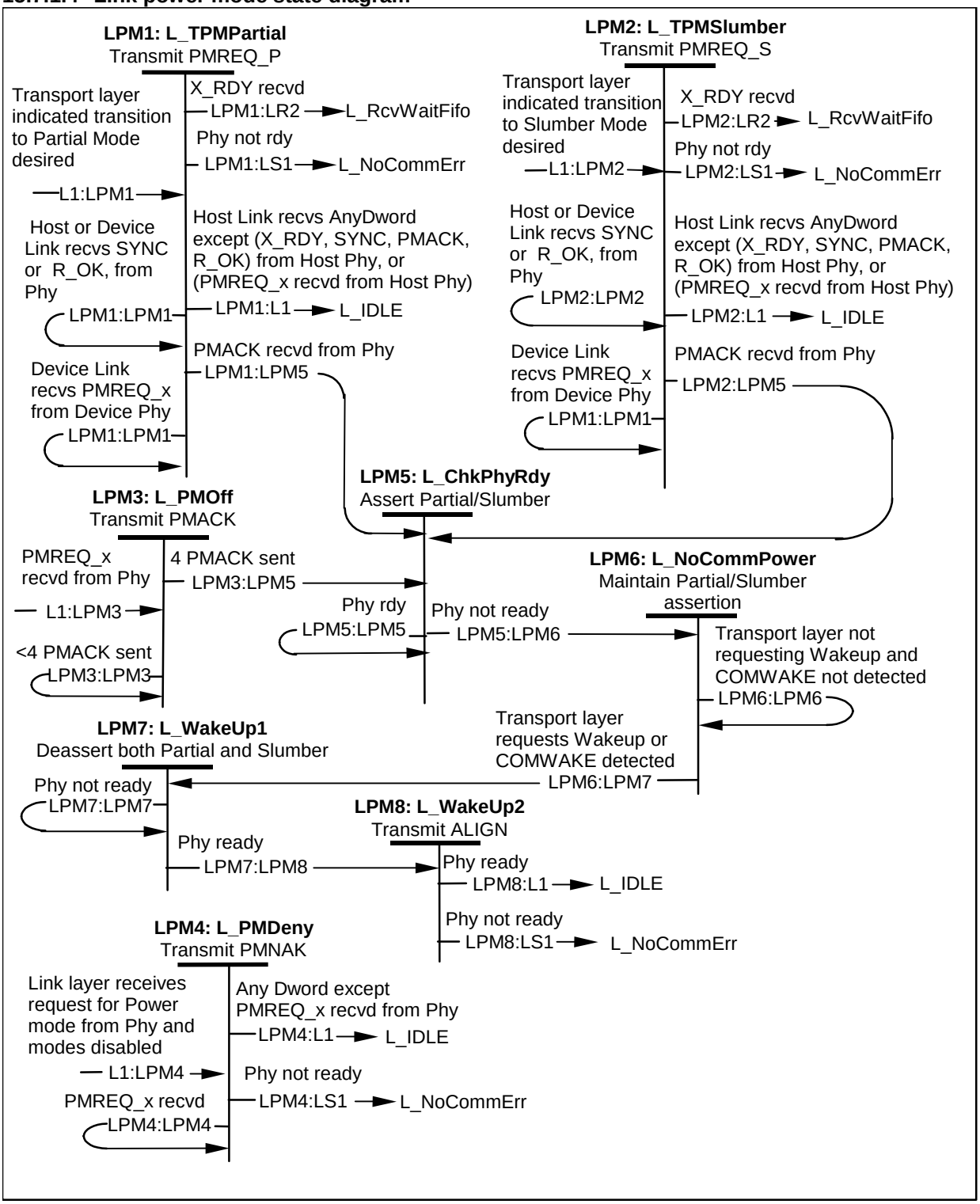


Figure 61 – Link power mode state diagram (States LPM1-LPM8)

LPM1: L_TPMPartial state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has indicated that a transition to the Partial power state is desired.
When in this state a PMREQ_P primitive shall be transmitted

Transition LPM1:LPM5:. When the Link layer receives a PMACK primitive a transition to the LPM5: L_ChkPhyRdy state shall be made.

Transition LPM1:LR2: If the Link layer receives an X_RDY primitive a transition shall be made to the LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state. This aborts the request from the Transport layer to enter a power mode. A status indication to the Transport layer of this event is required.

Transition LPM1:LPM1: If the Link layer receives a SYNC or R_OK primitive, then it is assumed that the opposite side has not yet processed the PMREQ_P primitive yet and time is needed. A transition to the LPM1: L_TPMPartial state shall be made.

Transition LPM1:LPM1: The host Link layer shall not make this transition as it applies only to the device Link layer. If the device Link layer receives a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S primitive from the host, it shall remain in this state by transitioning back to LPM1: L_TPMPartial.

Transition LPM1:L1 AnyDword other than (PMACK or X_RDY or SYNC or R_OK or PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) received from Phy layer: If the host Link layer receives any DWORD from the Physical layer other than a PMACK, X_RDY, SYNC, or R_OK primitive, then the request to enter the partial state is aborted and a transition to L1: L_IDLE shall be made. This transition includes the case where a PMNAK is received. The device link layer shall not make this transition if it receives a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S primitive while in this state.

Transition LPM1:LS1: If the Link layer detects that the Physical layer has become not ready, this is interpreted as an error condition. The Transport layer shall be notified of the condition and a transition shall be made to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LPM2: L_TPMSlumber state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has indicated that a transition to the Slumber power state is desired.
When in this state a PMREQ_S primitive shall be transmitted.

Transition LPM2:LPM5: When the Link layer receives a PMACK primitive, a transition to the LPM5: L_ChkPhyRdy state shall be made.

Transition LPM2:LR2: If the Link layer receives an X_RDY primitive, a transition to the LR2: L_RcvWaitFifo state shall be made. This aborts the request from the Transport layer to enter a power mode. A status indication to the Transport layer of this event is required.

Transition LPM2:LPM2: If the Link layer receives a SYNC or R_OK primitive, then it is assumed that the opposite side has not yet processed the PMREQ_S primitive yet and time is needed. The transition to the LPM2: L_TPMSlumber state shall be made.

Transition LPM2:LPM2: The host Link layer shall not make this transition as it applies only to the device Link layer. If the device Link layer receives a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S primitive from the host, it shall remain in this state by transitioning back to LPM2: L_TPMSlumber.

Transition LPM2:L1 AnyDword other than (PMACK or X_RDY or SYNC or R_OK or PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) received from Phy layer: If the host Link layer receives any DWORD from the Physical layer other than a PMACK, X_RDY, SYNC, or R_OK primitive, then the request to enter the slumber state is aborted and a transition to L1: L_IDLE shall be made. This transition includes the case where a PMNAK is received. The device link layer shall not make this transition if it receives a PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S primitive while in this state.

Transition LPM2:LS1: If the Link layer detects that the Physical layer has become not ready, this is interpreted as an error condition. The Transport layer shall be notified of the condition and a transition shall be made to the LS1:L_NoCommErr state.

LPM3: L_PMOff state: This state is entered when either a PMREQ_S or PMREQ_P primitive was received by the Physical layer. A flag is set according to whether PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S was received from the Physical layer. The Link layer transmits a PMACK primitive for each execution of this state.

Transition LPM3:LPM5: If four PMACK primitives have been transmitted, a transition shall be made to the LPM5:L_ChkPhyRdy state.

Transition LPM3:LPM3: If less than four PMACK primitives have been transmitted, a transition shall be made to LPM3:L_PMOff state.

LPM4: L_PMDeny state: This state is entered when any primitive is received by the Link layer to enter a power mode and power modes are currently disabled. The Link layer shall transmit a PMNAK primitive to inform the opposite end that a power mode is not allowed.

Transition LPM4:LPM4: If the Link layer continues to receive a request to enter any power mode than a transition back to the same LPM4: L_PMDeny state shall be made.

Transition LPM4:L1 AnyDword other than (PMREQ_P or PMREQ_S) received from Phy layer: If the Link layer receives any DWORD other than a power mode request primitive, then the Link layer assumes that the power mode request has been removed and shall make a transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LPM4:LS1: If the Link layer detects that the Physical layer has become not ready, this is interpreted as an error condition. The Transport layer shall be notified of the condition and a transition shall be made to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

LPM5: L_ChkPhyRdy state: This state is entered whenever it is desired for the Physical layer to enter a low power condition. For each execution in this state a request is made to the Physical layer to enter the state and deactivate the PhyRdy signal. Partial or Slumber is asserted to the Phy as appropriate.

Transition LPM6:LPM5: If the Physical layer has not yet processed the request to enter the power saving state and not deactivated the PhyRdy signal, then the Link layer shall remain in the LPM5: L_ChkPhyRdy state and continue to request the Physical layer to enter the power mode state.

Transition LPM6:LPM6: When the Physical layer has processed the power mode request and has deactivated the PhyRdy signal, then a transition shall be made to the LPM6: L_NoCommPower state.

LPM6: L_NoCommPower state: This state is entered when the Phy has negated its PhyRdy signal indicating that it is in either Partial or Slumber state. In this state, the Link layer waits for the out of band detector to signal reception of the COMWAKE sequence, or for the Transport layer to request a wakeup.

Transition LPM6:LPM7: If the Transport layer requests a wakeup or the out of band signal detector indicates reception of the COMWAKE signal, then a transition shall be made to LPM7: L_WakeUp1

Transition LPM6:LPM6: If the Transport layer does not request a wakeup and the out of band detector does not indicate reception of the COMWAKE signal, then a transition shall be made to LPM6: L_NoCommPower.

LPM7: L_WakeUp1 state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has initiated a wakeup. In this state, the Link layer shall deassert both Partial and Slumber to the Phy, and wait for the PhyRdy signal from the Phy to be asserted. While in this state the Phy is performing the wakeup sequence.

Transition LPM7:LPM8 When the Phy asserts its PhyRdy signal, a transition shall be made to LPM8: L_WakeUp2.

Transition LPM7:LPM7: When the Phy remains not ready, a transition shall be made to LPM7: L_WakeUp1.

LPM8: L_WakeUp2 state: This state is entered when the Phy has acknowledged an initiated wakeup request by asserting its PhyRdy signal. In this state, the Link layer shall transmit the ALIGN sequence, and transition to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LPM8:L1 If the Phy keeps PhyRdy asserted, a transition shall be made to the L1: L_IDLE state.

Transition LPM8:LS1 If the Phy deasserts PhyRdy, this is an error condition. The Transport layer shall be notified of the condition and a transition shall be made to the LS1: L_NoCommErr state.

16 Serial interface Transport layer

16.1 Transport layer overview

The Transport layer need not be cognizant of how frames are transmitted and received. The Transport layer constructs Frame Information Structures (FIS's) for transmission and decomposes received Frame Information Structures. Host and device Transport layer state differ in that the source of the FIS content differs. The Transport layer maintains no context in terms of ATA commands or previous FIS content.

16.1.1 FIS construction

When requested to construct an FIS by a higher layer, the Transport layer provides the following services:

- Gathers FIS content based on the type of FIS requested.
- Places FIS content in the proper order.
- Notifies the Link layer of required frame transmission and passes FIS content to Link.
- Manages Buffer/FIFO flow, notifies Link of required flow control.
- Receives frame receipt acknowledge from Link layer.
- Reports good transmission or errors to requesting higher layer.

16.1.2 FIS decomposition

When an FIS is received from the Link layer, the Transport layer provides the following services:

- Receives the FIS from the Link layer.
- Determines FIS type.
- Distributes the FIS content to the locations indicated by the FIS type.
- For the host Transport layer, receipt of an FIS may also cause the construction of an FIS to be returned to the device.
- Reports good reception or errors to higher layer

16.2 Frame Information Structure (FIS)

16.3 Overview

A frame is a group of DWORDs that convey information between host and device as described previously. Primitives are used to define the boundaries of the frame and may be inserted to control the rate of the information flow. This section describes the information content of the frame - hereto referred as payload - and assumes the reader is aware of the Primitives that are needed to support the information content.

16.4 Payload content

The type and layout of the payload is indicated by the Frame Information Type field located in byte 0 of the first DWORD of the payload. For Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block registers see Clause 5.

16.5 FIS types

The following sections define the structure of each individual FIS.

16.5.1 Register - Host to Device

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Features								Command								C	R	R	Reserved (0)					FIS Type (27h)							
1	Device								LBA High								LBA Mid								LBA Low							
2	Features (exp)								LBA High (exp)								LBA Mid (exp)								LBA Low (exp)							
3	Control								Reserved (0)								Sector Count (exp)								Sector Count							
4	Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)							

Figure 62 - Register - Host to Device FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 27h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as five DWORDs.

C - This bit is set to one when the register transfer is due to an update of the Command register. The bit is cleared to zero when the register transfer is due to an update of the Device Control register.

Setting C =1 and SRST=1 in the Device Control Field is invalid and will result in inderminate behavior.

Command - Contains the contents of the Command register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Low - Contains the contents of the LBA Low register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Low (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block

Control - Contains the contents of the Device Control register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Mid - Contains the contents of the LBA Mid register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Mid (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block

LBA High - Contains the contents of the LBA High register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA High (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

Device - Contains the contents of the Device register of the Shadow Command Block.

Features - Contains the contents of the Features register of the Shadow Command Block.

Features (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

R - Reserved.

Sector Count - Contains the contents of the Sector Count register of the Shadow Command Block.

Sector Count (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

16.5.1.1 Description

The Register - Host to Device FIS is used to transfer the contents of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block from the host to the device. This is the mechanism for issuing the parallel implementation of ATA commands to the device.

16.5.1.2 Transmission

Transmission of a Register - Host to Device FIS is initiated by a write operation to either the Command register, or a write to the Device Control register with a value different than is currently in the Device Control register. There are BIOS and drivers that write the Device Control register to enable the interrupt just prior to issuing a command. To avoid unnecessary overhead, this FIS should be transmitted to the device only upon a change of state from the previous value in the host adapter's Shadow Control Block. Upon initiating transmission, the current contents of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block are transmitted and the C bit in the FIS is set according to whether the transmission was a result of the Command register being written or the Device Control register being written. The host adapter shall set the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register to one within 400 ns after the write operation to the Command register that initiated the transmission. The host adapter shall set the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register to one within 400 ns after a write operation to the Device Control register if the write to the Device Control register changes the state of the SRST bit from 0 to 1 but shall not set the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register for writes to the Device Control register that do not change the state of the SRST bit from 0 to 1.

It is important to note that serial implementations of ATA host adapters enforce the same access control to the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block as the parallel implementation of ATA devices enforce to the Command Block Registers. When either BSY or DRQ is set in the Status Register the host should not write the Command Block registers. Any write to the Command Block Registers when BSY or DRQ is set will result in indeterminate behavior unless the write is to issue a DEVICE RESET command.

16.5.1.3 Reception

Upon reception of a valid Register - Host to Device FIS the device updates its local copy of the Command and Control Block Register contents and, if the C bit is set to 1, initiates execution of the command indicated in the command register.

16.5.2 Register - Device to Host

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Error								Status								R	I	R	Reserved (0)										FIS Type (34h)			
1	Device								LBA High								LBA Mid												LBA Low			
2	Reserved (0)								LBA High (exp)								LBA Mid (exp)												LBA Low (exp) (0)			
3	Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								Sector Count (exp)												Sector Count			
4	Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)												Reserved (0)			

Figure 63 - Register - Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 34h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as five DWORDs.

LBA Low - Contains the contents to be placed in the LBA Low register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Low (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Mid - Contains the contents to be placed in the LBA Mid register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA Mid (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA High - Contains the contents to be placed in the LBA High register of the Shadow Command Block.

LBA High (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

Device - Contains the contents to be placed in the Device register of the Shadow Command Block.

Error - Contains the contents to be placed in the Error register of the Shadow Command Block.

I - Interrupt bit. This bit reflects the Interrupt Pending state of the device. Devices shall not modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of the nIEN bit received in Register Host to Device FIS's.

Note: Some implementations prior to this standard modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of nIEN in received Register Host to Device FIS's. See Clause 18.2.

R - Reserved

Sector Count - Contains the contents to be placed in the Sector Count register of the Shadow Command Block.

Sector Count (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.

Status - Contains the contents to be placed in the Status (and Alternate status) Register of the Shadow Command Block.

16.5.2.1 Description - Register Device to Host FIS

The Register - Device to Host FIS is used to by the device to update the contents of the host adapter’s Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block. This is the mechanism by which devices indicate command completion status or otherwise change the contents of the host adapter’s Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block.

16.5.2.2 Transmission

Transmission of a Register - Device to Host FIS is initiated by the device in order to update the contents of the host adapter's Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block. Transmission of the Register - Device to Host FIS is typically as a result of command completion by the device.

The Register - Device to Host FIS shall only be used to set the SERV bit in the Status Register to request service for a bus released command if the BSY bit or the DRQ bit is currently set in the Status Register; the Set Device Bits - Device to Host FIS shall be used to set the SERV bit when the BSY bit and DRQ bit are both cleared to 0 in the Status Register. The SERV bit transmitted with the Register - Device to Host FIS will be written to the shadow Status Register and so the bit should accurately reflect the state of pending service requests when the FIS is transmitted as a result of a command completion by the device.

16.5.2.3 Reception

Upon reception of a valid Register - Device to Host FIS the received register contents are transferred to the host adapter's Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block.

If the BSY bit and the DRQ bit in the Shadow Status Register are both cleared when a Register - Device to Host FIS is received by the host adapter, then the host adapter shall discard the contents of the received FIS and not update the contents of any Shadow Command Block or Shadow Control Block.

16.5.3 Set Device Bits - Device to Host

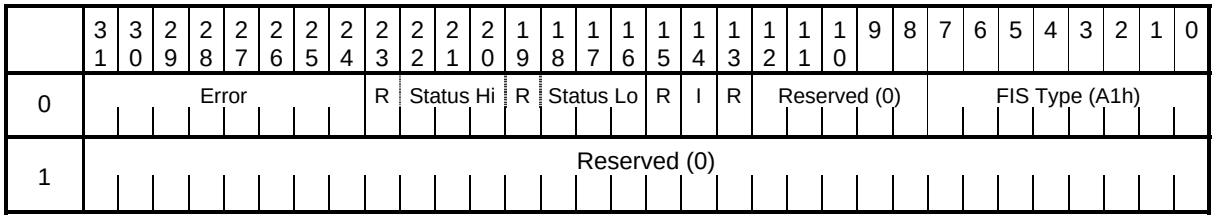


Figure 64 - Set Device Bit - Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type- Set to a value of A1h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as two DWORDs.

I- Interrupt Bit. This bit signals the host adapter to enter an Interrupt Pending state if both the BSY bit and the DRQ bit in the Shadow Status register are zero when the frame is received. Devices shall not modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of the nIEN bit received in Register Host to Device FIS's.

Note: Some implementations prior to this standard modify the behavior of this bit based on the state of nIEN in received Register Host to Device FIS's. See Clause 18.2.

Error- Contains the contents to be placed in the Error register of the Shadow Command Block.

Status-Hi- Contains the contents to be placed in bits 6, 5, and 4 of the Status register of the Shadow Command Block.

Status-Lo- Contains the contents to be placed in bits 2,1, and 0 of the Status register of the Shadow Command Block.

R- Reserved

16.5.3.1 Description Set Device Bits Device to Host FIS

The Set Device Bits - Device to Host FIS is used by the device to load Shadow Command Block bits for which the device has exclusive write access. These bits are the eight bits of the Error register and six of the eight bits of the Status register. This FIS does not alter bit 7, BSY, or bit 3, DRQ, of the Shadow Status register.

The FIS includes a bit to signal the host adapter to generate an interrupt if the BSY bit and the DRQ bit in the Shadow Status Register are both cleared to zero when this FIS is received.

Some the serialto-parallel bridge solutions may not support this FIS. Upon reception, such bridge solutions may process this FIS as if it were an invalid FIS type and return the R_ERR end of frame handshake. Read and Write DMA Queued commands may not be possible if this FIS is not implemented.

16.5.3.2 Transmission

The device transmits a Set Device Bits - Device to Host to alter the Error register and bits in the Status register other than BSY and DRQ in the Shadow Command Block. This FIS should be used by the device to set the SERV bit in the Status register to request service for a bus released command. When used for this purpose the device shall set the Interrupt bit to one.

The Register - Device to Host FIS shall only be used to set the SERV bit in the Status Register to request service for a bus released command if the BSY bit or the DRQ bit is currently set in the Status Register; the Set Device Bits - Device to Host FIS shall be used to set the SERV bit when the BSY bit and DRQ bit are both cleared to 0 in the Status Register. The SERV bit transmitted with the Register - Device to Host FIS will be written to the shadow Status Register and so the bit should accurately reflect the state of pending service requests when the FIS is transmitted as a result of a command completion by the device.

16.5.3.3 Reception

Upon receiving a Set Device Bits - Device to Host, the host adapter shall load the data from the Error field into the Shadow Error register, the data from the Status-Hi field into bits 6, 5, and 4, of the Shadow Status register, and the data from the Status-Lo field into bits 2, 1, and 0 of the Shadow Status register. Bit 7, BSY, and bit 3, DRQ, of the Shadow Status register shall not be changed. If the I bit in the FIS is set to a one, and if both the BSY bit and the DRQ bit in the Shadow Status register are cleared to zero when this FIS is received, then the host adapter shall enter an Interrupt Pending state.

16.5.4 DMA Activate - Device to Host

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								R	R	R	Reserved (0)					FIS Type (39h)							

Figure 65 - DMA Activate - Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 39h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as one DWORD.

R - Reserved

16.5.4.1 Description

The DMA Activate - Device to Host FIS is used by the device to signal the host to proceed with a DMA data transfer of data from the host to the device. This is similar to the DMARQ mechanism by which a parallel implementation of ATA device signals its readiness to receive DMA data from the host.

A situation may arise where the host needs to send multiple Data FIS's in order to complete the overall data transfer request. The host shall wait for a successful reception of a DMA Activate FIS before sending each of the Data FIS's that are needed.

16.5.4.2 Transmission

The device transmits a DMA Activate - Device to Host to the host in order to initiate the flow of DMA data from the host to the device as part of the data transfer portion of a corresponding DMA write command. Before transmitting this FIS, the device shall be prepared to receive a Data - Host to Device FIS from the host with the DMA data for the corresponding command.

16.5.4.3 Reception

Upon receiving a DMA Activate - Device to Host, if the host adapter's DMA controller has been programmed and armed, the host adapter shall initiate the transmission of a Data FIS and shall transmit in this FIS the data corresponding to the host memory regions indicated by the DMA controller's context. If the host adapter's DMA controller has not yet been programmed and armed, the host adapter shall set an internal state indicating that the DMA controller has been activated by the device, and as soon as the DMA controller has been programmed and armed, a Data FIS shall be transmitted to the device with the data corresponding to the host memory regions indicated by the DMA controller context.

16.5.5 First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device (Bidirectional)

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved (0)								Reserved (0)								R	I	D	Reserved (0)					FIS Type (41h)							
1	DMA Buffer Identifier Low																															
2	DMA Buffer Identifier High																															
3	Reserved (0)																															
4	DMA Buffer Offset																															
5	DMA Transfer Count																															
6	Reserved (0)																															

Figure 66 - First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 41h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the total length of the FIS as seven DWORDs.

D - Indicates whether subsequent data transferred after this FIS is from sender to recipient or from recipient to sender 1 = sender to recipient, 0 = recipient to sender .

DMA Buffer Identifier Low/High - This field is used to identify a DMA buffer region in host and device memory. The contents are not described in this standard and are command protocol dependent. The buffer identifier is supplied by the host by a command protocol specific means to the device and the device echoes it back to the host, or the buffer identifier is supplied by the device to the host and the host echoes it back to the device. This allows the implementation to pass a physical address or or, in more complex implementations, the buffer identifier could be a scatter gather list or other information that can identify a DMA “channel”.

DMA Buffer Offset - This is the byte offset into the buffer. Bits <1:0> shall be zero as the addressing granularity in on a DWORD boundary.

DMA Transfer Count: This is the number of bytes that will be transferred. Bit zero shall be zero.

I Interrupt - If the Interrupt bit is set to 1 an Interrupt Pending shall be generated when the DMA transfer count is exhausted.

R - Reserved

16.5.5.1 Description

The First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS is the mechanism by which First Party DMA access to memory is initiated. This FIS is used to request the host or device to program its DMA controller before transferring data. The FIS allows the memory regions to be abstracted (depending on implementation) by having memory regions referenced via a base memory descriptor representing a memory region to which the host or device has been granted access. The specific implementation for the memory descriptor abstraction is not defined.

The device or host is informed of the 64-bit DMA buffer identifier/descriptor at some previous time by a command protocol specific mechanism. . Random access within a buffer is accomplished by using the buffer offset.

First Party DMA is a superset capability not supported by parallel implementations of ATA or it's device drivers.

16.5.5.2 Transmission

A device or host transmits a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS as the first step in performing a First Party DMA access. The purpose of the First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device is to establish DMA hardware context for one or more data transfers.

A First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device is required only when the DMA context is to be changed. Multiple Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS's can follow in either direction, for example, if the transfer count exceeds the maximum Data - Host to Device or Device to Host transfer length or when a data transfer is interrupted. When multiple Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS's follow a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS, the device or host shall place the data contained in the FIS in sequential addresses; that is, if the last DWORD of an FIS is placed in (or obtained from) address N, the first DWORD of a subsequent Data - Host to Device or Device to Host shall be placed in (or obtained from) address N+4 unless an intervening First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS is used to alter the DMA context. This mechanism allows for the efficient streaming of data into a buffer.

16.5.5.3 Reception

Upon receiving a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS, the recipient of the FIS shall validate the received First Party DMA Setup request, and provided that the buffer identifier and the specified offset/count are valid, program and arm the adapter's DMA controller using the information in the FIS. The specific implementation of the buffer identifier and buffer/address validation is not specified. After a valid First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS with the D bit set to 0, the recipient of the First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS responds with one or more Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS's until the DMA count is exhausted. After a valid First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS with the D bit set to 1, the recipient of the FIS shall be prepared to accept one or more Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS's until the DMA count is exhausted.

An Interrupt Pending condition shall be generated upon the completion of the DMA transfer if the I bit is set to 1. The definition of DMA Transfer Completion is command protocol dependent but typically includes the exhaustion of the transfer count or the detection of an error by the DMA controller.

16.5.6 BIST Activate - Bidirectional

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved (0)								Pattern definition T	A	S	L	F	P	R	V	R	R	R	Reserved (0)									FIS Type (58h)							
1	Data [31:24]								Data [23:16]								Data [23:16]								Data [7:0]							
2	Data [31:24]								Data [23:16]								Data [23:16]								Data [7:0]							

Figure 67 - BIST Activate - Bidirectional

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 58h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields.
F - Far End Analog (AFE) Loopback (Optional)
L - Far End Retimed Loopback. Transmitter shall insert additional ALIGNS)
R - Reserved
T - Far end transmit only mode
A - ALIGN Bypass (Do not Transmit Align Primitives) (valid only in combination with T Bit) (optional behavior)
S - Bypass Scrambling (valid only in combination with T Bit) (optional behavior)
P - Primitive bit. (valid only in combination with the T- Bit) (optional behavior)
V - Vendor Specific Test Mode. Causes all other bits to be ignored

16.5.6.1 Description

The BIST Activate FIS shall be used to place the receiver in one of several loopback modes.

The BIST Activate FIS is a bi-directional request in that it may be sent by either the host or the device. The sender and recipient have distinct responsibilities in order to insure proper cooperation between the two parties. The state machines for transmission and reception of the FIS are symmetrical.

The state machines for the transmission of the FIS do not specify the actions the sender takes once successful transmission of the request has been performed. After the sender's Application layer is notified of the successful transmission of the FIS the sender's Application layer will prepare its own Application, Transport and Physical layers into the appropriate states that support the transmission of a stream of data. The FIS shall not be considered successfully transmitted until the receiver has acknowledged reception of the FIS. The sender of the BIST Activate FIS transmits continuous SYNC primitives after reception of the R_OK primitive until such a time that it is ready to interact with the receiver in the BIST exchange.

The state machines for the reception of the FIS do not specify the actions of the receiver's application layer. Once the FIS has been received, the recipient's application layer places its own Application, Transport and Physical layers into states that perform the appropriate retransmission of the sender's data. The recipient shall not enter the BIST state until after it has properly received a good BIST Activate FIS (good CRC), indicated a successful transfer of the FIS to the transmitting side via the R_OK primitive and has received at least one good SYNC primitive. Once in the self-test mode, a receiver shall continue to allow processing of the COMINIT or COMRESET signals in order to exit from the self-test mode.

F: The Far End Analog (Analog Front End - AFE) Loopback, optional, mode where the raw data is received, and retransmitted, without any retiming or re-synchronization, etc. (See 14.7.1.2)

L: The Far End Retimed Loopback, shall be defined as a mode where the recipient retimes the data, and retransmits the retimed data (See 14.7.1.1). This mode is mandatory.

T: The Far-End Transmit Mode mode is used to invoke the Far-End Interface to send data patterns, upon receipt of the FIS BIST Activate, as defined by Pattern DWords #1, and #2. Note that Pattern D-Words #1, and #2 shall be applicable only when the T bit is active, indicating “Far-End Transmit Mode”. This data is modified by the P, A, S, and V bits.

Note that this mode is intended for Inspection/Observation Testing, as well as support for conventional laboratory equipment, rather than for in-system automated testing.

P: The transmit primitives bit. When this bit is set in far end transmit mode, the lowest order byte of the two following DWORDs will be treated as K Characters. It is the responsibility of the sender of the BIST FIS to ensure that the data in byte 0 of the DWORDs are valid D character versions of the K character (i.e. BCh for K28.5). Applicable only when the T bit is set.

A: The ALIGN primitive sequence bypass mode. When set to 1, no ALIGN primitives are sent. When the A-bit is not asserted, ALIGN Primitives are sent normally as defined in this document. Applicable only when the T bit is set.

S: The Bypass Scrambling mode is used to send data or patterns, during BIST activation, that are not scrambled, however are encoded and decoded to normal and legal 8b/10b values. Applicable only when the T bit is set.

V: This mode is vendor specific. All other bits are vendor specific in this mode.

16.5.6.2 Transmission

The initiator transmits a BIST Activate to the recipient in order to initiate the BIST mode of operation.

16.5.6.3 Reception

Upon receiving a BIST Activate, the recipient shall begin operations as per the BIST Activate FIS, described above.

16.5.7 PIO Setup - Device to Host

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Error								Status								R	I	D	Reserved (0)								FIS Type (5Fh)							
1	Device								LBA High								LBA Mid												LBA Low							
2	Reserved (0)								LBA High (exp)								LBA Mid (exp)												LBA Low (exp) (0)							
3	E_Status								Reserved (0)								Sector Count (exp)												Sector Count							
4	Reserved (0)																Transfer Count																			

Figure 68 - PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 5Fh. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as five DWORDs.
LBA Low - Holds the contents of the LBA Low register of the Command Block.
LBA Low (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.
LBA Mid - Holds the contents of the LBA Mid register of the Shadow Command Block.
LBA Mid (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.
LBA High - Holds the contents of the LBA High register of the Command Block.
LBA High (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.
D - Indicates whether host memory is being written or read by the device. 1 = write (device to host), 0 = read (host to device).
Device - Holds the contents of the Device register of the Command Block.
Status - Contains the value of the Status register of the Command Block for initiation of host data transfer.
Error - Contains the value of the Error register of the Command Block at the conclusion of all subsequent Data to Device frames.
I - Interrupt bit. This bit reflects the Interrupt Pending status of the device
R - Reserved
Sector Count - Holds the contents of the sector count register of the Command Block.
Sector Count (exp) - Contains the contents of the expanded address field of the Shadow Command Block.
E_Status - Contains the value to be placed in the Shadow Status register of the Command Block at the expiration of the Transfer Count for this PIO Setup.
Transfer Count - Holds the number of bytes to be transferred in the subsequent Data FIS. The Transfer Count value shall be non-zero and the low order bit shall be zero (even number of bytes transferred).

16.5.7.1 Description

The PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS is used by the device to provide the host adapter with sufficient information regarding a PIO data phase to allow the host adapter to efficiently handle PIO data transfers. For PIO data transfers, the device shall send to the host a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS just before every data transfer FIS that is required to complete the data transfer. Data transfers from Host to Device as well as data transfers from Device to Host shall follow this algorithm. Because of the stringent timing constraints in the parallel implementation of ATA, the PIO Setup FIS includes both the starting status from the Status field and ending status from the E_Status field values. These are used by the host adapter to first signal to host

software readiness for PIO write data (BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one), and to properly signal host software by negating DRQ and possibly asserting BSY after reception of the Data FIS.

16.5.7.2 Transmission of PIO Setup by Device Prior to a Data Transfer from Host to Device

The device transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host in preparation for a Data FIS just before every Data FIS required to complete the total data transfer for a command. The device includes in the PIO Setup FIS the values to be placed in the Shadow Status register at the initiation of the Data FIS and the E_Status value to be placed in the Shadow Status register at the end of the Data FIS . The device must be prepared to receive a Data FIS in response to transmitting a PIO Setup FIS.

16.5.7.3 Reception of PIO Setup by Host Prior to a Data Transfer from Host to Device

Upon receiving a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS, the host shall transfer the Status and Error values into the Shadow Status and Error registers and shall hold the E_Status value in a temporary register. The Transfer Count value shall be loaded into a countdown register. Upon detecting the change in the Shadow Status register, host software proceeds to perform a series of write operations to the Shadow Data register, which the host adapter collects to produce a Data FIS to the device. Each write of the Shadow Data register results in another word of data being concatenated into the Data FIS, and the countdown register being decremented accordingly. The E_Status value shall be transferred to the Shadow Status register within 400 ns after the countdown register reaching terminal count. In the case that the transfer length represents an odd number of words, the last word shall be placed in the low order (word 0) of the final DWORD and the high order word (word 1) of the final DWORD shall be padded with zeros before transmission. This process is repeated for every Data FIS needed to complete the overall data transfer of a command.

16.5.7.4 Transmission of PIO Setup by Device Prior to a Data Transfer from Device to Host

The device transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host in preparation for a PIO Data FIS just before every PIO Data FIS required to complete the total data transfer for a command. The device includes in the FIS the values to be placed in the Shadow Status register at the beginning of the PIO Data FIS and the E_Status value to be placed in the Shadow Status register at the end of the Data FIS. The device shall be prepared to transmit a Data FIS following the transmittal of a PIO Setup FIS.

16.5.7.5 Reception of PIO Setup by Host Prior to a Data Transfer from Device to Host

Upon receiving a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS for a device to host transfer, the host shall hold the Status, Error, and E_Status values in temporary registers. The Transfer Length value shall be loaded into a countdown register. Upon reception of a Data FIS from the device, the Status and Error values are loaded into the Shadow Status and Shadow Error registers and host proceeds to perform a series of read operations from the Shadow Data register. Each read of the Shadow Data register results in a countdown register being decremented accordingly. The E_Status value shall be transferred to the Shadow Status register within 400 ns after the countdown register reaching terminal count. This process is repeated for every Data FIS needed to complete the overall data transfer of a command.

16.5.8 Data - Host to Device or Device to Host (Bidirectional)

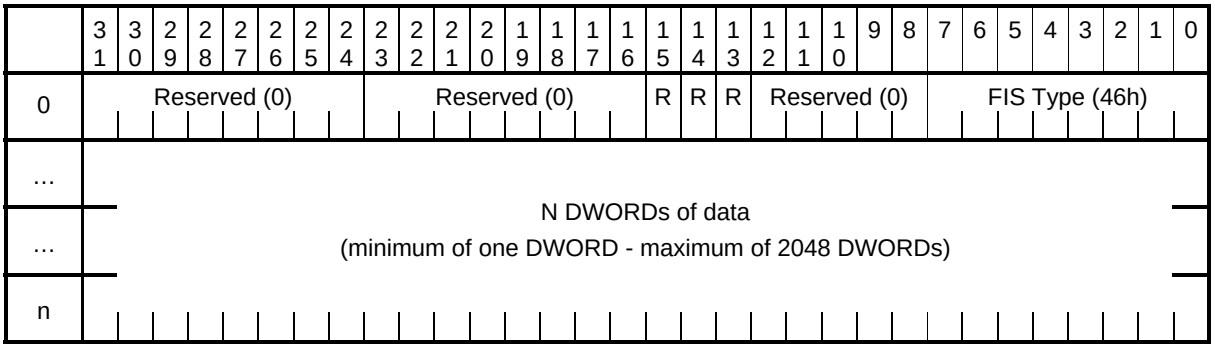


Figure 69 - Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS layout

Field Definitions

FIS Type - Set to a value of 46h. Defines the rest of the FIS fields. Defines the length of the FIS as n+1 DWORDs.

Dwords of data - Contain the actual data to transfer. Only 32 bit fields are transferred. The last DWORD is padded with zeros when only a partial DWORD is to be transmitted.

NOTE –The maximum amount of user data that can be sent in a single Data - Host to Device or Data - Device to Host FIS is limited. See description 16.5.8.1.

R - Reserved

16.5.8.1 Description

The Data - Host to Device and the Data - Device to Host FIS's are used for transporting payload data, such as the data read from or written to a number of sectors on a hard drive. The FIS may either be generated by the device to transmit data to the host or may be generated by the host to transmit data to the device. This FIS is only one element of a sequence of transactions leading up to a data transmission and the transactions leading up to and following the Data FIS establish the proper context for both the host and device.

The byte count of the payload is not an explicit parameter, rather it is inferred by counting the number of DWORDs between the SOF and EOF primitives, and discounting the FIS type and CRC DWORDs. The payload size shall be no more than 2048 DWORDs (8192 bytes). Non-packet devices shall report a SET MULTIPLE limit of 16 sectors or less in word 47 of their IDENTIFY DEVICE information.

In the case that the transfer length represents an odd number of words, the last word shall be placed in the low order (word 0) of the final DWORD and the high order word (word 1) of the final DWORD shall be padded with zeros before transmission.

16.5.8.2 Transmission

The device transmits a Data - Device to Host FIS to the host during the data transfer phase of PIO reads, DMA reads, and First Party DMA writes to host memory. The device shall precede a Data FIS with any necessary context-setting transactions as appropriate for the particular command sequence. For example, a First Party DMA host memory write is preceded by a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS to establish proper context for the Data FIS that follows.

The host transmits a Data - Host to Device FIS to the device during the data transfer phase of PIO writes, DMA writes, and First Party DMA reads of host memory. The FIS shall be preceded with any necessary context-setting transactions as appropriate for the particular command sequence. For example, a DMA write to the device is preceded by a DMA Activate - Device to Host FIS with the DMA context having been pre-established by the host.

When used for transferring data for DMA operations multiple Data - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS's can follow in either direction. Segmentation can occur when the transfer count exceeds the maximum Data - Host to Device or Device to Host transfer length or if a data transfer is interrupted.

When used for transferring data in response to a PIO Setup all of the data specified in the transfer count in the PIO Setup must be transmitted in a single Data FIS.

In the event that a transfer is broken into multiple FIS's, all intermediate FIS's shall contain an integral number of full DWORDs. If the total data transfer is for an odd number of words, then the high order word (word 1) of the last DWORD of the last FIS shall be padded with zeros before transmission and discarded on reception.

16.5.8.3 Reception

Neither the host nor device is expected to buffer an entire Data FIS in order to check the CRC of the FIS before processing the data. Incorrect data reception for a Data FIS is reflected in the overall command completion status.

16.6 Host transport states

16.6.1 Host transport idle state diagram

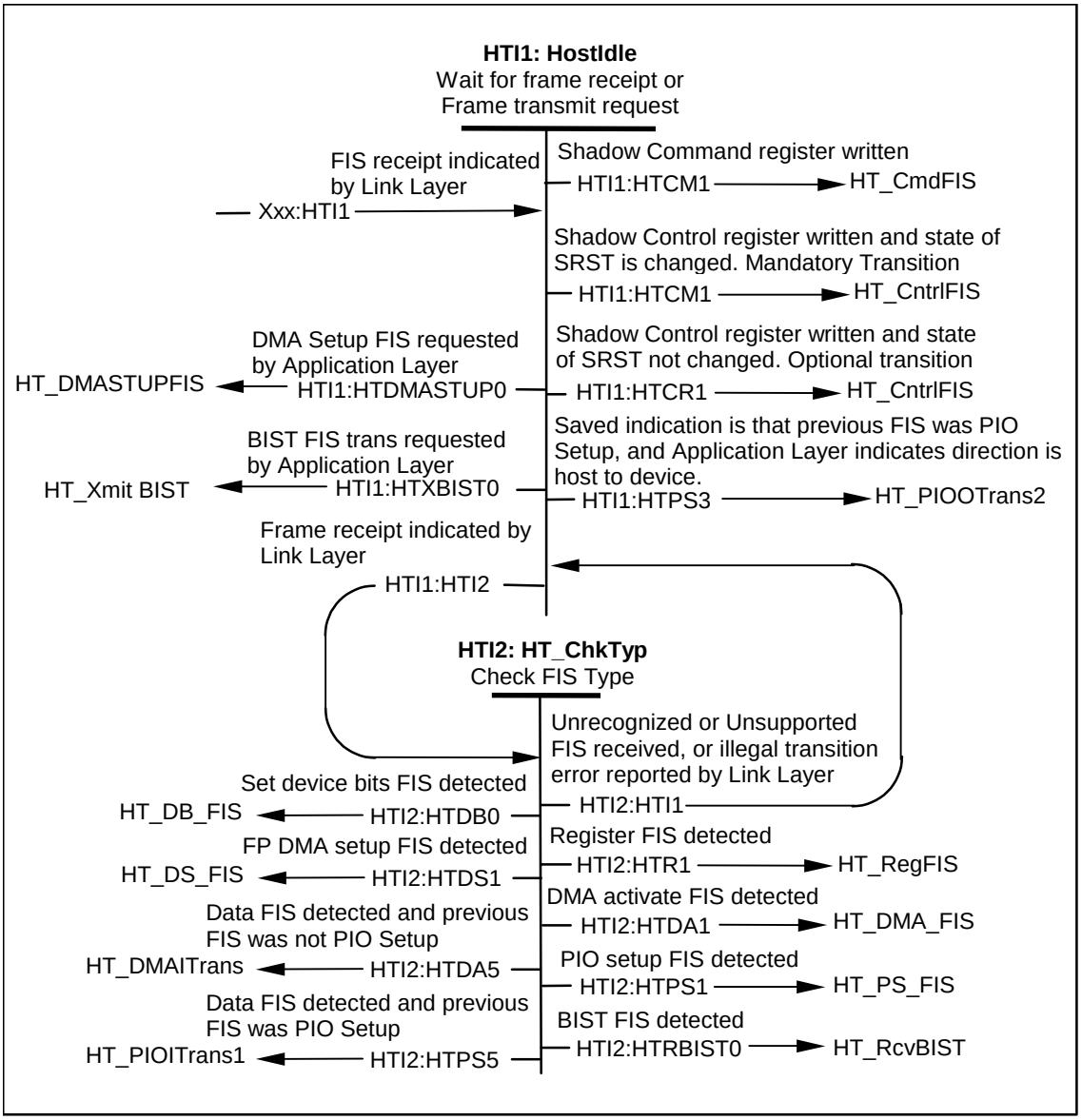


Figure 70 – Host transport idle state diagram (States HTI1-HTI2)

HTI1: HT_HostIdle state: This state is entered when a Frame Information Structure (FIS) transaction has been completed by the Transport layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer waits for the Shadow Command register to be written, the Shadow Device Control register to be written, or the Link layer to indicate that an FIS is being received.

TransitionHTI1:HTCM1: When the Shadow Command register is written, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTCM1: HT_CmdFIS state.

Transition HTI1:HTCR1: When the Shadow Control register is written, and the state of the SRST bit is changed from its previous state, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTCR1: HT_CntrlFIS

state. This transition is optional upon a write operation to the Shadow Control register if the state of the SRST bit is not changed.

Transition HTI1:HTI2: When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI2: HT_ChkTyp state.

Transition HTI1:HTDMASTUP0: When the Application layer indicates that a First Party DMA Setup FIS is to be sent, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTDMASTUP0:HT_DMASTUPFIS state.

Transition HTI1:HTXBIST1: When the host's application layer requests the transmission of a BIST request to the device the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTXBIST1:HT state.

Transition HTI1:HTPS3: When the host's application layer requests the transmission of data to the device and the saved indication shows that the previous FIS was a PIO Setup type, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTPS3:HT_PIOOTrans2 state. The Host Transport layer shall save an indication that a PIO Setup FIS was the last FIS received. The host's application layer writes data to the device by performing writes to the Data register in the Shadow Command Block.

HTI2: HT_ChkTyp state: This state is entered when the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received.

When in this state, the Transport layer checks the FIS type of the incoming FIS.

Transition HTI2:HTR1: When the incoming FIS is a register type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTR1: HT_RegFIS state.

Transition HTI2:HTDB0: When the incoming FIS is a Set Device Bits type, the transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type and make a transition to the HTDB0:HT_DB_FIS state.

Transition HTI2:HTDA1: When the incoming FIS is a DMA Activate type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTDA1: HT_DMA_FIS state.

Transition HTI2:HTPS1: When the incoming FIS is a PIO Setup type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTPS1: HT_PS_FIS state. The Host Transport layer shall save an indication that a PIO Setup FIS is the last FIS received.

Transition HTI2:HTDS1: When the incoming FIS is a First Party DMA Setup type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTDS1: HT_DS_FIS state.

Transition HTI2:HTRBIST1: When the incoming FIS is a BIST Activate type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTRBIST1:HT_RcvBIST state.

Transition HTI2:HTDA5: When the incoming FIS is a Data type, and the previous FIS was not a PIO Setup type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTDA5:HT_DMAITrans state. The Host Transport Layer saved an indication that a PIO Setup FIS was the last FIS received, so that this state can determine whether to transition to DMA data transfer or PIO data transfer.

Transition HTI2:HTPS5: When the incoming FIS is a Data type, and the previous FIS was a PIO Setup type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received a valid FIS type, and make a transition to the HTPS5:HT_PIOITrans state. The Host Transport Layer saved an indication that a PIO Setup FIS was the last FIS received, so that this state can determine whether to transition to DMA data transfer or PIO data transfer.

Transition HTI2:HTI1: When the received FIS is of an unrecognized, or unsupported type, the Transport layer shall notify the Link Layer that it has received an unrecognized FIS, and make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.2 Host Transport transmit command FIS diagram

This protocol builds an FIS that contains the host adapter Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and sends it to the device when the software driver or BIOS writes the host adapter Shadow Command register.

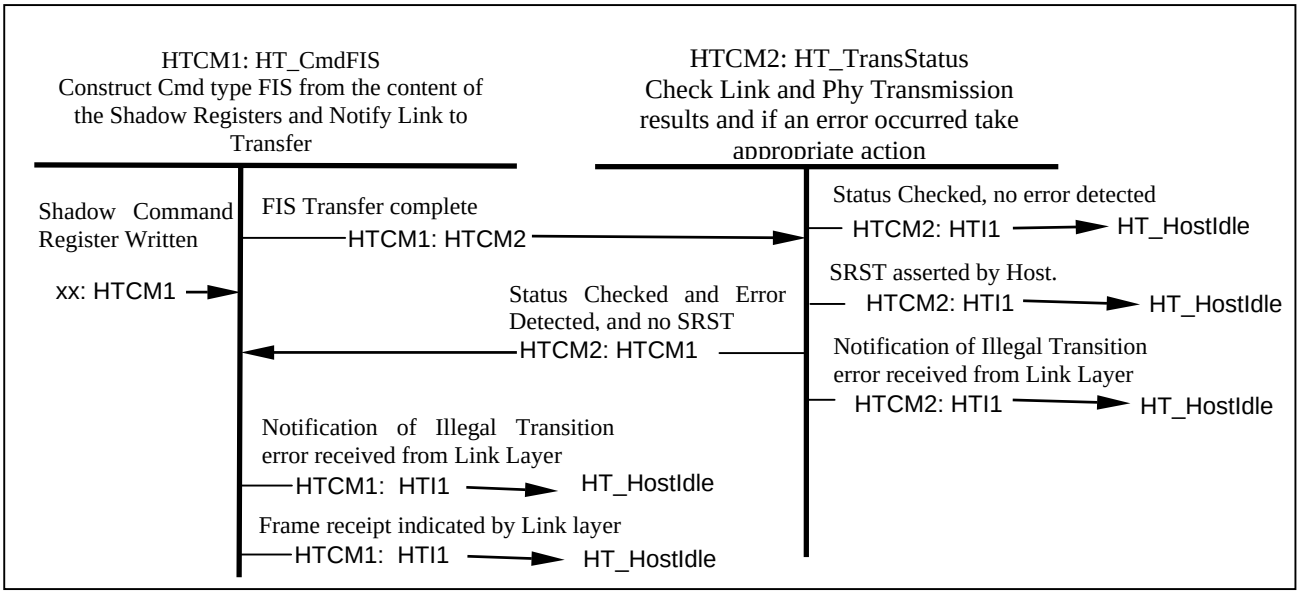


Figure 71 – Host transport transmit command FIS diagram (States HTCM1-HTCM2)

HTCM1: HT_CmdFIS state: This state is entered when the Shadow Command register is written.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a register FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition HTCM1:HTCM2: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmit is complete and make a transition to the HTCM2: HT_TransStatus state.

Transition HTCM1:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTCM1:HTI1: When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport Layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTCM2: HT_TransStatus state: This state is when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition HTCM2:HTI1: When the FIS status has been handled and no errors detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTCM2:HTCM1: When the FIS status has been handled and an error has been detected, and the host has not asserted the SRST by writing to the Device Control register, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTCM1: HT_CmdFIS state.

Transition HTCM2:HTI1: When the FIS status has been handled, an error has been detected, and the host has asserted the SRST by writing to the Device Control register, or a DEVICE RESET command has been written to an ATAPI device, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send a SYNC primitive, and transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTCM2:HTCM1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.3 Host Transport transmit control FIS diagram

This protocol builds an FIS that contains the host adapter Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block content and sends it to the device when the software driver or BIOS writes the host adapter Shadow Device Control register.

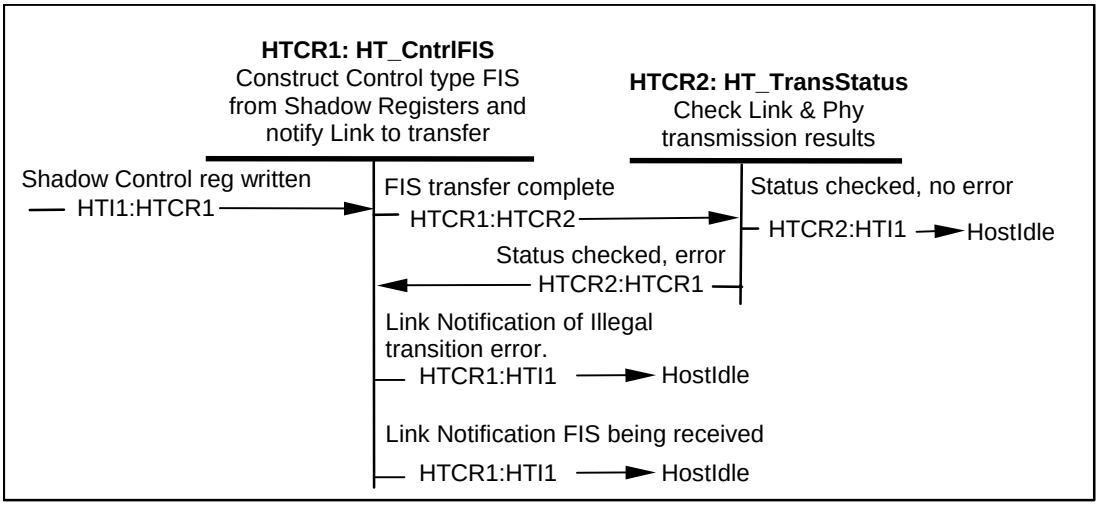


Figure 72 – Host transport transmit control FIS diagram (States HTCR1-HTCR2)

HTCR1: HT_Cntrl_FIS state: This state is entered when the Shadow Device Control register is written.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a register FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.
Transition HTCR1:HTCR2: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmit is complete and make a transition to the HTCR2: HT_TransStatus state.

Transition HTCR1:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport Layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTCR2: HT_TransStatus state: This state is when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition HTCR2:HTI1: When the FIS status has been handled and no errors have been detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTCR2:HTCR1: When the FIS status has been handled and at least one error has been detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTCR1: HT_Cntrl_FIS.

16.6.4 Host Transport transmit First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS state diagram

This protocol transmits a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS to a receiver. This FIS is a request by a sender for the recipient to program its DMA controller for a First Party DMA transfer and is followed by one or more Data FIS's that transfer data. The First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host or Host to Device FIS request includes the transfer direction indicator, the host buffer identifier, the host buffer offset, the byte count, and the interrupt flag.

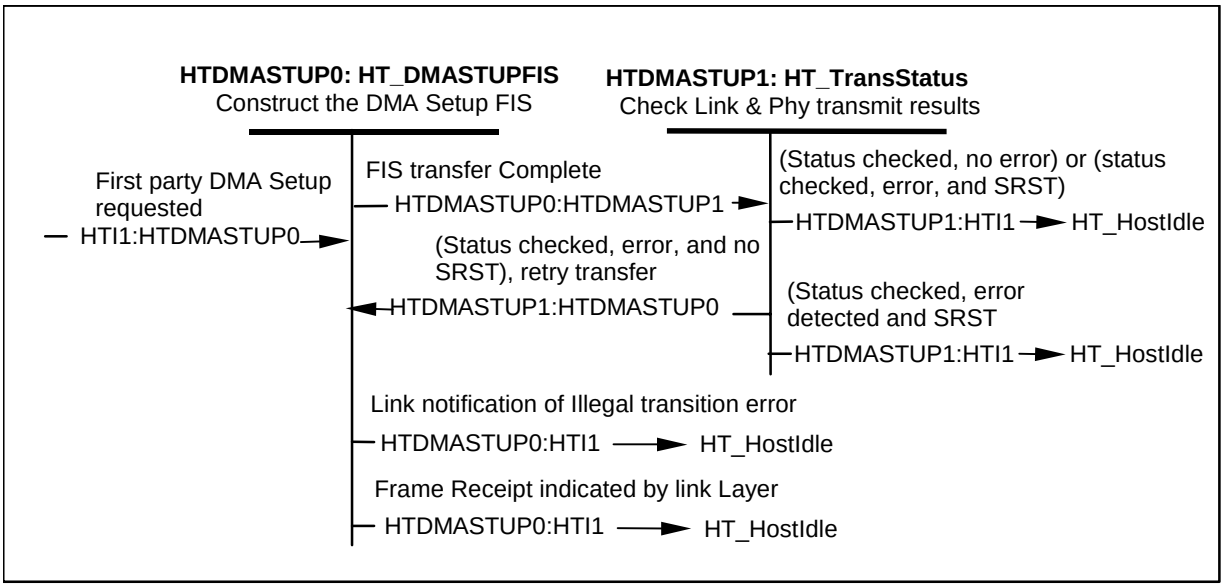


Figure 73 – Host transport transmit First Party DMA setup - device to host or host to device FIS (States HTDMASTUP0-HTDMASTUP1)

HTDMASTUP0: HT_DMASTUPFIS state: This state is entered when the Application requests the transmission of a First Party DMA Setup - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a First Party DMA Setup - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition HTDMASTUP0:HTDMASTUP1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the HTDMASTUP1: HT_TransStatus state.

Transition HTDMASTUP0:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTDMASTUP0:HTI1: When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport Layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTPDMASTUP1: HT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition HTDMASTUP1:HTI1: When the FIS status has been handled, and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.
Transition HTDMASTUP1:HTDMASTUP0: When the FIS status has been handled, an error detected and the host has not asserted the SRST by writing to the Device Control register, the Transport layer shall

report status to the Link layer, and retry this transfer by transitioning to the HTDMASTUP0: HT_DMASTUPFIS state.

Transition HTDMASTUP1:HTI1: When the host has asserted the SRST bit by writing to the Device Control register, or the DEVICE RESET command is issued, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send SYNC primitives, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.5 Host Transport transmit BIST Activate FIS

This protocol builds a BIST Activate FIS that tells the device to prepare to enter the appropriate Built-in Self-test mode. After successful transmission, the host Transport layer enters the idle state. The application layer, upon detecting successful transmission to the device shall then cause the host's Transport layer, Link layer and Physical layer to enter the appropriate mode for the transmission of the Built-in Test data defined by the FIS. The means by which the Transport, Link and Physical layers are placed into self-test mode are not defined by this standard.

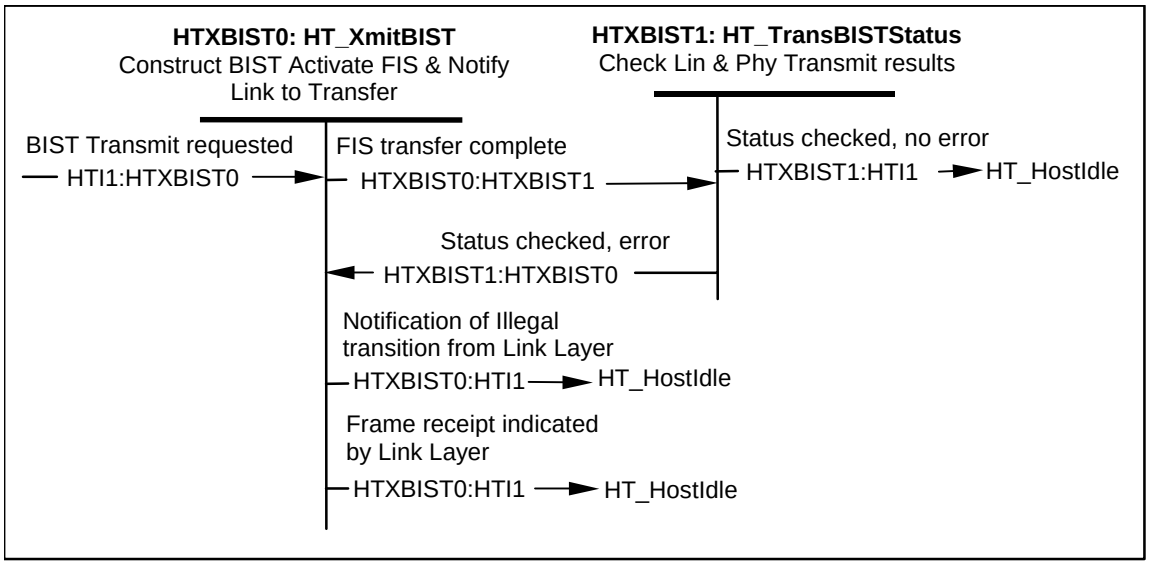


Figure 74 – Host transport transmit BIST activate FIS (States HTXBIST0-HTXBIST1)

HTXBIST0: HT_XmitBIST state: This state is entered to send a BIST FIS to the device.

Transition HTXBIST0:HTXBIST1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the HTXBIST1:HT_TransBISTStatus state.

Transition HTXBIST0:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTXBIST0:HTI1: When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport Layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTXBIST1: HT_TransBISTStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

Transition HTXBIST1:HTI1: When the FIS transmission is completed and no errors have been detected the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTXBIST1:HTXBIST0: When the FIS transmission is completed and at least one error is detected the Transport layer shall transition to the HTXBIST0: HT_XmitBIST state.

16.6.6 Host Transport decompose Register FIS diagram

This protocol receives an FIS from the device containing new Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block content and places that content into the Shadow Command and Shadow Control registers.

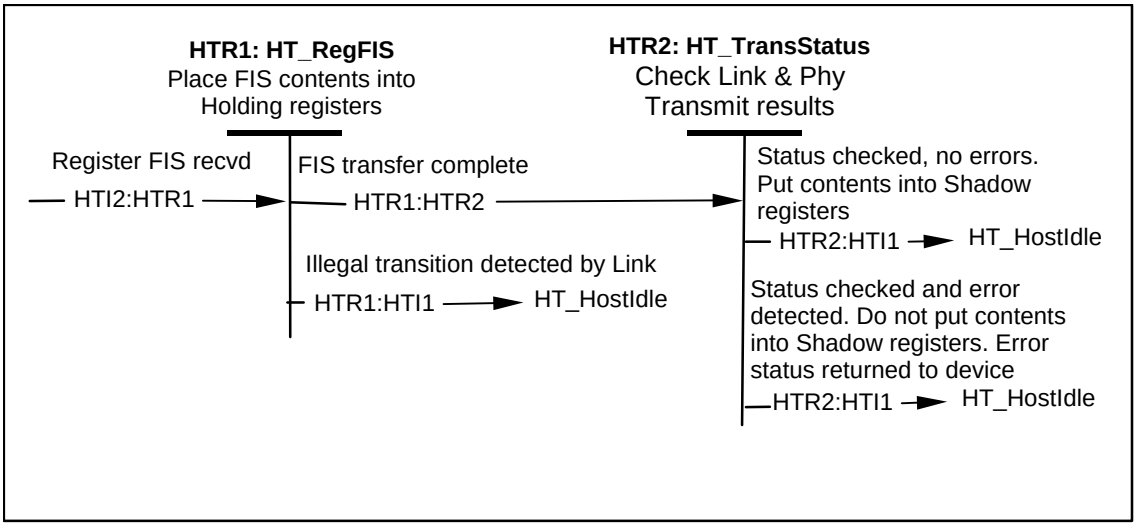


Figure 75 - Host transport decompose register FIS diagram (States HTR1- HTR2)

HTR1: HT_RegFIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and that the FIS is of the register type.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall decompose the register FIS and place the contents into the appropriate holding registers.

Transition HTR1:HTR2: When the entire FIS has been placed into the holding registers, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTR2: HT_TRANS_STATUS state.

Transition HTR1:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

HTR2: HT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been placed into the holding registers.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition HTR2:HTI1: When the FIS status has been handled and no errors detected, the contents of the holding registers shall be placed in the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and if the interrupt bit is set, the Transport layer shall set the Interrupt Pending flag. The Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state. When the FIS status has been handled and at least one error detected, the contents of the holding registers shall not be transferred to the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, error status shall be returned to the device, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.7 Host Transport decompose a Set Device Bits FIS state diagram

This protocol receives an FIS from the device containing new Shadow Error and Shadow Status register content and places that content into the Shadow Error and Shadow Status registers.

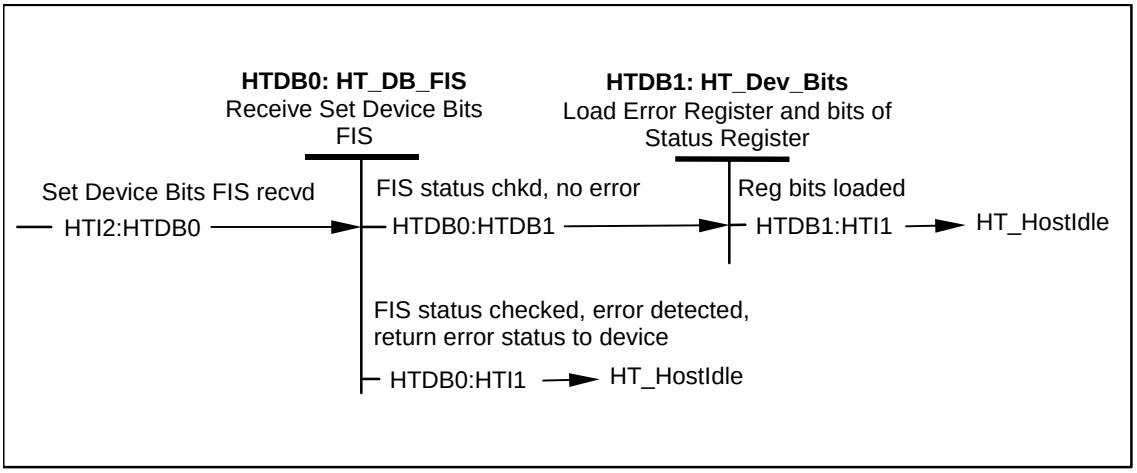


Figure 76 – Host transport decompose Set Device Bits FIS state diagram (States HTDB0-HTDB1)

HTDB0:HT_DB_FIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS being received and that the FIS is a Set Device Bits type.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the FIS reception to complete and for Link and Phy ending status to be posted.

Transition HTDB0:HTDB1: When the FIS reception is complete with no errors detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDB1:HT_Dev_Bits state.

Transition HTDB0:HTI1: When the FIS reception is complete with errors detected, the Transport layer shall return error status to the device and transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTDB1:HT_Dev_Bits state: This state is entered when a Set Device Bits FIS has been received with no errors.

When in this state, the data in the Error field of the received FIS shall be loaded into the host adapter's Shadow Error register. The data in the Status-Hi field of the received FIS shall be loaded into bits 6, 5, and 4 of the Shadow Status register. The data in the Status-Lo field of the received FIS shall be loaded into bits 2, 1, and 0 of the Shadow Status register. Bit 7, BSY, and bit 3, DRQ, in the Shadow Status register shall not be changed. If the I bit in the FIS is set to one and if both the BSY bit and the DRQ bit in the Shadow Status register are cleared to zero, then the host adapter shall enter an Interrupt Pending state.

Transition HTDB1:HTI1: The Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.8 Host Transport decompose a DMA Activate FIS diagram and DMA Data Transfer

This protocol receives an FIS that requests a legacy DMA data transfer. If the data transfer is from the host to the device the DMA Activate FIS causes the host adapter to transmit the data in a subsequent Data FIS If the data transfer is from the device to the host, the host receives the subsequent data FIS.

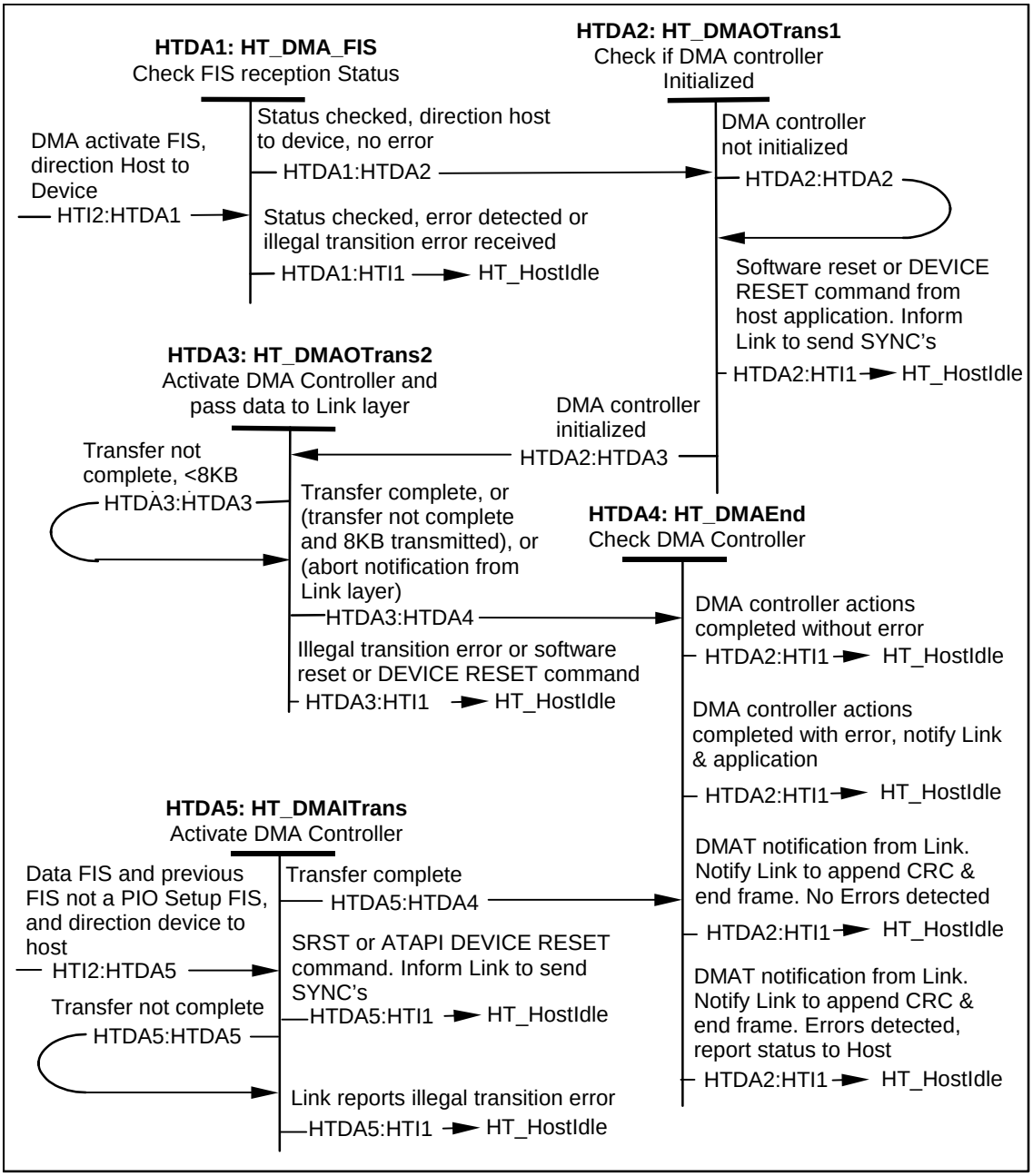


Figure 77 – Host transport decompose DMA activate FIS diagram (States HTDA1-HTDA5)

HTDA1: HT_DMA_FIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and the Transport layer has determined that a DMA Activate FIS is being received.

Transition HTDA1:HTDA2: The Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTDA2: HT_DMAOTrans1 state. This transition occurs if no error is detected.

Transition HTDA1:HTI1: When an error is detected, status is conveyed to the Link layer and to the application layer. The Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

HTDA2: HT_DMAOTrans1 state: This state is entered when the FIS Reception has been checked and no errors are detected.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall determine if the DMA controller has been initialized.

Transition HTDA2:HTDA2: When the DMA controller has not yet been initialized, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA2: HT_DMAOTrans1 state.

Transition HTDA2:HTDA3: When the DMA controller has been initialized, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA3: HT_DMAOTrans2 state.

Transition HTDA2:HTI1: When the host has asserted the SRST bit by writing to the Device Control register, or the DEVICE RESET command is written to the Command register, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send SYNC primitives, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTDA3: HT_DMAOTrans2 state: This state is entered when the DMA controller has been initialized.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall activate the DMA controller and pass data to the Link layer.

Transition HTDA3:HTDA3: When the transfer is not complete and less than 8KB of payload data has been transmitted, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA3: HT_DMAOTrans2 state.

Transition HTDA3:HTDA4: When the transfer is not complete but 8KB of payload data has been transmitted, the Link layer shall be notified to close the current frame and the Transport layer shall deactivate the DMA engine and transition to the HTDA4: HT_DMAEnd state.

When notified by the Link layer that the DMAT primitive was received, the Transport layer may transition to the HTDA4: HT_DMAEnd state. Use of DMAT is not recommended, see 15.4.6.

When the requested DMA transfer is complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA4: HT_DMAEnd state.

Transition HTDA3:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

When the host has asserted the SRST bit by writing to the Device Control register, or the DEVICE RESET command is written to the Command register, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send SYNC primitives, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTDA4: HT_DMAEnd state: This state is entered when the DMA data transfer is complete.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall ensure that the activities of the DMA controller have completed.

Transition HTDA4:HTI1: When the DMA controller has completed its activities, whether it has exhausted its transfer count or has been deactivated as a result of reaching the 8KB data payload limit, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state. This transition occurs if no error is detected.

When an error is detected, status shall be reported to the Link and application layers. The Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

When notified by the Link layer that a DMAT primitive was received, the transfer may be truncated, and the Link layer notified to append CRC and end the frame. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6)

When it is determined that the transfer is completed with an error, the Transport layer shall report status to the host and make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

When it is determined that the transfer is completed with no error, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTDA5: HT_DMAITrans state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has determined that the DMA transfer being activated is from device to host.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall activate the DMA controller if the DMA controller is initialized. A data frame will be received from the device and a received data DWORD shall be placed in the data FIFO.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait until the Link layer has begun to receive the DMA data frame and data is available to be read by the host.

Transition HTDA5:HTDA5: If the transfer is not complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA5: HT_DMAITrans state. This includes the condition where the host DMA engine has not yet been programmed and the transfer is therefore held up until the DMA engine is prepared to transfer the received data to the destination memory locations.

Transition HTDA5:HTI1: When the SRST bit is asserted by the host writing the Device Control register, or a DEVICE RESET command has been written to an ATAPI device, the Link layer shall be informed to send a SYNC primitive, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_Idle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTDA5:HTDA4: When the requested DMA transfer is complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTDA4: HT_DMAEnd state.

16.6.9 Host Transport decompose a PIO Setup FIS state diagram

This protocol receives a PIO Setup FIS that requests a PIO data transfer. If the direction is from host to device, the Transport layer transmits a Data FIS to the device containing the PIO data. If the direction of transfer is from device to host, the Transport layer receives a Data FIS from the device. There shall be one data FIS for each corresponding PIO Setup FIS.

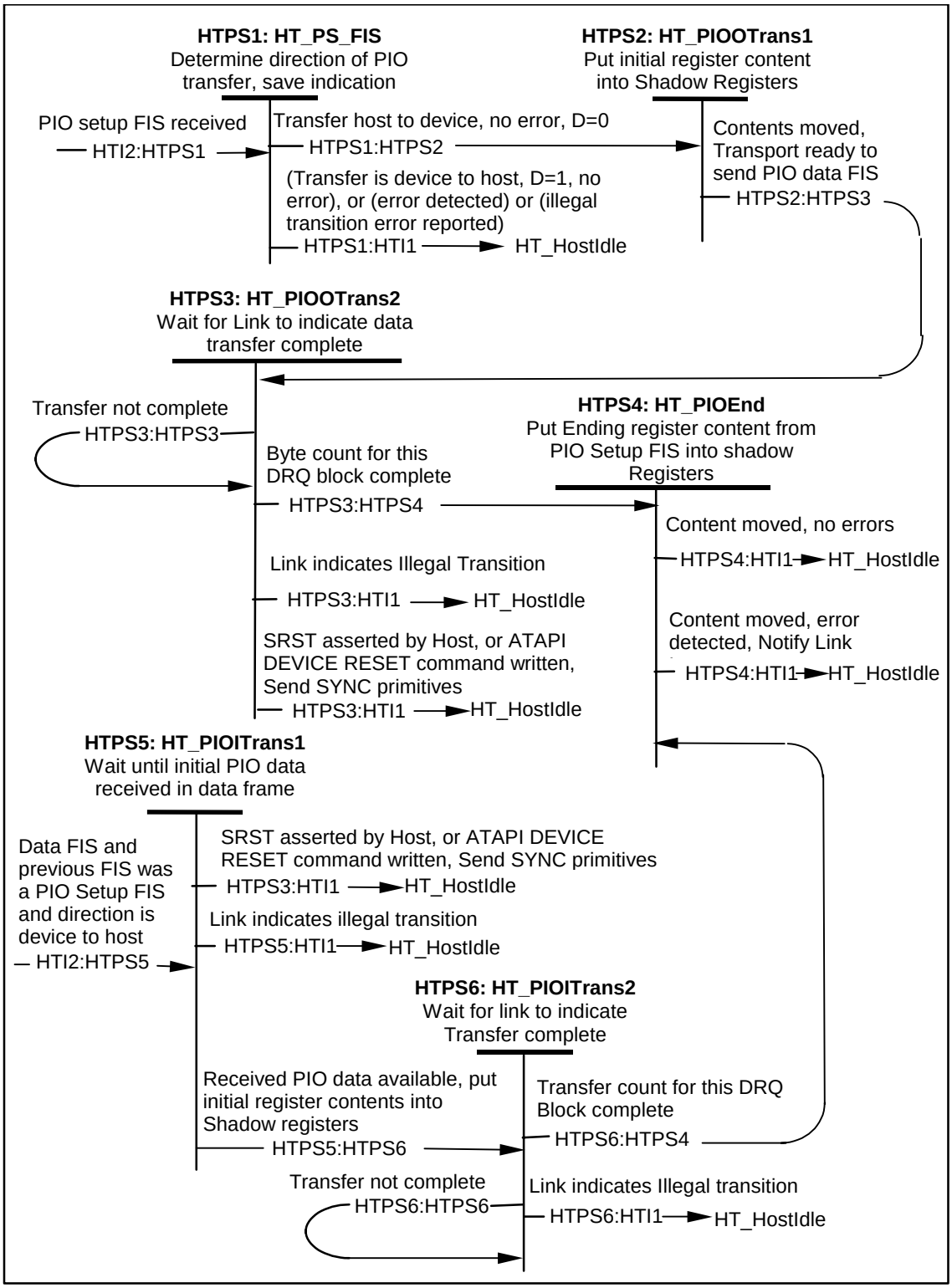


Figure 78 – Host transport decompose PIO setup FIS state diagram (States HTPS1-HTPS6)

HTPS1: HT_PS_FIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and that the Transport layer has determined a PIO Setup FIS is being received.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall determine the direction of the requested PIO transfer and indicate that the last FIS sent was a PIO Setup.

Transition HTPS1:HTPS2: When the direction of transfer requested is from host to device (D=0), the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTPS2: HT_PIOOTrans1 state. This transition occurs if no error is detected.

Transition HTPS1:HTI1: When the direction of transfer requested is from device to host (D=1), the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state. This transition occurs if no error is detected.

When an error is detected, status shall be reported to the Link layer. The Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTPS2: HT_PIOOTrans1 state: This state is entered when the direction of the requested PIO data transfer is from host to device.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall place the FIS initial register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, the FIS byte count, and set the Interrupt Pending flag if the FIS indicates to do so.

Transition HTPS2:HTPS3: When the FIS initial register content has been placed into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, Interrupt Pending set if requested, and the Transport layer is ready to begin transmitting the requested PIO Data FIS, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTPS3: HT_PIOOTrans2 state.

HTPS3: HT_PIOOTrans2 state: This state is entered when PIO data is available in the PIO FIFO to be passed the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link layer to indicate that all data has been transferred.

NOTE – Since the software driver or BIOS sees DRQ set and BSY cleared, it continues writing the Data register filling the PIO FIFO.

Transition HTPS3:HTPS3: If the transfer is not complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTPS3: HT_PIOOTrans2 state.

Transition HTPS3:HTPS4: When the byte count for this DRQ data block is reached, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTPS4: HT_PIOEnd state.

Transition HTPS3:HTI1: If the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

If the host has asserted the SRST bit by writing to the Device Control register, or the DEVICE RESET command is written to the Command register, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send SYNC primitives, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTPS4: HT_PIOEnd state: This state is entered when the byte count for the DRQ data block is reached (See 16.5.7.3)

When in this state, the Transport layer shall place the E_Status field from the previously received PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status Register.

Transition HTPS4:HTI1: When the E_Status field for the previously received PIO Setup FIS has been placed into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and there were no errors detected with the transfer, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.

When the E_Status field from the previously received PIO Setup FIS has been placed into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state. For data in transfers, the Transport layer shall notify the Link layer of any error encountered during the transfer, and the error shall be reflected in the end of frame handshake. If the transfer was not the final transfer for the PIO data in command, the device shall reflect the error status by transmitting an appropriate Register FIS to the host. If the transfer was the final transfer for the associated PIO data in command, the error condition is not detectable. For data out transfers, errors detected by the device shall be reflected in the end of frame handshake. The device shall reflect the error status by transmitting an appropriate Register FIS to the host.

HTPS5: HT_PIOITrans1 state: This state is entered when the direction of the PIO data transfer is device to host and the previous FIS was a PIO Setup FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait until the Link layer has begun to receive the PIO data frame and data is available to be read by the host.

Transition HTPS5:HTPS6: When data is available for the host to read in the Shadow Data register, the Transport layer shall place the initial register content received in the PIO Setup frame into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and transition to the HTPS6: HT_PIOITrans2 state.

Transition HTPS5:HTI1: When the host has asserted the SRST bit by writing to the Device Control register, or the DEVICE RESET command is issued, the Transport layer shall inform the Link layer to send SYNC primitives, and the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state.
When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTPS6: HT_PIOITrans2 state: This state is entered when PIO data is available in the PIO FIFO to be read by the host and the initial Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block content has been set.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link layer to indicate that the data transfer is complete

Transition HTPS6:HTPS6: When the transfer is not complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTPS6: HT_PIOITrans2 state.

Transition HTPS6:HTPS4: When the byte count for this DRQ data block is reached, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTPS4: HT_PIOEnd state.

Transition HTPS6:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.10 Host Transport decompose a First Party DMA Setup FIS state diagram

This protocol receives an FIS that sets up the host adapter DMA controller to allow the transfer of a First Party DMA Data FIS to the host. The DMA Activate FIS will be transmitted as a separate DMA Activate FIS protocol following the completion of this protocol.

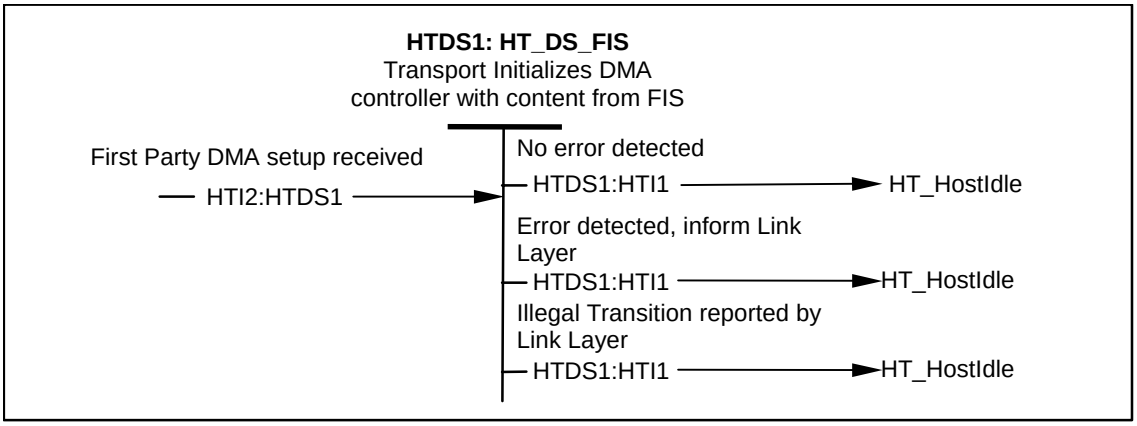


Figure 79 – Host transport decompose First Party DMA Setup FIS state diagram (State HTDS1)

HTDS1: HT_DR_FIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and that the Transport layer has determined the FIS is of the First Party DMA in request type.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall initialize the DMA controller with content from the FIS.

Transition HTDS1:HTI1: When the DMA controller has been initialized, the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1: HT_HostIdle state. This transition is made if no error is detected.

Transition HTDS1:HTI1: If an error is detected, status shall be reported to the Link layer. The Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HI_HostIdle state.

Transition HTDS1:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

16.6.11 Host transport decompose a BIST Activate FIS state diagram

This protocol receives an FIS that instructs the host to enter one of several Built-in Self-test modes that cause the host to retransmit the data it receives. If the mode is supported the Host's application layer will place both the transmit and receive portions of the Transport, Link and/or Physical layers into appropriate state to perform the loopback operation.

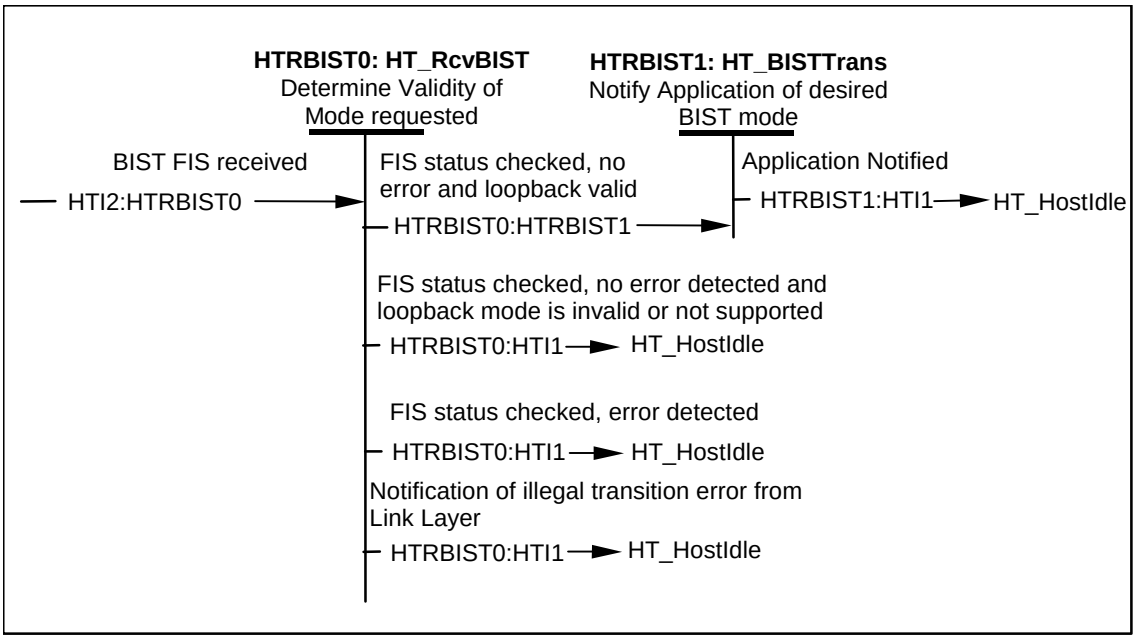


Figure 80 – Host transport decompose BIST activate FIS state diagram (State HTRBIST0-HTRBIST1)

HTRBIST0: HT_RcvBIST state: This state is entered when the link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and the Transport layer has determined that a BIST Activate FIS is being received.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall determine the validity of the loopback request.

Transition HTRBIST0:HTRBIST1: If no reception error is detected and the FIS contents indicate a form of loopback request that is supported by the host the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTRBIST2: HT_BISTTrans1 state.

Transition HTRBIST0:HTI1: If no reception error is detected and the FIS contents indicate a form of loopback request that is not supported by the host the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTRBIST0:HTI1: If a reception error is indicated the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

Transition HTRBIST0:HTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the HTI1:HT_HostIdle state.

HTRBIST1: HT_BISTTrans1 state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has determined that a valid BIST Activate FIS has been received.

Having received a valid FIS, the Transport layer informs the host's application layer that it should place the Transport, Link and Physical layers into the appropriate modes to loop the received data back to the transmitter. The method by which this is performed is vendor specific.

Transition HTRBIST1:HTI1: When the host's application layer has been notified the Transport layer shall transition to the HTI1:HostIdle state.

16.7 Device transport states

16.7.1 Device transport idle state diagram

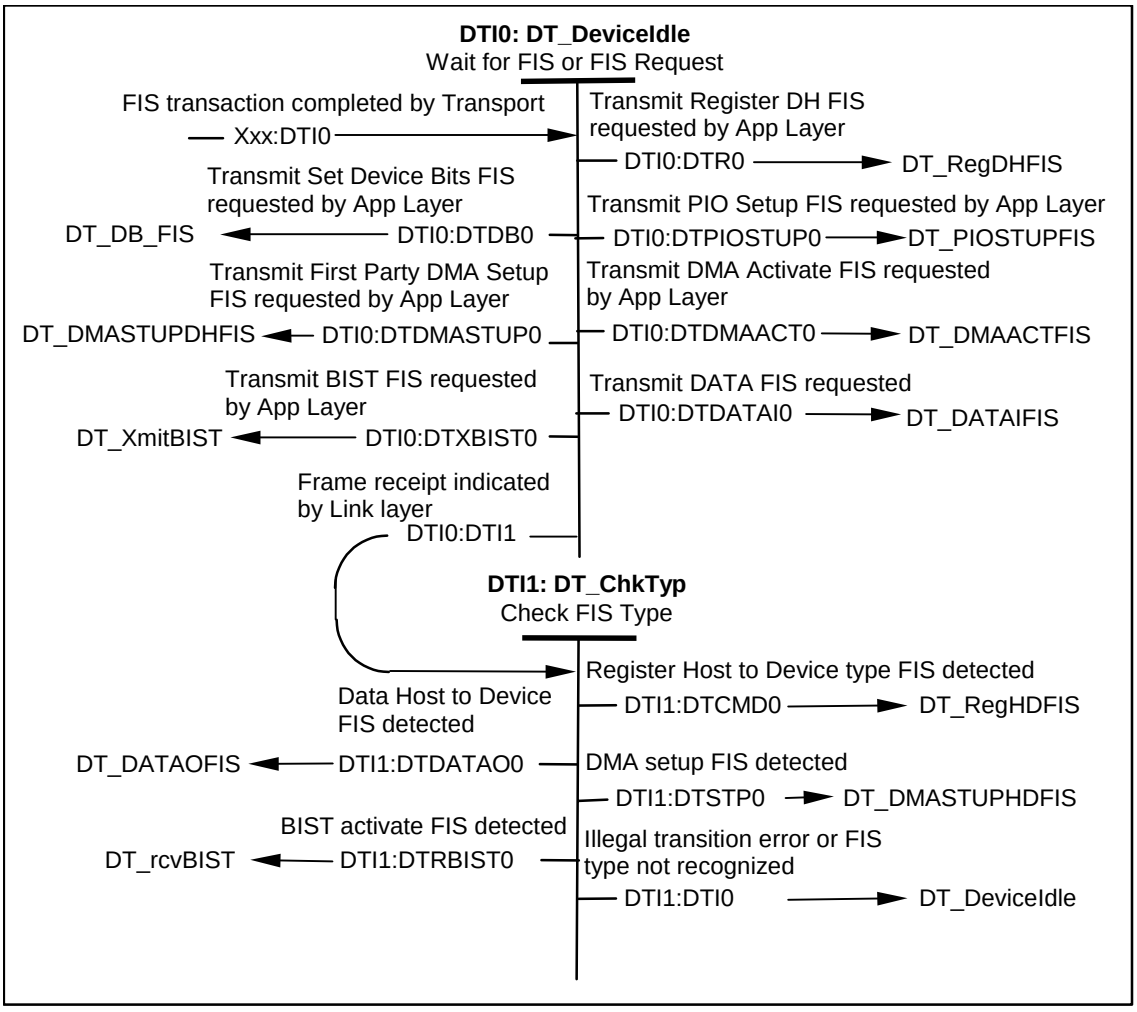


Figure 81 – Device transport idle state diagram (States DTI0-DTI1)

DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state: This state is entered when a Frame Information Structure (FIS) transaction has been completed by the Transport layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer waits for the device's application layer to indicate that an FIS is to be transmitted or the Link layer to indicate that an FIS is being received.

Transition DTI0:DTR0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a register FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTR0: DT_RegDHFIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTDB0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a Set Device Bits FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDB0:DT_DB_FIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTPIOSTUP0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a PIO Setup FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTPIOSTUP0: DT_PIOSTUPFIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTDMAACT0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a DMA Activate FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDMAACT0: DT_DMAACTFIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTDMASTUP0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a First Party DMA Setup FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDMASTUP0: DT_DMASTUPDHFIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTDATAI0: When the device's Application layer indicates that a Data FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDATAI0: DT_DATAIFIS state.

Transition DTI0:DTXBIST1: When the device's Application layer indicates that a BIST Activate FIS is to be transmitted, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTXBIST1:DT XmitBIST state.

Transition DTI0:DTI1: When the Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI1: DT_ChkTyp state.

DTI1: DT_ChkTyp state: This state is entered when the Transport layer is idle and Link layer indicates that an FIS is being received.

When in this state, the Transport layer checks the FIS type of the incoming FIS.

Transition DTI1:DTCMD0: When the incoming FIS is a Register - Host to Device FIS type, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTCMD0: DT_RegHDFIS state.

Transition DTI1:DTDATAO0: When the incoming FIS is a Data - Host to Device FIS type, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDATAO0: DT_DATAOFIS state.

Transition DTI1:DTSTP0: When the incoming FIS is a First Party DMA Setup FIS type, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTSTP0: DT_ DMASTUPHDFIS state.

Transition DTI1:DTRBIST1: When the incoming FIS is a BIST Activate FIS type, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTRBIST1:DT Rcv BIST state.

Transition DTI1:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition or the FIS type is not recognized, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

16.7.2 Device Transport send Register - Device to Host state diagram

This protocol builds a Register - Device to Host FIS that contains the register content and sends it to the host when the device's Application layer requests the transmission.

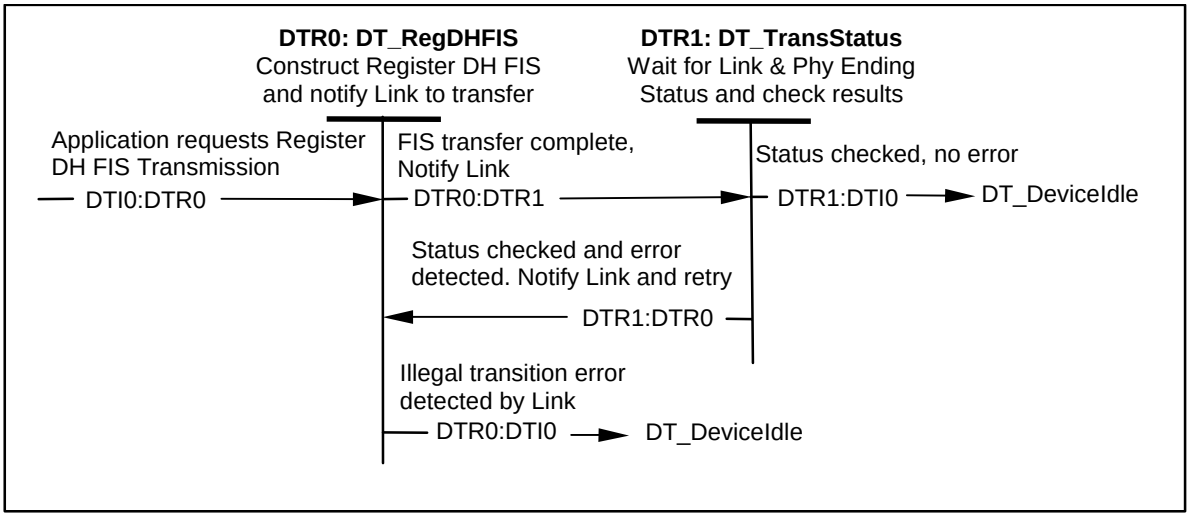


Figure 82 – Device transport send register - Device to host state diagram (DTR0-DTR1)

DTR0: DT_RegDHFIS state: This state is entered the Application requests the transmission of a Register - Device to Host FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a Register - Device to Host FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition DTR0:DTR1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTR1: DT_TransStatus state.

Transition DTR0:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTR1: DT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTR1:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled, and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTR1:DTR0: When the FIS status has been handled, and an error detected, the Transport layer shall report status to the Link layer, and retry this transfer by transitioning to the DTR0: DT_RegDHFIS state.

16.7.3 Device Transport send Set Device Bits FIS state diagram

This protocol sends a Set Device Bits FIS to the host adapter when the device's Application layer requests the transmission.

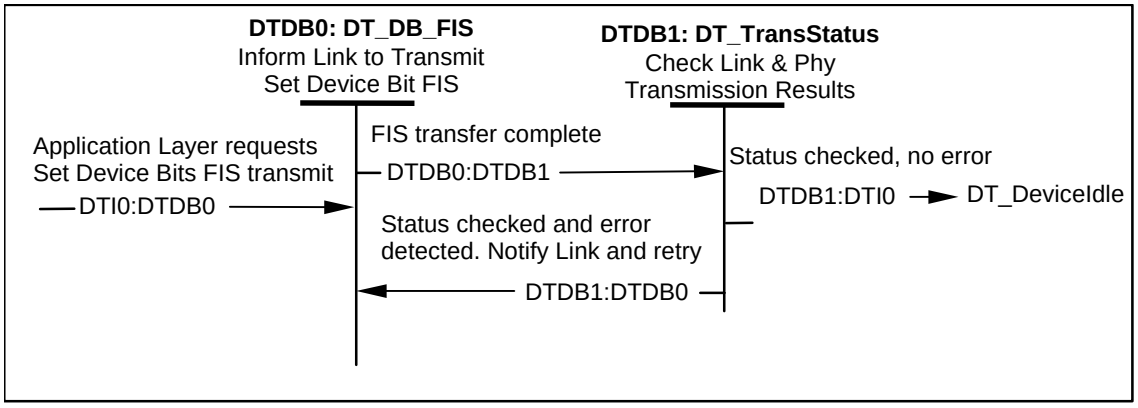


Figure 83 – Device transport send set device bits FIS state diagram (DTDB0-DTDB1)

DTDB0:DT_DB_FIS state: This state is entered when the device's Application layer requests the transmission of a Set Device Bits FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a Set Device Bits FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition DTDB0:DTDB1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTDB1:DT_TransStatus state.

DTDB1:DT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTDB1:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0:DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTDB1:DTDB0: When the FIS status has been handled and an error detected, the Transport layer shall report status to the Link layer and retry this transfer by transitioning to the DTDB0:DT_DB_FIS state.

16.7.4 Device Transport transmit PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS state diagram

This protocol transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host. Following this PIO Setup frame, a single data frame containing PIO data shall be transmitted or received depending on the state of the D bit in the PIO Setup frame.

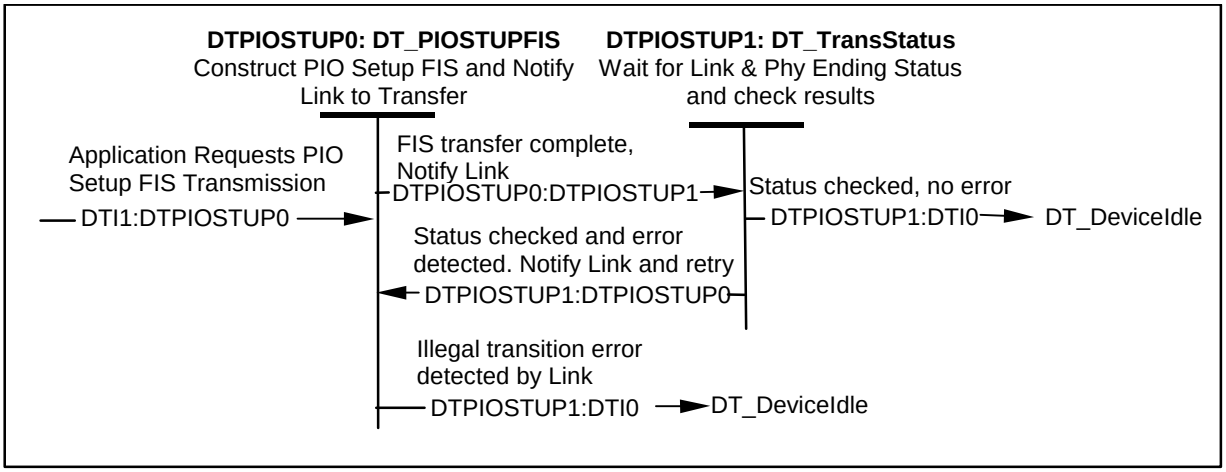


Figure 84 – Device transport transmit PIO setup - device to host FIS state diagram (States DTPIOSTUP0-DTPIOSTUP1)

DTPIOSTUP0: DT_PIOSTUPFIS state: This state is entered the device's Application layer requests the transmission of a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition DTPIOSTUP0:DTPIOSTUP1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTPIOSTUP1: DT_TransStatus state.

Transition DTPIOSTUP0:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTPIOSTUP1: DT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTPIOSTUP1:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTPIOSTUP1:2: When the FIS status has been handled and an error detected, the Transport layer shall report status to the Link layer and retry this transfer by transitioning to the DTPIOSTUP0: DT_PIOSTUPFIS state.

16.7.5 Device Transport transmit DMA Activate FIS state diagram

This protocol transmits a DMA Activate FIS to the host adapter. Following this DMA Activate frame, a data frame of DMA data shall be sent from the host to the device.

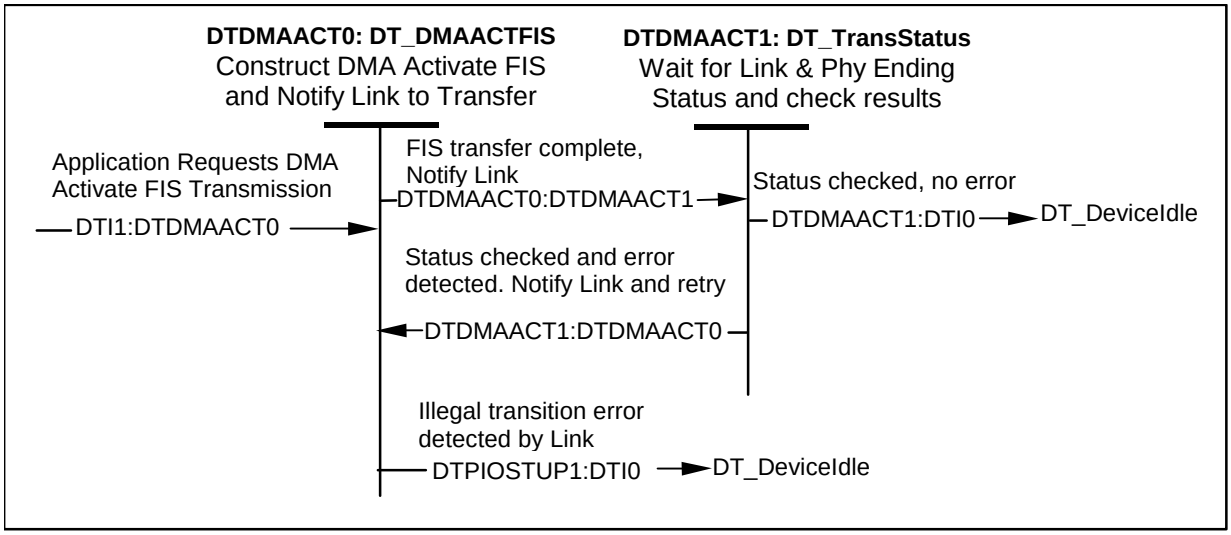


Figure 85 – Device transport transmit DMA activate FIS state diagram (States DTDMAACT0-DTDMAACT1)

DTDMAACT0: DT_DMAACTFIS state: This state is entered the Application requests the transmission of a DMA Activate FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a DMA Activate FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition DTDMAACT0:DTDMAACT11: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTDMAACT1: DT_TransStatus state.

Transition DTDMAACT0:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTDMAACT1: DT_TransStatus state: This state is entered is when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTDMAACT1:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTDMAACT1:DTDMAACT0: When the FIS status has been handled and an error detected, the Transport layer shall report status to the Link layer and retry this transfer by transitioning to the DTDMAACT0: DT_DMAACTFIS state.

16.7.6 Device Transport transmit First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS state diagram

This protocol transmits a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host adapter. This FIS is a request by the device for the host adapter to program the DMA controller for a First Party DMA transfer and is followed by one or more Data FIS's that transfer the data to or from the host adapter depending on the direction of the transfer. The First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host request includes the transfer direction indicator, the host buffer identifier, the host buffer offset, the byte count, and the interrupt flag.

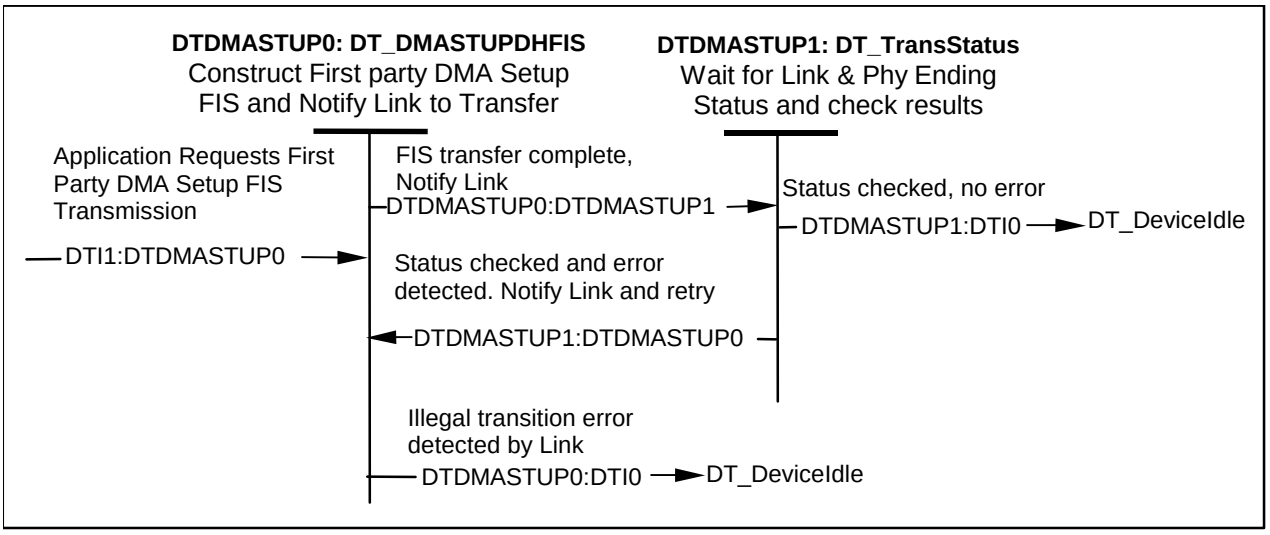


Figure 86 – Device transport transmit First Party DMA setup - device to host state diagram (States DTDMASTUP0-DTDMASTUP1)

DTDMASTUP0: DT_DMASTUPDHFIS state: This state is entered when the Application requests the transmission of a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall construct a First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host FIS, notify the Link layer that the FIS is to be transmitted, and pass the FIS to the Link layer.

Transition DTDMASTUP0:DTDMASTUP1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTDMASTUP1: DT_TransStatus state.

Transition DTIDMASTUP0:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTPDMASTUP1: DT_TransStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTDMASTUP1:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTDMASTUP1:DTDMASTUP0: When the FIS status has been handled and an error detected, the Transport layer shall report status to the Link layer and retry this transfer by transitioning to the DTDMASTUP0: DT_DMASTUPFIS state.

16.7.7 Device Transport transmit Data - Device to Host FIS diagram

This protocol builds a Data - Device to Host FIS.

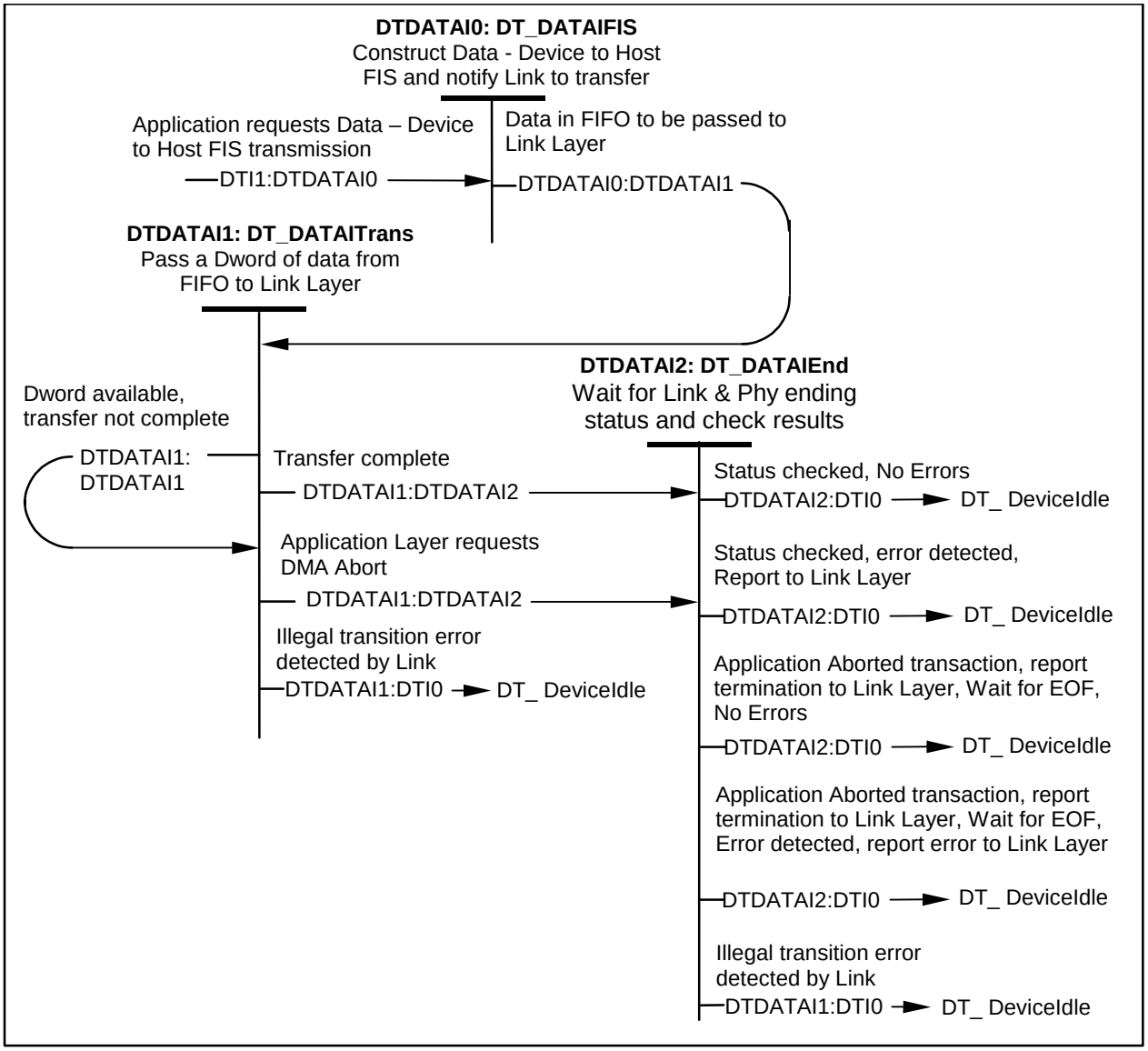


Figure 87 – Device transport transmit data - device to host FIS diagram (State DTDATAI0-DTDATAI2)

DTDATAI0: DT_DATAFIS state: This state is entered when the device's Application layer has requested the transmission of a Data - Device to Host FIS.

When in this state the Transport layer shall pass DMA data to the Link layer.

Transition DTDATAI0:DTDATAI1: When ready and there is data to be passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAI1: DT_DATAITrans state.

DTDATAI1: DT_DATAITrans state: This state is entered when data is available to be passed the Link layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall pass a DWORD of data to the Link layer.

Transition DTDATAI1:DTDATAI1: If the transfer is not complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAI1: DT_DATAITrans state.

Transition DTDATAI1:DTDATAI2: When the transfer is complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAI2: DT_DATAIEnd state.

When the device's Application layer requests that a DMA operation is to be aborted, the Transport Layer shall transition to the DTDATAI2:DT_DATAIEnd state.

Transition DTDATAI1:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTDATAI2: DT_DATAIEnd state: This state is entered when the data transfer is complete or an abort has been requested by the application layer.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link and Phy ending status for the FIS and take appropriate error handling action if required.

Transition DTDATAI2:DTI0: When the FIS status has been handled and no error detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI1: DT_DeviceIdle state.

When the FIS status has been handled and an error detected, status shall be reported to the Link layer. The Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

When the device's application layer requests the termination of a DMA data in transaction, it will report the abort condition to the Link, terminate the FIS normally with good CRC, and if no error is detected, make a transition to the DTI0:DT_DeviceIdle state. This transition is optional in response to a DMAT reception. Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6.

When the device's application layer requests the termination of a DMA data in transaction, it will report the abort condition to the Link, terminate the FIS normally with good CRCand if an error is detected, report the error to the Link layer, and make a transition to the DTI0:DT_DeviceIdle state. This transition is optional in response to a DMAT reception. Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

16.7.8 Device Transport transmit BIST Activate FIS diagram

This protocol builds a BIST Activate FIS that tells the host to prepare to enter the appropriate Built-in Self Test mode. After successful transmission, the device Transport layer enters the idle state. The application layer, upon detecting successful transmission to the host shall then cause the device's Transport layer, Link layer and Physical layer to enter the appropriate mode for the transmission of the Built-in Test data defined by the FIS. The means by which the Transport, Link and Physical layers are placed into self-test mode are not defined by this standard.

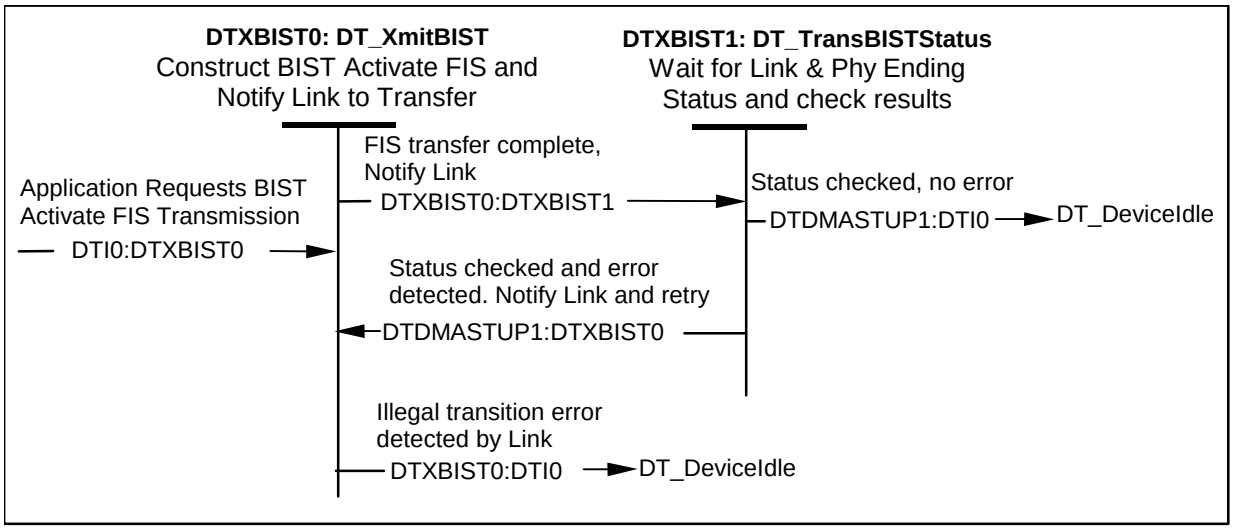


Figure 88 – Device transport transmit BIST activate FIS diagram (States DTXBIST0-DTXBIST1)

DTXBIST0: DT_XmitBIST state: This state is entered to send a BIST FIS to the host.

Transition DTXBIST0:DTXBIST1: When the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer, the Transport layer shall indicate to the Link layer that the FIS transmission is complete and make a transition to the DTXBIST1:DT_TransBISTSTatus state.

Transition DTXBIST1:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTXBIST1: DT_TransBISTStatus state: This state is entered when the entire FIS has been passed to the Link layer.

Transition DTXBIST1:DTI0: When the FIS transmission is completed and no errors have been detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTXBIST1:DTXBIST0: When the FIS transmission is completed and at least one error is detected, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTXBIST0: DT_XmitBIST state.

16.7.9 Device Transport decompose Register - Host to Device state diagram

This protocol receives a Register - Host to Device FIS, places received register content into the device registers, and notifies the device's Application layer of the FIS receipt.

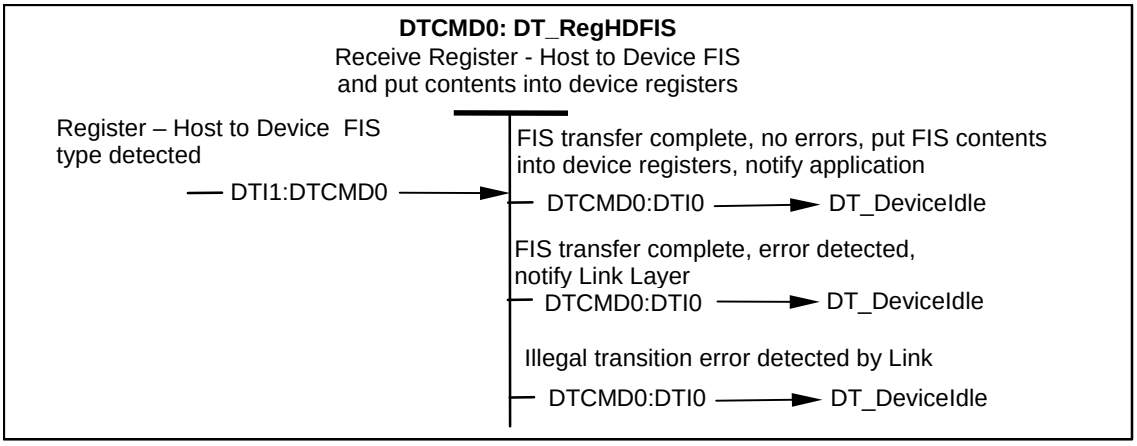


Figure 89 – Device transport decompose register - host to device state diagram (State DTCMD0)

DTCMD0: DT_RegHDFIS state: This state is entered when the receipt of a DT_RegHDFISFIS is recognized.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall receive the FIS and place the contents of the FIS into the device registers when it is determined that the FIS was received without error.

Transition DTCMD0:DTI0: When the entire FIS has been received from the Link layer without error, the Transport layer shall indicate to the device's Application layer that a command FIS was received and make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTCMD0:DTI0: When the entire FIS has been received from the Link layer and an error has been detected, status shall be sent to the Link layer. The Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0:DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTCMD0:DTI0: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

16.7.10 Device Transport decompose Data (Host to Device) FIS state diagram

This protocol receives a Data - Host to Device FIS.

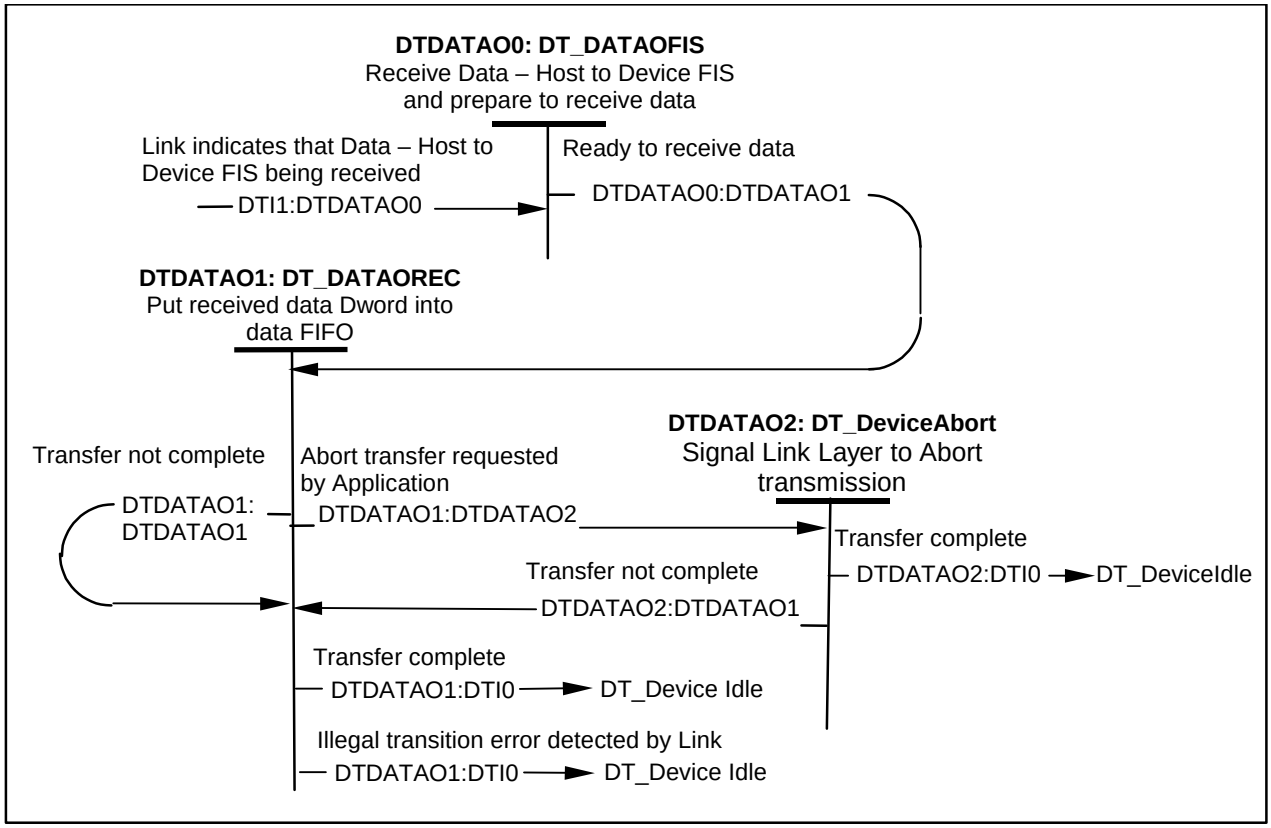


Figure 90 – Device transport decompose data (host to device) FIS state diagram (States DTDATAO0-DTDATAO2)

DTDATAO0: DT_DATAOFIS state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and that the Transport layer has determined the FIS is of Data - Host to Device type.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall prepare to receive the data.

Transition DTDATAO0:DTDATAO1: When ready to receive the data, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTDATAO1: DT_DATAOREC state.

DTDATAO1: DT_DATAOREC state: This state is entered when the Transport layer is ready to receive the data.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall wait for the Link layer to indicate the transfer is complete.

Transition DTDATAO1:DTDATAO1: When Link layer has not indicated that the end of the FIS has been reached, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAO1: DT_DATAOREC state.

Transition DTDATAO1:DTI0: When the Link layer indicates that the end of the FIS has been reached, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTDATAO1:DTDATAO2: When the device's Application layer indicates that the FIS is to be aborted, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAO2: DT_DeviceAbort state.

DTDATAO2: DT_DeviceAbort state: This state is entered when the device's application layer indicates that the current transfer is to be aborted. (Use of DMAT is not recommended see 15.4.6)

When in this state, the Transport layer shall signal the Link layer to transmit DMAT primitive and return to either DT_DATAOREC or if the abort occurs coincident with an end of transfer indication from the Link, then transition to DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle. After signaling the Link Layer to transmit DMAT, the Transport returns to normal data transfer, and awaits the end of transfer indication from the Link.

Transition DTDATAO2:DTDATAO1: Inform Link layer to issue an abort. When Transfer is not complete, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTDATAO1: DT_DATAOREC state.

Transition DTDATAO2:DTI0: Inform Link layer to issue an abort. When the Link layer indicates that the end of the FIS has been reached, the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

16.7.11 Device Transport decompose First Party DMA Setup FIS - Host to Device or Device to Host state diagram

This protocol receives a First Party DMA Setup - Host to Device or Device to Host FIS, passes received First Party DMA Setup content, and notification of FIS receipt to the Application layer.

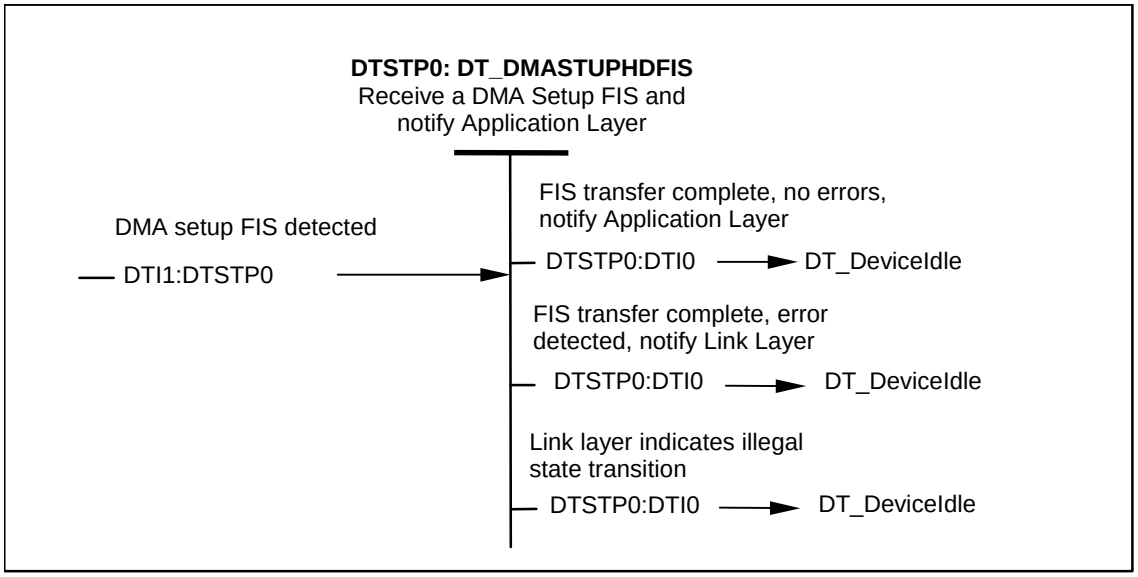


Figure 91 – Device transport decompose First Party DMA Setup FIS - host to device or device to host state diagram (State DTDMASTUP0)

DTSTP0: DT_DMASTUPHDFIS state: This state is entered when the receipt of a DT_DMASTUP FIS is recognized.

Transition DTSTP0:DTI0: When the entire FIS has been received from the Link layer without error, the Transport layer shall indicate to the device's Application layer that a First Party DMA Setup FIS was received and make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

When the entire FIS has been received from the Link layer and an error has been detected, status shall be sent to the link layer. The Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

16.7.12 Device Transport decompose a BIST Activate FIS state diagram

This protocol receives an FIS that instructs the device to enter one of several Built-in Self-test modes that cause the device to retransmit the data it receives. If the mode is supported the Device's application layer will place both the transmit and receive portions of the Transport, Link and/or Physical layers into appropriate state to perform the loopback operation.

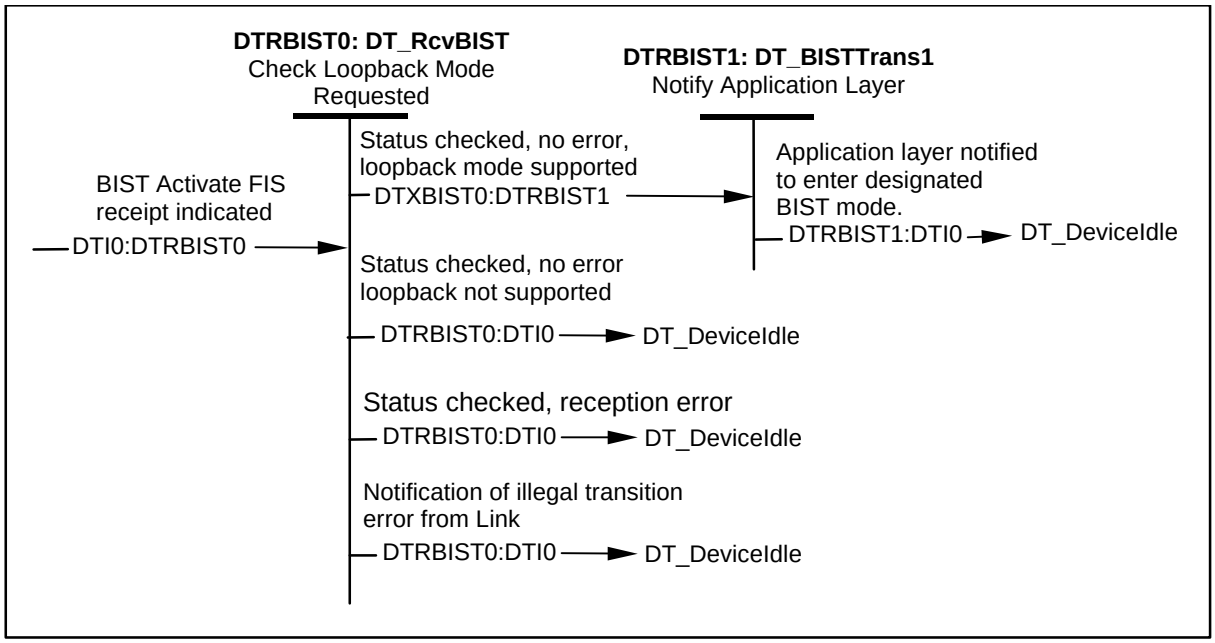


Figure 92 - Device transport decompose BIST activate FIS (States (DTRBIST0-DTRBIST1)

DTRBIST0: DT_RcvBIST state: This state is entered when the Link layer has indicated that an FIS is being received and the Transport layer has determined that a BIST Activate FIS is being received.

When in this state, the Transport layer shall determine the validity of the loopback request.

Transition DTRBIST0:DTRBIST1: If no reception error is detected and the FIS contents indicate a form of loopback request that is supported by the host the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTRBIST1: DT_BISTTrans1 state.

Transition DTRBIST0:DTI12: If no reception error is detected and the FIS contents indicate a form of loopback request that is not supported by the host the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI1:DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTRBIST0:DTI0: If a reception error is indicated the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI1:DT_DeviceIdle state.

Transition DTRBIST0:DTI1: When the Transport layer receives notification from the Link layer of an illegal state transition, the Transport layer shall make a transition to the DTI0: DT_DeviceIdle state.

DTRBIST1: DT_BISTTrans1 state: This state is entered when the Transport layer has determined that a valid BIST Activate FIS has been received.

Having received a valid FIS, the Transport layer informs the device's application layer that it should place the Transport, Link and Physical layers into the appropriate modes to loop the received data back to the transmitter. The method by which this is performed is vendor specific.

Transition DTRBIST1:DTI0: When the device's Application layer has been notified the Transport layer shall transition to the DTI0:DT_DeviceIdle state.

17 Serial interface Device Command Layer Protocol

17.1 COMRESET or SRST sent by Host

In the following Device Command Layer Protocols, if the host sends COMRESET before the device has completed executing a command layer protocol, then the device shall immediately start executing the COMRESET protocol from the beginning. If the host asserts SRST in the Device Control register before the device has completed executing a command layer protocol, then the device shall immediately start executing its software reset protocol from the beginning.

17.2 Power-on and COMRESET protocol diagram

If the host asserts Hard Reset by transmiting a COMRESET Sequence the device shall execute the hardware reset protocol regardless of the power management mode or the current device command layer state.

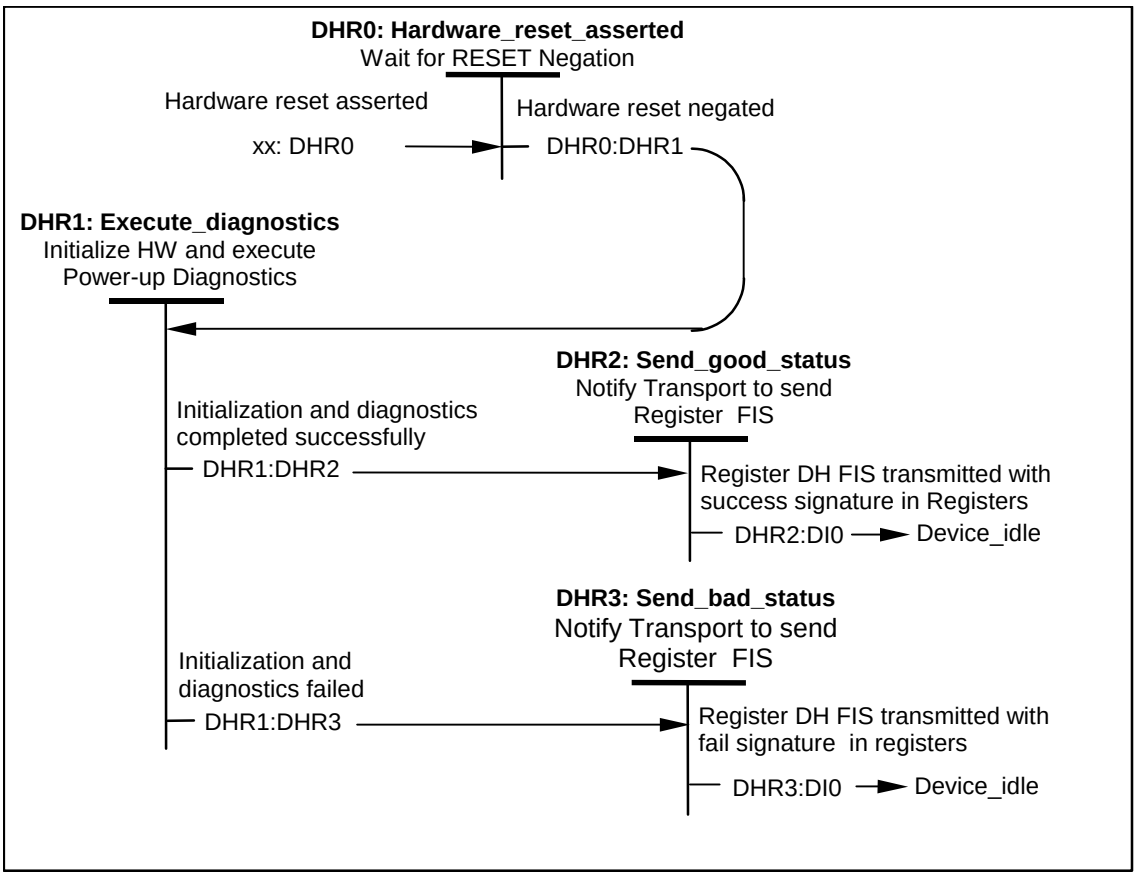


Figure 93 - Power on and COMRESET protocol (States DHR0-DHR3)

DHR0: Hardware_reset_asserted: This state is entered when the Transport layer indicates that the COMRESET signal is asserted.

When in this state, the device awaits the negation of the COMRESET signal.

Transition DHR0:DHR1: When the Transport layer indicates that the COMRESET signal has been negated, the device shall transition to the DHR1: Execute_diagnostics state.

DHR1: Execute_diagnostics: This state is entered when the Transport layer indicates that the COMRESET signal has been negated.

When in this state, the device initializes the device hardware and executes its power-up diagnostics.

Transition DHR1:DHR2: When the device hardware has been initialized and the power-up diagnostics successfully completed, the device shall transition to the DHR2: Send_good_status state.

Transition DHR1:DHR3: When the device hardware has been initialized and the power-up diagnostics failed, the device shall transition to the DHR3: Send_bad_status state.

DHR2: Send_good_status: This state is entered when the device hardware has been initialized and the power-up diagnostics successfully completed.

When in this state, the device requests that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DHR2:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

DHR3: Send_bad_status: This state is entered when the device hardware has been initialized and the power-up diagnostics failed.

When in this state, the device requests that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DHR3:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

17.3 Device Idle protocol

The state diagram below describes the idle protocol for a device. States and transitions preceded by an * are utilized only when queuing is implemented (See Clause 4).

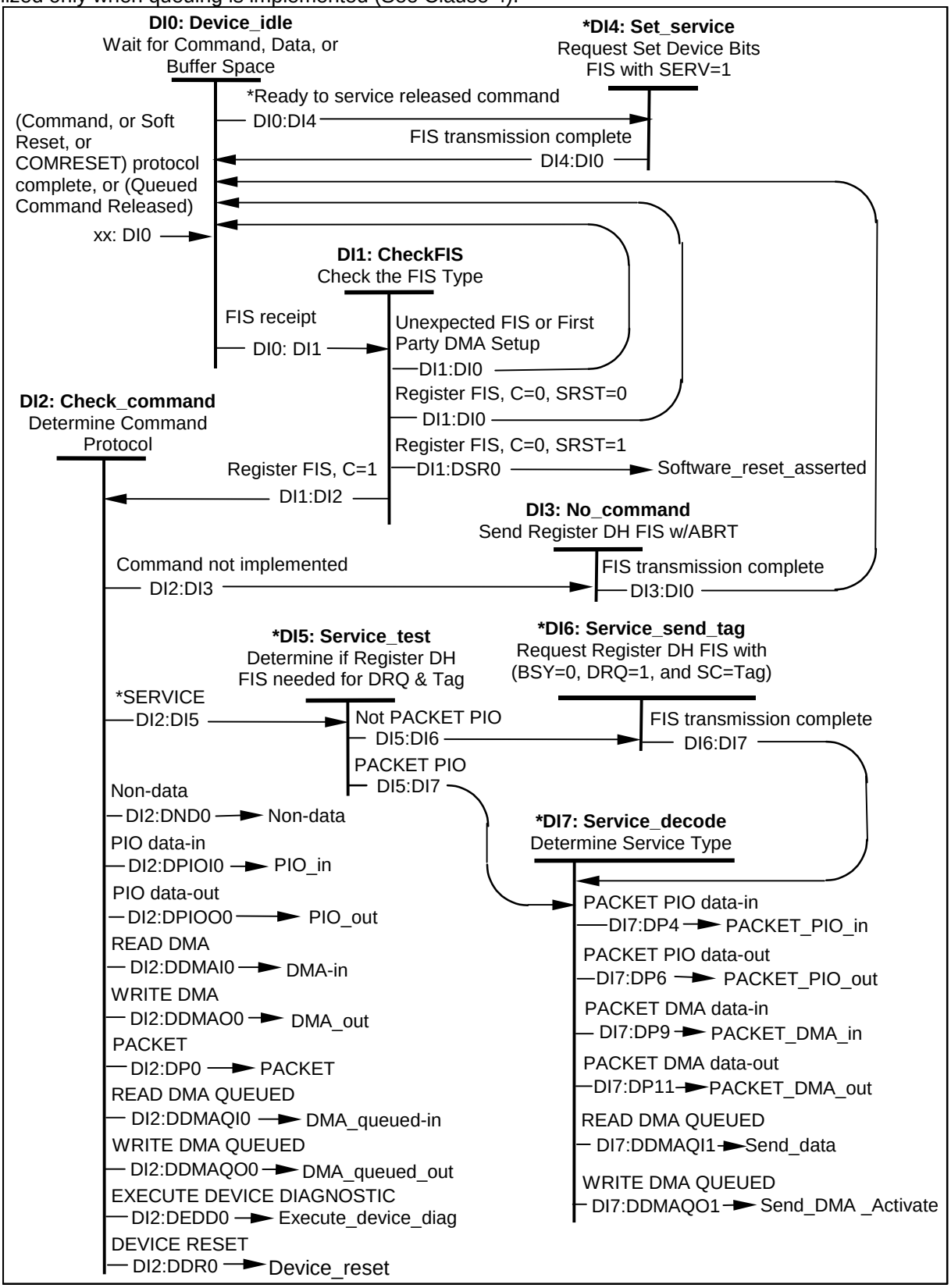


Figure 94 - Device idle protocol (States DI0-DI7)

DI0: Device_Idle: This state is entered when the device has completed the execution of a command protocol, a COMRESET protocol, a software reset protocol, or a queued command has been released.

When in this state, the device is awaiting a command. If queuing is supported, the device may be waiting to acquire data or establish buffer space to complete a queued command

Transition DI0:DI1: When the device receives an FIS from the Transport layer, the device shall transition to the DI1: Check_FIS state.

*** Transition DI0:DI4:** When the device is ready to complete the data transfer for a queued command, the device shall transition to the DI4: Set_service state.

DI1: Check_FIS state: This state is entered when the device receives an FIS from the Transport layer.

When in this state, the device shall check the FIS type.

Transition DI1:DSR0: If the FIS type is a Register FIS, the C bit in the FIS is cleared, and the SRST bit in the FIS is set, the device shall transition to the DSR0: Software_reset_asserted state.

Transition DI1:DI0: If the FIS type is a Register FIS, the C bit in the FIS is cleared, and the SRST bit in the FIS is cleared, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

Transition DI1:DI2: If the FIS type is a Register FIS and the C bit in the FIS is set, the device shall transition to the DI2: Check_command state.

Transition DI1:DI0: If the FIS type is a First Party DMA Setup FIS, the device shall inform the Transport layer of the reception of the First Party DMA Setup FIS, and transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

Transition DI1:DI0: For any other FIS, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

DI2: Check_command state: This state is entered when the device recognizes that the received Register FIS contains a new command. NOTE: This state shows transitions for all commands. If a device does not implement any particular command, then transition DI2:11 to state DI3:No_command shall be made.

When in this state, the device shall check the command protocol required by the received command.

Transition DI2:DND0: When the received command is a non-data transfer command, the device shall transition to the DND0: Non-data state.

Transition DI2:DPIOI0: When the received command is a PIO data-in command, the device shall transition to the DPIOI0: PIO_in state.

Transition DI2:DPIOO0: When the received command is a PIO data-out command, the device shall transition to the DPIOO0: PIO_out state.

Transition DI2:DDMAI0: When the received command is a READ DMA command, the device shall transition to the DDMAI0: DMA_in state.

Transition DI2:DDMAO0: When the received command is a WRITE DMA command, the device shall transition to the DDMAO0: DMA_out state.

Transition DI2:DP0: When the received command is a PACKET command, the device shall transition to the DP0: PACKET state.

Transition DI2:DDMAQI0: When the received command is a READ DMA QUEUED command, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI0: DMA_queued_in state.

Transition DI2:DDMAQO0: When the received command is a WRITE DMA QUEUED command, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO0: DMA_queued_out state.

Transition DI2:DEDD0: When the received command is an EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS command, the device shall transition to the DEDD0: Execute_device_diag state.

Transition DI2:DDR0: When the received command is an RESET DEVICE command, the device shall transition to the DDR0: Device_reset state.

Transition DI2:DI3: When the received command is not implemented by the device, the device shall transition to the DI3: No_command state.

Transition DI2:DI5: When the received command is a SERVICE command, the device shall transition to the DI5: Service state.

DI3: No_command state: This state is entered when the device recognizes that the received command is not implemented by the device. The device shall abort any outstanding Queued commands.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DI2:DI0: When the Transport layer has transmitted the Register FIS, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

*** DI4: Set_service state:** This state is entered when the ready to complete the data transfer for a queued command.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Set Device Bits FIS with the SERV bit set in the Status register and with all other bits in the Error and Status fields the same as the current contents of the respective registers, and the I bit set to one.

Transition DI4:DI0: When the Transport layer has transmitted the Set Device Bits FIS, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

*** DI5: Service_test state:** This state is entered when the SERVICE command has been received.

When in this state, the device shall determine the type of command that the device has requested service to complete. The PACKET_PIO command includes its own register update to set DRQ and send the command tag, but other queued commands require a Register FIS.

Transition DI5:DI7: When the command to be serviced is a PIO data-in or PIO data-out command, the device shall transition to the DI7: Service_decode state.

Transition DI5:DI6: When the command to be serviced is neither a PIO data-in nor a PIO data-out command, the device shall transition to the DI6: Service_send_tag state.

*** DI6: Service_send_tag state:** This state is entered when the SERVICE command has been received and sending a Register Device to Host FIS is necessary for the command being serviced.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register contents, including the desired command tag for the command being serviced.

Transition DI6:DI7: When the Transport layer has transmitted the Register FIS, the device shall transition to theDI7: Service_decode state.

*** DI7: Service_decode state:** This state is entered when a register FIS has been transmitted, if necessary to send the register contents, including the desired command tag, in response to a SERVICE command.

When in this state, the device shall determine the type of command that the device has requested service to complete, and branch to that command's data transfer and completion.

Transition DI7:DP4: When the command to be serviced is a PIO data-in command, the device shall transition to the DP4: PACKET_PIO_in state.

Transition DI7:DP6: When the command to be serviced is a PIO data-out command, the device shall transition to the DP6: PACKET_PIO_out state.

Transition DI7:DP9: When the command to be serviced is a DMA data-in command, the device shall transition to the DP9: PACKET_DMA_in state.

Transition DI7:DP11: When the command to be serviced is a DMA data-out command, the device shall transition to the DP11: PACKET_DMA_out state.

Transition DI7:DDMAQI1: When the command to be serviced is a READ DMA QUEUED command, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI1: Send_data state.

Transition DI7:DDMAQO1: When the command to be serviced is a WRITE DMA QUEUED command, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO1: Send_DMA_activate state.

17.4 Software reset protocol

When the host sends a Register FIS with a one in the SRST bit position of the Device Control register byte, the device shall execute the software reset protocol regardless of the power management mode.

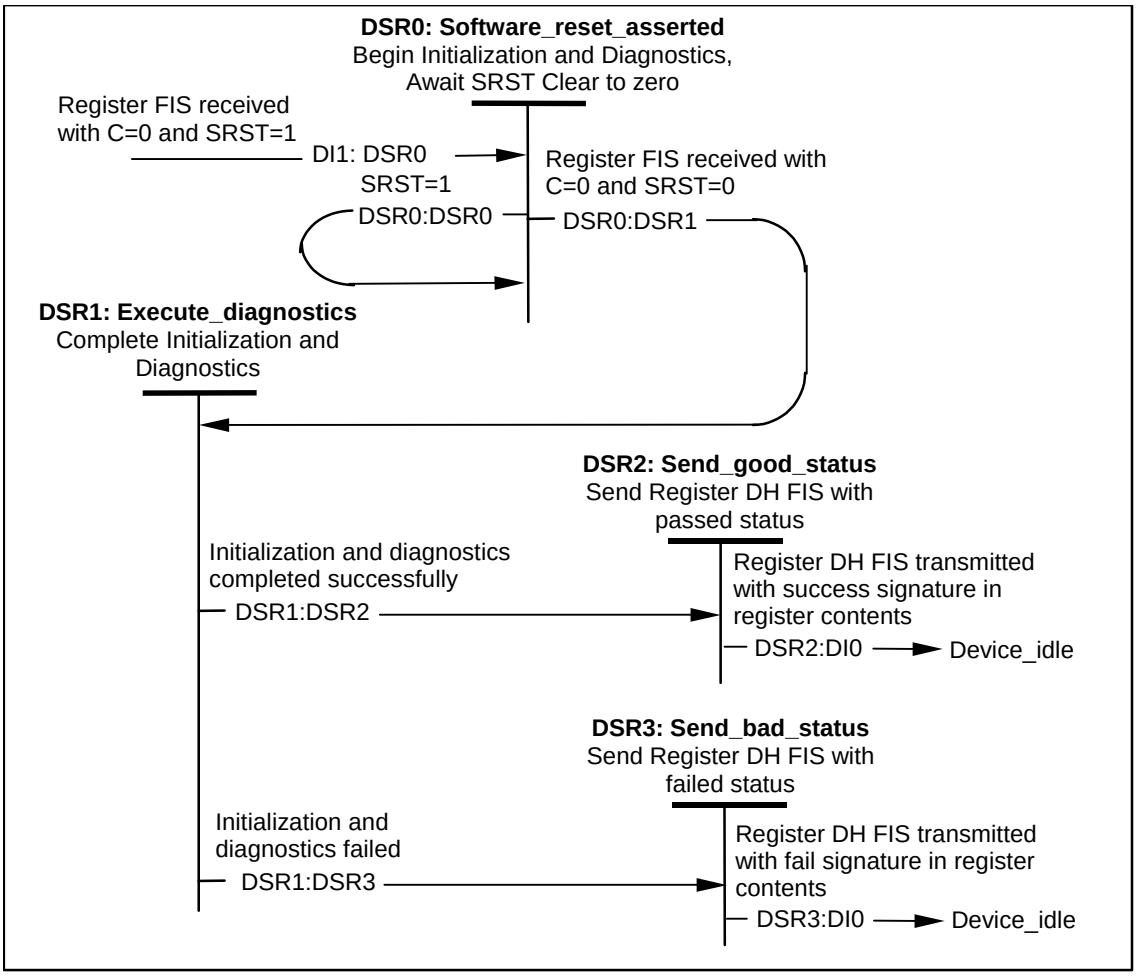


Figure 95 - Software reset protocol (States DSR0-DSR3)

DSR0: Software_reset_asserted: This state is entered when a Register FIS is received with the C bit in the FIS cleared to zero and the SRST bit set to one in the Device Control register.

When in this state, the device begins its initialization and diagnostics execution and awaits the clearing of the SRST bit.

Transition DSR0:DSR1: When a Register FIS is received with the C bit in the FIS cleared to zero and the SRST bit cleared to zero in the Device Control register, the device shall transition to the DSR1: Execute_diagnostics state.

Transition DSR0:DSR0: If a Register FIS is received with the C bit in the FIS set to one, or the SRST bit set to one in the Device Control register, the device shall transition to the DSR0: Software_reset_asserted state.

DSR1: Execute_diagnostics: This state is entered when a Register FIS is received with the C bit in the FIS cleared to zero and the SRST bit cleared to zero in the Device Control register.

When in this state, the device completes initialization and execution of its diagnostics.

Transition DSR1:DSR2: When the device has been initialized and the diagnostics successfully completed, the device shall transition to the DSR2: Send_good_status state.

Transition DSR1:DSR3: When the device has been initialized and the diagnostics failed, the device shall transition to the DSR3: Send_bad_status state.

DSR2: Send_good_status: This state is entered when the device has been initialized and the diagnostics successfully completed.

When in this state, the device requests that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DSR2:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

DSR3: Send_bad_status: This state is entered when the device has been initialized and the diagnostics failed.

When in this state, the device requests that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DSR3:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

17.5 EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command protocol

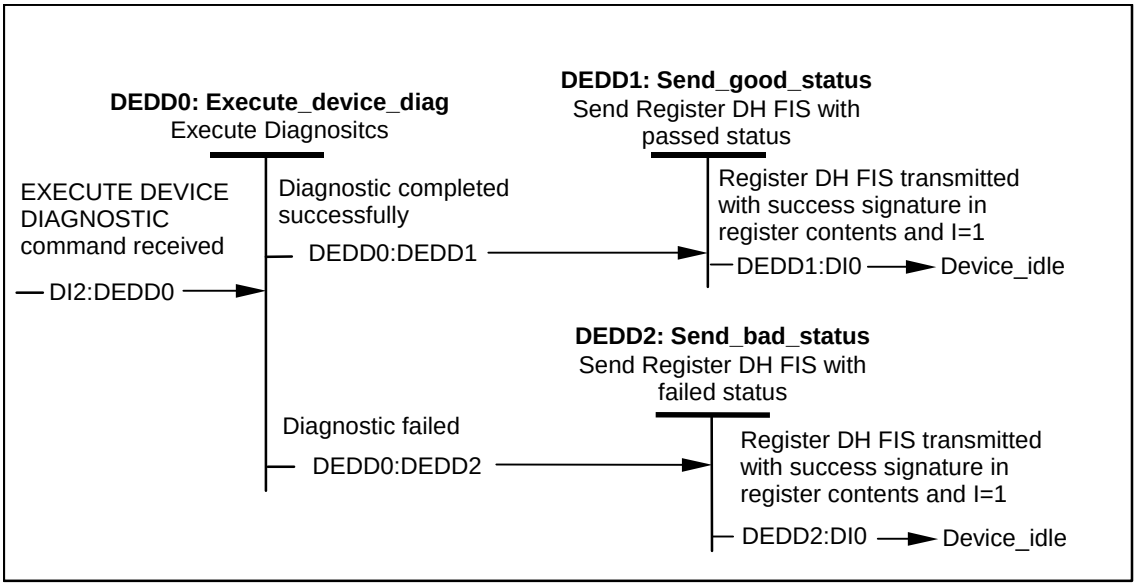


Figure 96 - EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command protocol (States DEDD0-DEDD2)

DEDD0: Execute_device_diag: This state is entered when an EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command is received.

When in this state, the device executes its diagnostics.

Transition DEDD0:DEDD1: When the device successfully completed the diagnostics, the device shall transition to the DEDD1: Send_good_status state.

Transition DEDD1:DEDD2: When the device has failed the diagnostics, the device shall transition to the DEDD2: Send_bad_status state.

DEDD1: Send_good_status: This state is entered when the device has successfully completed the diagnostics. When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host, with the I bit set to one. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DEDD1:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

DEDD2: Send_bad_status: This state is entered when the device has been initialized and the diagnostics failed.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host, with the I bit set to one. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DEDD2:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

17.6 DEVICE RESET command protocol

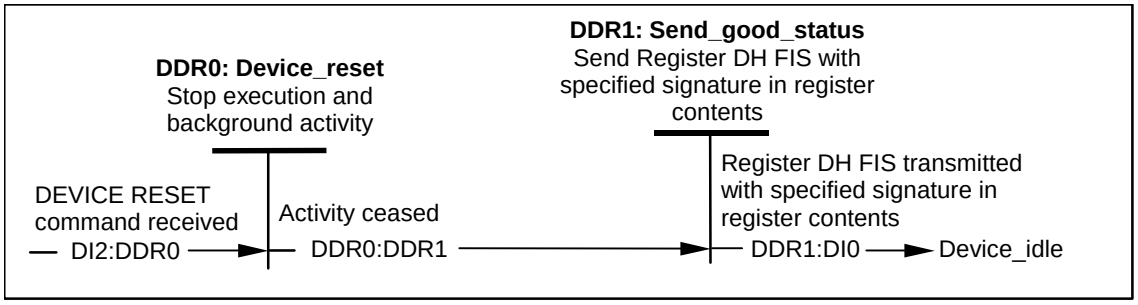


Figure 97 - DEVICE RESET command protocol (States DDR0-DDR1)

DDR0: Device_reset: This state is entered when an DEVICE RESET command is received.

When in this state, the device stops any execution or activity in progress.

Transition DDR0:DDR1: When the device has ceased any execution or activity and has completed its internal diagnostics, the device shall transition to the DDR1: Send_good_status state.

DDR1: Send_good_status: This state is entered when the device has been initialized and the diagnostics successfully completed.

When in this state, the device requests that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS to the host. The device signature shal be set in the registers as defined in Clause 5.

Transition DDR1:DI0: When the Transport layer indicates that the Register FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_Idle state.

17.7 Non-data command protocol

Non-Data Commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.

Execution of these commands involves no data transfer. See the NOP command description and the SLEEP command description for additional protocol requirements.

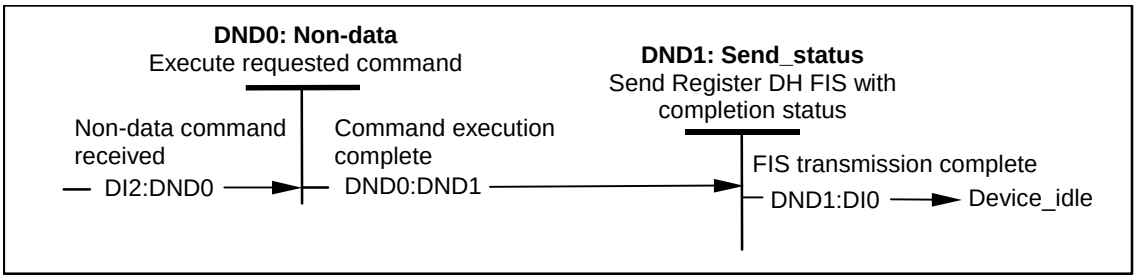


Figure 98 - Non-data command protocol (States DND0-DND1)

DND0: Non-data State: This state is entered when a received command is a non-data command.

When in this state, the device shall execute the requested command if supported.

Transition DND0:DND1: When command execution completes, the device shall transition to the DND1: Send_status state.

DND1: Send_status State: This state is entered when the execution of the non-data command has been completed.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DND1:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.8 PIO data-in command protocol

PIO Data In commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.

Execution of this class of command includes the PIO transfer of one or more blocks of data from the device to the host.

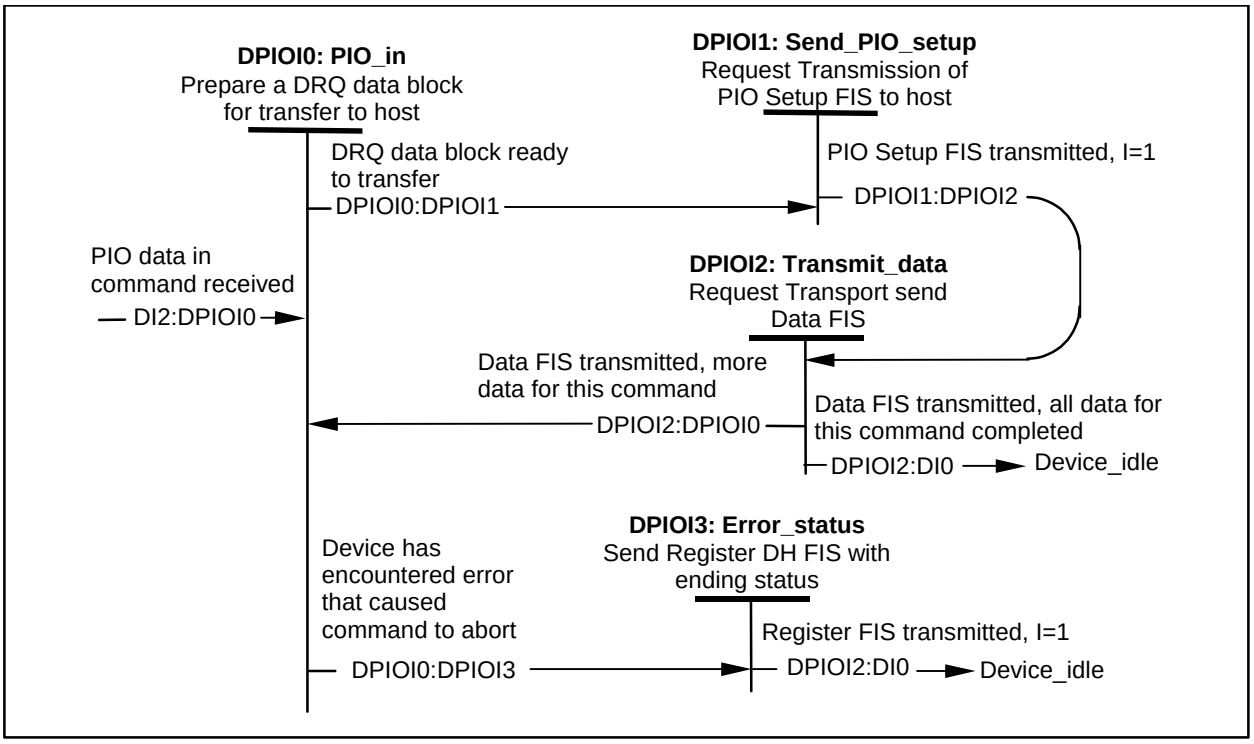


Figure 99 - PIO data-in command protocol (States DPIOI0-DPIOI3)

DPIOI0: PIO_in State: This state is entered when the device receives a PIO data-in command or the transmission of one or more additional DRQ data blocks is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare a DRQ data block for transfer to the host.

Transition DPIOI0:DPIOI1: When the device has a DRQ data block ready to transfer, the device shall transition to the DPIOI1: Send_PIO_setup state.

Transition DPIOI0:DPIOI3: When the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, the device shall transition to the DPIOI3: Error_status state.

DPIOI1: Send_PIO_setup: This state is entered when the device is ready to transmit a DRQ data block from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a PIO Setup FIS. The initial status shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one and with register content as described in the appropriate command description. The I bit shall be set. If this is the last DRQ data block requested by the command, the E_Status field shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ cleared to zero. If this is not the last data block requested by the command, the E_Status field shall have BSY set to one and DRQ cleared to zero.

Transition DPIOI1:DPIOI2: When the PIO Setup FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DPIOI2: Transmit_data state.

DPIOI2: Transmit_data: This state is entered when the device has transmitted a PIO Setup FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Data FIS containing the DRQ data block.

Transition DPIOI2:DI0: When the Data FIS has been transferred and all data requested by this command have been transferred, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle.

Transition DPIOI2:DPIOI0: When the Data FIS has been transferred but all data requested by this command has not been transferred, or the 8KB transfer limit has been reached, then the device shall transition to the DPIOI0: PIO_in state.

DPIOI3: Error_status: This state is entered when the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DPIOI3:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.9 PIO data-out command protocol

PIO Data-out commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.Execution of this class of command includes the PIO transfer of one or more blocks of data from the host to the device.

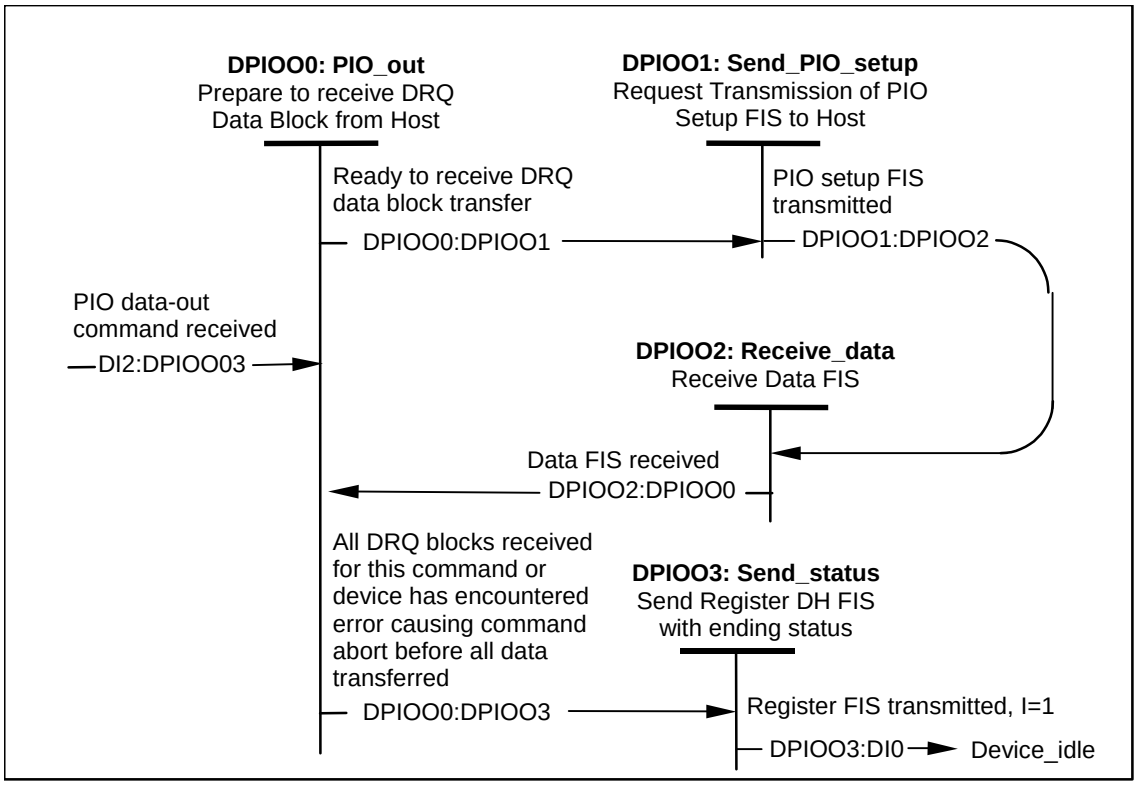


Figure 100 - PIO data-out command protocol (States DPIOO0-DPIOO3)

DPIOI0: PIO_out State: This state is entered when the device receives a PIO data-out command or the receipt of one or more DRQ data blocks is required to complete this command.

When in this state, device shall prepare to receive a DRQ data block transfer from the host.

Transition DPIOO0:DPIOO1: When the device is ready to receive a DRQ data block, the device shall transition to the DPIOO1: Send_PIO_setup state.

Transition DPIOO0:DPIOO3: When the device has received all DRQ data blocks requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DPIOO3: Send_status state.

DPIOO1: Send_PIO_setup: This state is entered when the device is ready to receive a DRQ data block from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a PIO Setup FIS. The initial status shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one. If this is the first DRQ data block for this command, the I bit shall be cleared to zero. If this is not the first DRQ data block for this command, the I bit shall be set to one. The E_Status field shall have BSY set to one and DRQ cleared to zero. The byte count for the DRQ data block shall be indicated.

Transition DPIOO1:DPIOO2: When the PIO Setup FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DPIOO2: Receive_data state.

DPIOO2:Receive_data: This state is entered when the device has transmitted a PIO Setup FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DPIOO2:DPIOO0: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DPIOO0: PIO_out state.

DPIOO3: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has received all DRQ data blocks requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DPIOO3:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.10 DMA data-in command protocol

DMA data-in commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.
Execution of this class of command includes the transfer of one or more blocks of data from the device to the host using DMA transfer.

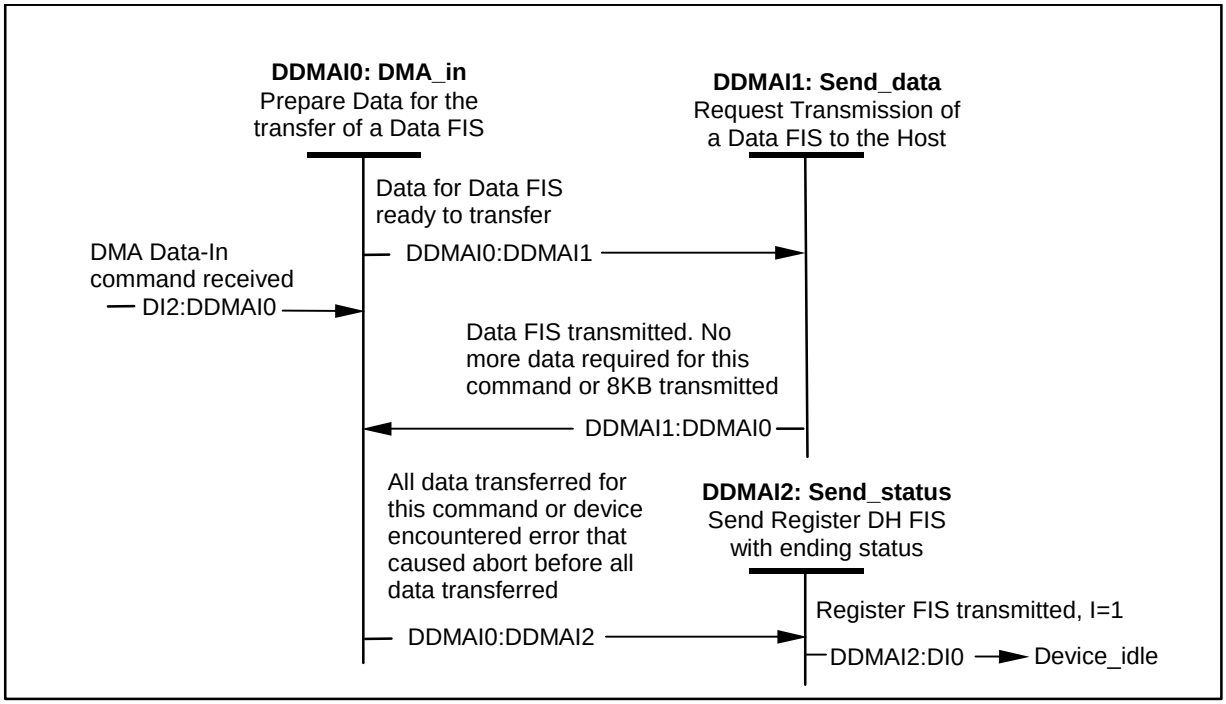


Figure 101 - DMA data-in command protocol (States DDMAI0-DDMAI1)

DDMAI0: DMA_in State: This state is entered when the device receives a DMA data-in command or the transmission of one or more Data FIS is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare the data for transfer of a Data FIS to the host.

Transition DDMAI0:DDMAI1: When the device has the data ready to transfer a Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DDMAI1: Send_data state.

Transition DDMAI0:DDMAI2: When the device has transferred all of the data requested by this command or has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DDMAI2: Send_status state.

DDMAI1: Send_data: This state is entered when the device has the data ready to transfer a Data FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Data FIS containing the data. The device command layer shall request a Data FIS size of no more than 8KB.

Transition DDMAI1:DDMAI0: When the Data FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DDMAOI0: DMA_in state.

DDMAI2: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has transferred all of the data requested by the command or has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAI2:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.11 DMA data out command protocol

DMA data out commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.
Execution of this class of command includes the transfer of one or more blocks of data from the host to the device using DMA transfer. A single interrupt is issued at the completion of the command.

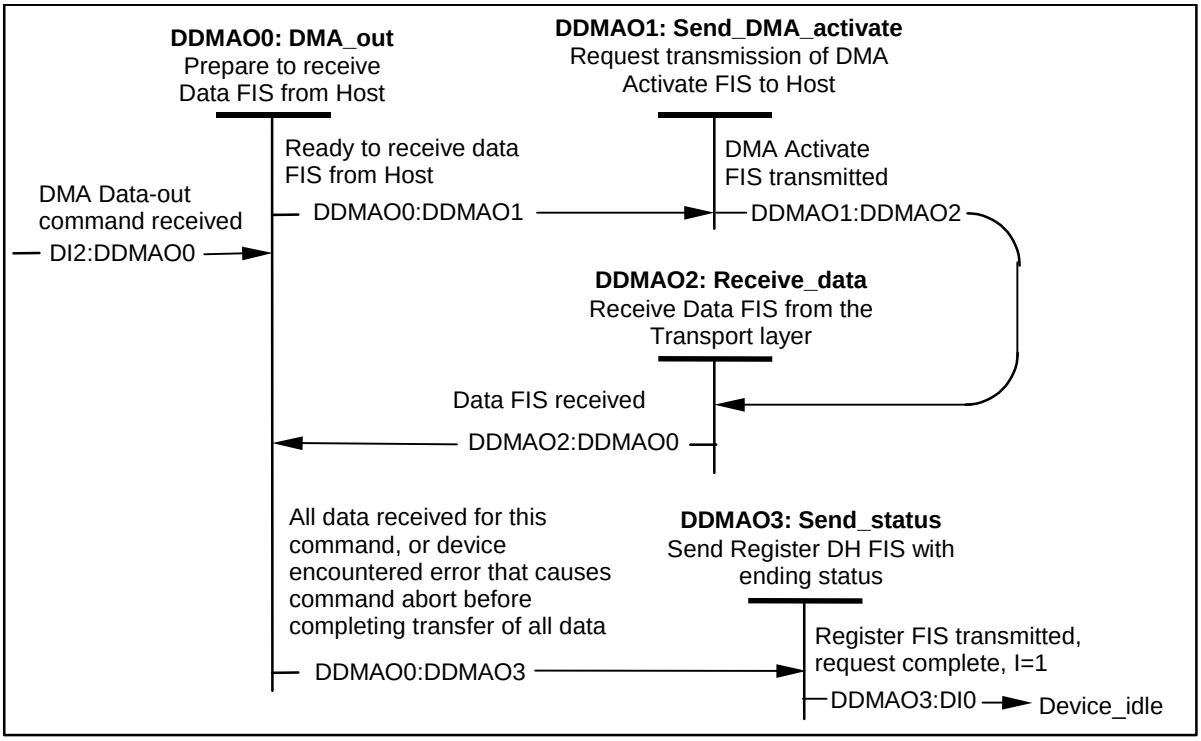


Figure 102 - DMA data-out command protocol (States DDMAO0-DDMAO3)

DDMAO0: DMA_out State: This state is entered when the device receives a DMA data-out command or the receipt of one or more Data FIS is required to complete this command.

When in this state, device shall prepare to receive a Data FIS from the host.

Transition DDMAO0:DDMAO1: When the device is ready to receive a Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DDMAO1: Send_DMA_activate state.

Transition DDMAO0:DDMAO3: When the device has received all the data requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DDMAO3: Send_status state.

DDMAO1: Send_DMA_activate: This state is entered when the device is ready to receive a Data FIS from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a DMA Activate FIS.

Transition DDMAO1:DDMAO2: When the DMA Activate FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DDMAO2: Receive_data state.

DDMAO2: Receive_data: This state is entered when the device transmitted a DMA Activate FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DDMAO2:DDMAO0: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DDMAO0: DMA_out state.

DDMAO3: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has received all the data requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAO3:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.12 PACKET protocol

States marked with an * are only utilized when queuing is implemented (See Clause 4).

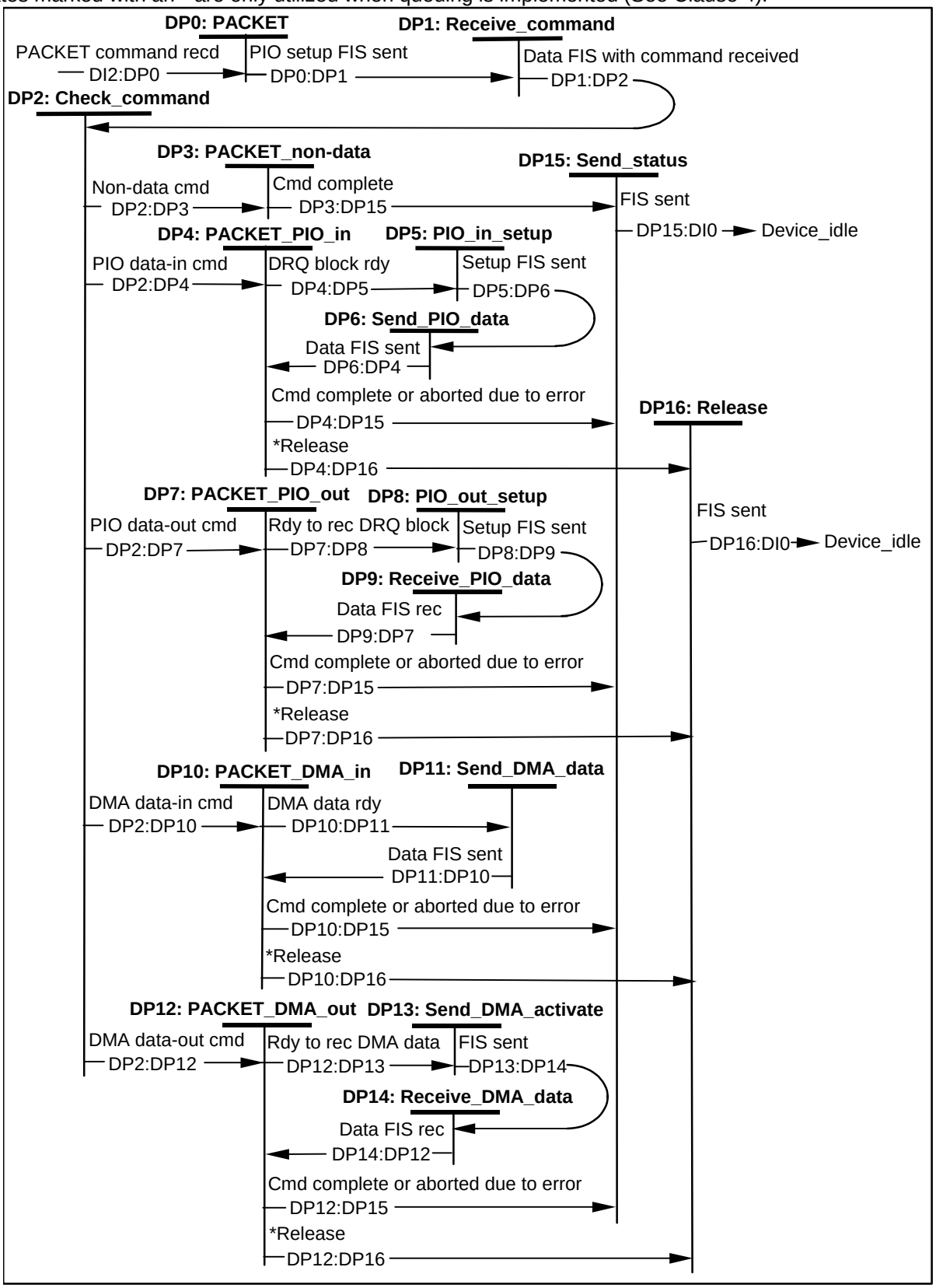


Figure 103 - PACKET command protocol (States DP0-DP16)

DP0: PACKET: This state is entered when the device receives a PACKET command.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a PIO Setup FIS to acquire the command packet associated with this command. The initial status shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one. The I bit shall be cleared to zero. The E_Status field shall have BSY set to one and DRQ cleared to zero. The byte count for the DRQ data block shall be indicated.

Transition DP0:DP1: When the PIO Setup FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP1: Receive_command state.

DP1: Receive_command: This state is entered when the device transmitted a PIO Setup FIS to the host to get the command packet.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DP1:DP2: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DP2: Check_command state.

DP2: Check_command: This state is entered when the Data FIS containing the command packet has been received.

When in this state, the device shall determine the protocol for the command contained in the command packet.

Transition DP2:DP3: When the command is a non-data transfer command, the device shall transition to the DP3: PACKET_non-data state.

Transition DP2:DP4: When the command is a PIO data-in transfer command, the device shall transition to the DP4: PACKET_PIO_in state.

Transition DP2:DP7: When the command is a PIO data-out transfer command, the device shall transition to the DP7: PACKET_PIO_out state.

Transition DP2:DP10: When the command is a DMA data-in transfer command, the device shall transition to the DP10: PACKET_DMA_in state.

Transition DP2:DP12: When the command is a DMA data-out transfer command, the device shall transition to the DP12: PACKET_DMA_out state.

DP3: PACKET_non-data State: This state is entered when a received command is a non-data command.

When in this state, the device shall execute the requested command.

Transition DP3:DP15: When command execution completes, the device shall transition to the DP15: Send_status state.

DP4: PACKET_PIO_in State: This state is entered when the device receives a PIO data-in command or the transmission of one or more DRQ data blocks is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare a DRQ data block for transfer to the host.

Transition DP4:DP5: When the device has a DRQ data block ready to transfer, the device shall transition to the DP5: PIO_in_setup.

Transition DP4:15: When all of the data requested by this command has been transferred or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DP15: Send_status state.

*** Transition DP4:DP16:** When the device supports overlap and queuing and does not have a DRQ data block ready to transfer immediately, the device shall transition to the DP16: Release state.

DP5: PIO_in_setup: This state is entered when the device is ready to transfer a DRQ block to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a PIO Setup FIS. The initial status shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one. The I bit shall be set to one. The E_Status field shall have BSY set to one and DRQ cleared to zero. The byte count for the DRQ data block shall be indicated.

Transition DP5:DP6: When the PIO Setup FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP6:SendPIO_data state.

DP6:Send_PIO_data: This state is entered when the device is ready to transfer a DRQ data block to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Data FIS containing the DRQ data block.

Transition DP6:DP5: When the Data FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP5: PACKET_PIO_in state.

DP7: PACKET_PIO_out State: This state is entered when the device receives a PIO data-out command or the receipt of one or more DRQ data blocks is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare to receive a DRQ data block transfer from the host.

Transition DP7:DP8: When the device is ready to receive a DRQ data block transfer, the device shall transition to the DP8: PIO_out_setup state.

Transition DP7:DP15: When the device has received all DRQ data blocks requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DP15: Send_status state.

*** Transition DP7:DP16:** When the device supports overlap and queuing and can not accept a DRQ data block immediately, the device shall transition to the DP16: Release state.

DP8: PIO_out_setup: This state is entered when the device is ready to receive a DRQ data block from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a PIO Setup FIS. The initial status shall have BSY cleared to zero and DRQ set to one. The I bit shall be set to one. The E_Status field shall have BSY set to one and DRQ cleared to zero. The byte count for the DRQ data block shall be indicated.

Transition DP8:DP9: When the PIO Setup FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP9: Receive_PIO_data state.

DP9: Receive_PIO_data: This state is entered when the device transmitted a PIO Setup FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DP9:DP7: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DP7: PACKET_PIO_out state.

DP10: PACKET_DMA_in State: This state is entered when the device receives a DMA data-in command or the transmission of one or more Data FIS is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare the data for transfer of a Data FIS to the host.

Transition DP10:DP11: When the device has the data ready to transfer a Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DP11: Send_DMA_data state.

Transition DP10:DP15: When the device has transferred all of the data requested by this command or has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DP15: Send_status state.

*** Transition DP10:DP16:** When the device supports overlap and queuing and does not have data ready to transfer immediately, the device shall transition to the DP16: Release state.

DP11: Send_DMA_data: This state is entered when the device has the data ready to transfer a Data FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Data FIS containing the data.

Transition DP11:DP10: When the Data FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP10: PACKET_DMA_in state. The device command layer shall request a Data FIS size of no more than 8KB.

DP12: PACKET_DMA_out State: This state is entered when the device receives a DMA data-out command or the receipt of one or more Data FIS is required to complete the command.

When in this state, device shall prepare to receive a Data FIS from the host.

Transition DP12:DP13: When the device is ready to receive a Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DP13: Send_DMA_activate state.

Transition DP12:DP15: When the device has received all the data requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, then the device shall transition to the DP15: Send_status state.

*** Transition DP12:DP16:** When the device supports overlap and queuing and can not accept a Data FIS immediately, the device shall transition to the DP16: Release state.

DP13: Send_DMA_activate: This state is entered when the device is ready to receive a Data FIS from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a DMA Activate FIS.

Transition DP13:DP14: When the DMA Activate FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DP14: Receive_DMA_data state.

DP14: Receive_DMA_data: This state is entered when the device transmitted a DMA Activate FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DP14:DP12: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DP12: PACKET_DMA_out state.

DP15: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has received all the data requested by this command or the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description. and the I bit set to one.

Transition DP15:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

*** DP16: Release:** This state is entered when the device is not able to do a data transfer immediately.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description with the REL bit set to one, and, if the bus release interrupt has been enabled by a previous Set Features Command, with the I bit set to one.

Transition DP16:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.13 READ DMA QUEUED command protocol

Read DMA Queued commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.

Execution of this class of command includes the transfer of one or more blocks of data from the device to the host using DMA transfer. All data for the command may be transferred without a bus release between the command receipt and the data transfer. This command may bus release before transferring data. When data transfer is begun, all data for the request shall be transferred without a bus release.

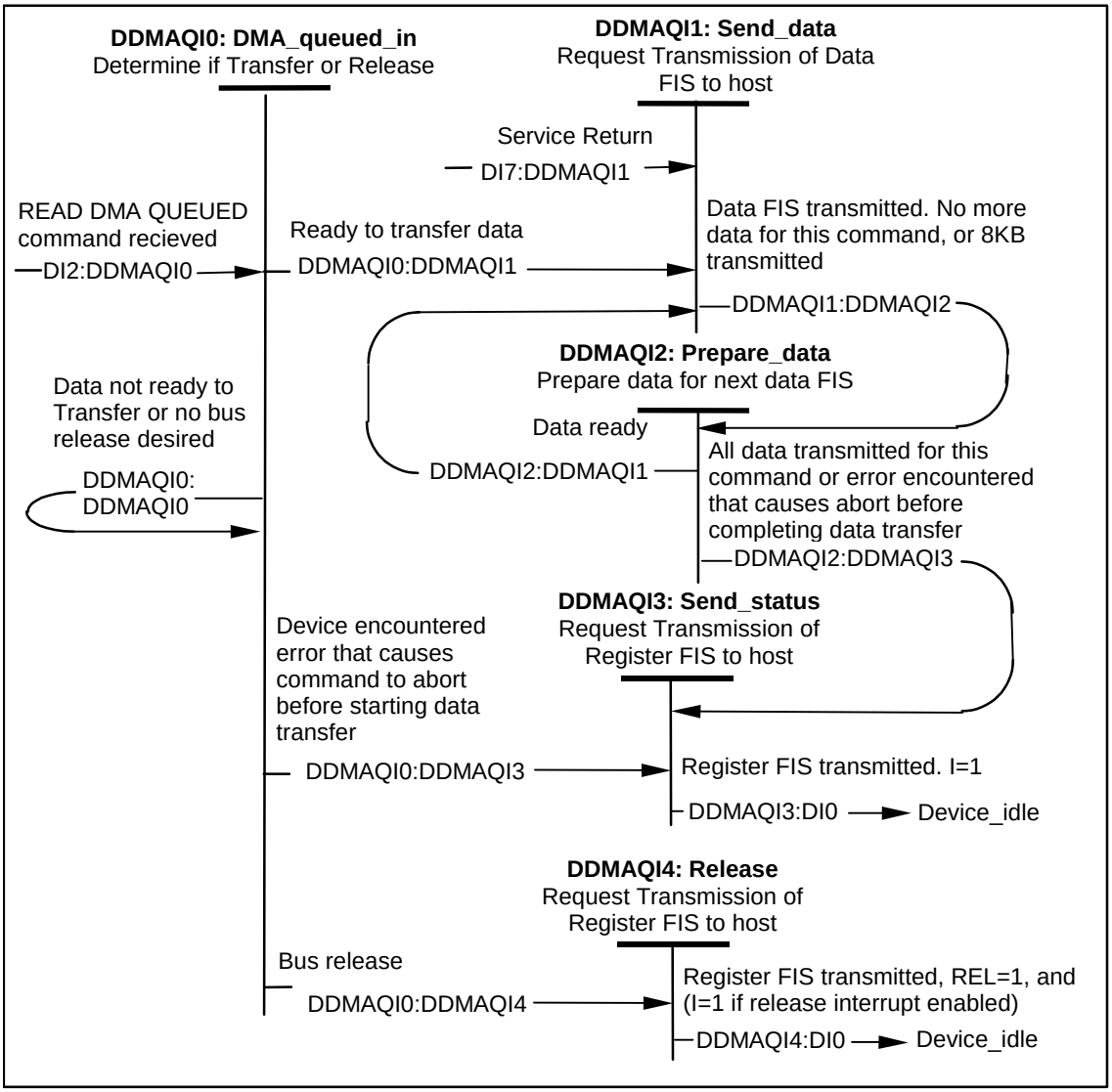


Figure 104 - READ DMA QUEUED command protocol (States DDMAQI0-DDMAQI4)

DDMAQI0: DMA_queued_in: This state is entered when the device receives a READ DMA QUEUED command.

When in this state, device shall determine if the requested data is ready to transfer to the host.

Transition DDMAQI0:DDMAQI1: When the device has the requested data ready to transfer a Data FIS immediately, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI1: Send_data state.

Transition DDMAQI0:DDMAQI3: When the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before starting the transfer of the requested data, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI3: Send_status state.

Transition DDMAQI0:DDMAQI4: When the device does not have the requested data ready to transfer a Data FIS, and a release is desired, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI4: Release state.

Transition DDMAQI0:DDMAQI0: When the device does not have the requested data ready to transfer, or no bus release is desired, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI0: DMA_queued_in state.

DDMAQI1: Send_data: This state is entered when the device has the data ready to transfer a Data FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Data FIS containing the data.

Transition DDMAQI1:DDMAQI2: When the Data FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI2: Prepare_data state. The device command layer shall request a Data FIS size of no more than 8KB.

DDMAQI2: Prepare_data: This state is entered when the device has completed the transfer a Data FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall prepare the data for the next Data FIS.

Transition DDMAQI2:DDMAQI1: When data is ready for the Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI1: Send_data state.

Transition DDMAQI2:DDMAQI3: When all data requested for the command has been transmitted or an error has been encountered that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, the device shall transition to the DDMAQI3: Send_status state.

DDMAQI3: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has transferred all of the data requested by the command or has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAQI3:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

DDMAQI4: Release: This state is entered when the device does not have the requested data available for immediate transfer.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with the REL bit set to one, with register content as described in the appropriate command description, and, if the bus release interrupt has been enabled by a previous Set Features Command, with the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAQI4:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

17.14 WRITE DMA QUEUED command protocol

Write DMA Queued commands are listed in Annex B of Volume 1.
Execution of this class of command includes the transfer of one or more blocks of data from the device to the host using DMA transfer. All data for the command may be transferred without a bus release between the command receipt and the data transfer. This command may bus release before transferring data. The host shall initialize the DMA controller prior to transferring data. When data transfer is begun, all data for the request shall be transferred without a bus release.

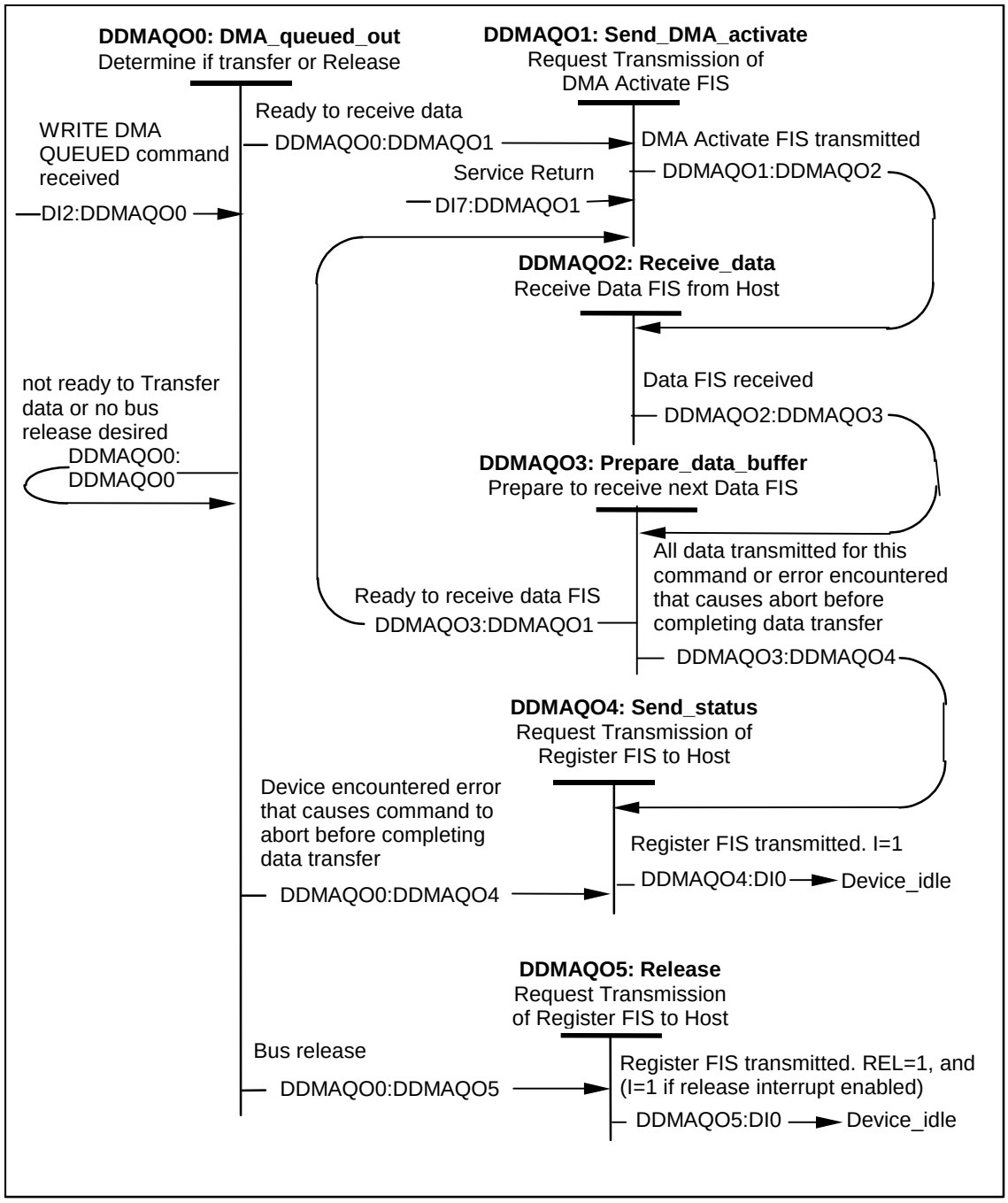


Figure 105 - WRITE DMA QUEUED command protocol (DDMAOQ0-DDMAQO5)

DDMAQO0: DMA_queued_out: This state is entered when the device receives a WRITE DMA QUEUED command.

When in this state, device shall determine if it is ready to accept the requested data from the host.

Transition DDMAQO0:DDMAQO1: When the device is ready to receive a Data FIS immediately, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO1: Send_DMA_activate state.

Transition DDMAQO0:DDMAQO4: When the device has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO4: Send_status state.

Transition DDMAQO0:DDMAQO5: When the device does not have the requested data ready to transfer a Data FIS immediately, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO5: Release state.

Transition DDMAQO0:DDMAQO0: When the device is not ready to transfer a Data FIS immediately, or no bus release is desired, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO0: DMA_queued_out state.

DDMAQO1:Send_DMA_activate: This state is entered when the device is ready to receive a Data FIS from the host.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a DMA Activate FIS.

Transition DDMAQO1:DDMAQO2: When the DMA Activate FIS has been transferred, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO2: Receive_data state.

DDMAQO2:Receive_data: This state is entered when the device transmitted a DMA Activate FIS to the host.

When in this state, the device shall receive the requested Data FIS from the Transport layer.

Transition DDMAQO2:DDMAQO3: When the Data FIS has been received, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO3: Prepare_data_buffer state.

DDMAQO3: Prepare_data_buffer: This state is entered when the device has completed receiving a Data FIS from the host.

When in this state, the device shall prepare for receipt of the next Data FIS.

Transition DDMAQO3:DDMAQO1: When ready to receive the Data FIS, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO1: Send_DMA_activate state.

Transition DDMAQO3:DDMAQO4: When all data requested for the command has been transmitted or an error has been encountered that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data, the device shall transition to the DDMAQO4: Send_status state.

DDMAQO4: Send_status: This state is entered when the device has transferred all of the data requested by the command or has encountered an error that causes the command to abort before completing the transfer of the requested data.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with register content as described in the appropriate command description and the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAQO4:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

DDMAQO5: Release: This state is entered when the device cannot receive the requested data immediately.

When in this state, the device shall request that the Transport layer transmit a Register FIS with REL set to one, with register content as described in the appropriate command description) and, if the bus release interrupt has been enabled by a previous Set Features Command, with the I bit set to one.

Transition DDMAQO5:DI0: When the FIS has been transmitted, then the device shall transition to the DI0: Device_idle state.

18 Host command layer state diagram

18.1 Overview

Figure 106 defines the protocol of the host adapter to emulate Device 0 only operation of the parallel implementation of ATA devices as seen from the host BIOS or software driver. The Interrupt Pending flag (IPF) is an internal state bit in the host adapter that reflects whether or not the device has an Interrupt Pending to the host. See 13.3 for additional information on parallel ATA emulation.

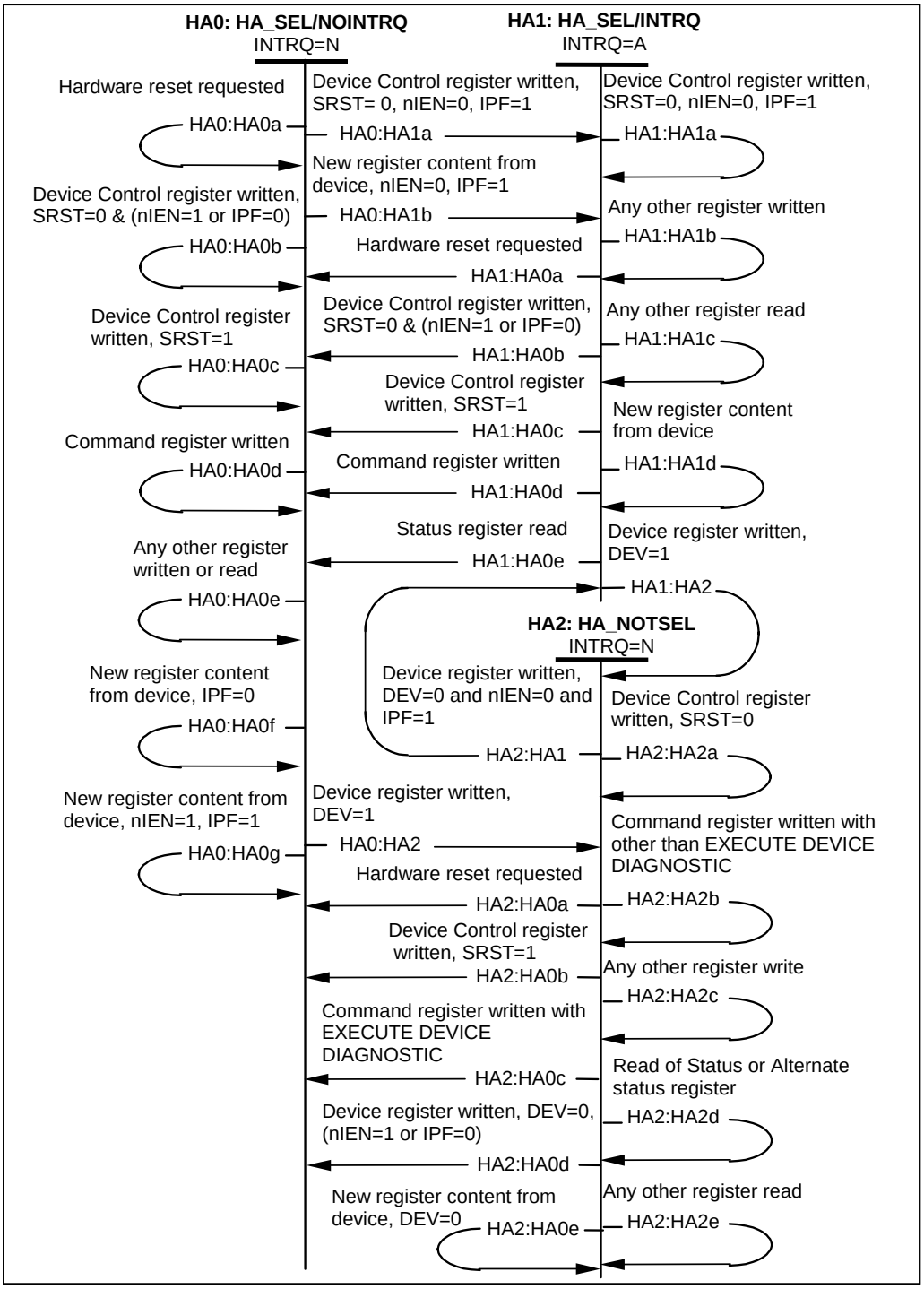


Figure 106 – Host adapter state diagram (States HA0-HA2)

HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state: This state is entered when Device 0 is selected and either IPF is cleared to zero or nIEN is set to one.

When in this state, the interrupt signal to the host shall not be asserted.

Transition HA0:HA0a: When a COMRESET is requested by the host, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Link layer to have a bus COMRESET asserted, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA0:HA0b Device Control register written by the host with SRST=0 and (nIEN=1 or IPF=0): When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST cleared to zero and either nIEN set to one or IPF is cleared to zero, the host adapter shall notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA0:HA1a Device Control register written by the host with SRST=0 and (nIEN=0 and IPF=1): When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST cleared to zero, nIEN cleared to zero, and IPF is set to one, the host adapter shall notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA0:HA0c: When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST set to one, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA0:HA0d: When the Command register is written by the host, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit set to 1, with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA0:HA2: When the Device register is written by the host with DEV set to one, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA0:HA0e: When any register is written by the host other than the Device Control, Command, or Device Register, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA0:HA0f: When the Transport layer indicates new register content from the device with no set IPF flag, the host adapter shall place the new register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA0:HA0g: When the Transport layer indicates new register content from the device with set IPF flag and nIEN is set to one, the host adapter shall set IPF to one, place the new register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA0:HA1b0: When the Transport layer indicates new register content from the device with set IPF flag and nIEN is cleared to zero, the host adapter shall set IPF to one, place the new register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state.

HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state: This state is when DEVICE 0 is selected, nIEN is cleared to zero, and IPF is set to one.

When in this state, the interrupt signal to the host shall be asserted.

Transition HA1:HA0a: When a COMRESET is requested by the host, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Link layer to have a bus COMRESET asserted, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA1:HA0b Device Control register written by the host with SRST=0 and (nIEN=1 or IPF=0): When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST cleared to zero, with nIEN set to one or IPF cleared to zero, the host adapter shall notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA1:HA1a Device Control register written by the host with SRST=0 and (nIEN=0 and IPF=1): When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST cleared to zero with nIEN cleared to zero and IPF set to one, the host adapter shall notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA1:HA0c: When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST set to one, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA1:HA0d: When the Command register is written by the host, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit set to 1, with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA1:HA2: When the Device register is written by the host with DEV set to one, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA1:HA0e: When the Status register is read by the host, the host adapter shall clear IPF to zero and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA1:HA1b: When any register is written by the host other than those described above, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state.

Transition HA1:HA1c: When any register is read by the host other than that described above, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state.

Transition HA1:HA1d: When the Transport layer indicates new register content from the device, the host adapter shall place the new register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state.

HA2: HA_NOTSEL state: This state is entered when DEVICE 1 is selected.

When in this state, the interrupt signal to the host shall not be asserted.

Transition HA2:HA0a: When a COMRESET is requested by the host, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear DEV to zero in the Shadow Device register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Link layer to have a bus COMRESET asserted, and make a transition to the HA0: SEL/NOINTRQ state.

Transition HA2:HA2a: When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST cleared to zero, the host adapter shall notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA2:HA0b: When the Device Control register is written by the host with SRST set to one, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear DEV to zero in the Shadow Device register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit cleared to 0 with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_ SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA2:HA2b: When the Command register is written by the host with any command code other than EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC, the host adapter shall not set BSY in the Shadow Status register and shall make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA2:HA0c: When the Command register is written by the host with the EXECUTE DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC command code, the host adapter shall set BSY to one in the Shadow Status register, clear DEV to zero in the Device register, clear IPF to zero, notify the Transport layer to send a Register Host to Device FIS with the C bit set to 1, with the current content of the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, and make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/INTRQ state.

Transition HA2:HA0d Device register written by the host with DEV = 0 and (nIEN=1 or IPF=0): When the Device register is written by the host with DEV cleared to zero and either nIEN is set to one or IPF is cleared to zero, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA0: HA_SEL/NOINTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA2:HA1 Device register written by the host with DEV = 0 and (nIEN=0 and IPF=1): When the Device register is written by the host with DEV cleared to zero, nIEN cleared to zero, and IPF is set to one, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA1: HA_SEL/INTRQ state. If the state of the SRST is unchanged from the prior state, the sending of a Register HD FIS with C=0 is optional.

Transition HA2:HA2c: When any register is written by the host other than the Command Register, Device Register or the Device Control register, the host adapter shall make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA2:HA2d: When the Status or Alternate Status register is read by the host, the host shall return register content 00h to the host and make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA2:HA2e: When any register is read by the host other than the Status or Alternate Status register, the host adapter shall return the current Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block content to the host and make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

Transition HA2:HA0e: When the Transport layer indicates new register content from the device, the host adapter shall place the new register content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block and make a transition to the HA2: HA_NOTSEL state.

18.2 Device Emulation of nIEN with Interrupt Pending (Informative)

The informative behavior described in this section describes implementation considerations for designs that support commands that use Overlapped operations. Designs that do not support commands that use Overlapped operations are not affected.

This standard defines the I bit in Register Device to Host FIS's as the Interrupt pending state of the device, and it is not modified by the state of nIEN in received Host to Device FIS's. In this standard, devices ignore the nIEN bit in received Host to Device FIS's and always perform as if nIEN is cleared to zero. See Clauses 16.5.2 and 16.5.3.

Prior to the development of this standard, some devices used the nIEN bit of the Register Host to Device FIS as a pre-condition to the setting the Interrupt Pending flag (I-bit) of the Register Device to Host, and Set Device Bits FIS's.

The purpose of using nIEN to enable the I-bit was to emulate the operation of the parallel implementation of ATA (See Clause 13.3). In the parallel implementation, when nIEN is cleared to zero, the driver is enabled for the INTRQ line to the host. When nIEN is set to one, the INTRQ line is put into the high impedance state by the device. This function is typically used in devices that support Device 0 and Device 1 operation (See 13.3.3), and it is also required for Overlapped operation (See Volume 1).

In this standard, the implementation of Device 0/Device 1 emulation is performed exclusively by the Host (See 13.3.3).

Since operation prior to this standard was not uniformly implemented, the system designer should be aware of the limitations of those implementations. In most cases, the prior implementations are compatible with this standard. Some commands, however, may not operate in the same manner, or may require new device drivers for compatible operation. One example of this is when Overlapped/Queued operations are implemented with host host-parallel to device-serial bridges. With proper management of the nIEN and INTRQ bit to the parallel host, it is possible to emulate the parallel operation.

One serious side effect of device emulation of nIEN is the possibility of lost interrupts. In the parallel implementation, a host can disable interrupts, and upon re-enabling interrupts (by clearing nIEN to zero) see the INTRQ line again asserted. If a serial device is performing I-bit masking based on the state of nIEN, a Register Device to Host FIS may be received with I=0 (since it is masked by nIEN). The device, however, may have an Interrupt Pending at that time. When the host writes the Control Register with nIEN cleared to zero, it will not see the pending interrupt reflected by the assertion of INTRQ as in the parallel case. There is no way for the device to "re-send" the I=1 condition to the host. In this instance, the host will have to resort to a polling operation to resume the operation.

The system designer should be aware of the following:

1) The “I” bit is the Interrupt Pending flag for Serial ATA devices.

2) The behavior of the “I” bit may be modified by the state of the nIEN bit in devices implemented prior to this standard. Devices implemented prior to this standard may change the behavior of the “I” bit based on the current state of the nIEN bit, as last written by a Register Host to Device FIS with C=0 or C=1. Some devices do not write the nIEN bit when C=1.

3) There is no defined behavior for a device when nIEN bit changes and the modification of the behavior of the “I” bit by nIEN is vendor specific.

4) The host should set nIEN=0 in all Register HD FIS’s. This will result in the highest compatibility with this standard.

5) If a device supports nIEN emulation, and the nIEN bit is set to one by the host, the host device drivers should accommodate the case of no interrupt generation when nIEN is cleared to zero and the device has a pending interrupt.

19 Serial interface host adapter register interface

19.1 Overview

Serial implementations of ATA host adapters include an additional block of registers mapped separately and independently from the ATA Command Block Registers for reporting additional status and error information and to allow control of capabilities unique to the serial implementation of ATA. These additional registers, referred to as the SStatus and SControl Registers (SCRs) are organized as 16 contiguous 32-bit registers.

The base address and mapping scheme for these registers is defined by the specific host adapter implementation - for example, PCI controller implementations may map the SCRs using the PCI mapping capabilities. Table 29 illustrates the overall organization of the SStatus and SControl registers. Parallel implementations' ATA software does not make use of the serial interface SStatus and SControl registers. The SStatus and SControl register are associated with the serial interface and are independent of any Device 0/Device 1 emulation the host adapter may implement. For Command Block and Control Block register definitions see Clause 5.

Table 29 - SCR definition

		SStatus and SControl registers
SATA register	0	SATA Status/Control
SATA register	1	SATA Status/Control
…	…	SATA Status/Control
SATA register	14	SATA Status/Control
SATA register	15	SATA Status/Control

19.2 SStatus, SError and SControl registers

The serial implementation of ATA provides an additional block of registers to control the interface and to retrieve interface state information. There are 16 contiguous registers allocated of which the first three are defined and the remaining 13 are reserved for future definition. Table 30 defines the serial implementation of ATA Status and Control registers.

Table 30 - SCR Definition

SCR[0]	SStatus register
SCR[1]	SError register
SCR[2]	SControl register
SCR[3]	Reserved
…	…
SCR[15]	Reserved

19.2.1 SStatus register

The SStatus register is a 32-bit read-only register that conveys the current state of the interface and host adapter. The register conveys the interface state at the time it is read and is updated continuously and asynchronously by the host adapter. Writes to the register have no effect.

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCR0	Reserved (0)																				IPM				SPD				DET			

DET The DET value indicates the interface device detection and Phy state.
- 0000 No device detected and Phy commnunication not established
- 0001 Device presence detected but Phy communication not established
- 0011 Device presence detected and Phy communication established
- 0100 Phy in offline mode as a result of the interface being disabled or running in a BIST loopback mode

All other values reserved

SPD The SPD value indicates the negotiated interface communication speed established
- 0000 No negotiated speed (device not present or communication not established)
- 0001 Generation 1 communication rate negotiated

All other values reserved

IPM The IPM value indicates the current interface power management state
- 0000 Device not present or communication not established
- 0001 Interface in active state
- 0010 Interface in PARTIAL power management state
- 0110 Interface in SLUMBER power management state

All other values reserved

Reserved All reserved fields shall be cleared to zero.

NOTE – The interface must be in the active state for the interface device detection value (DET field) to be accurate. When the interface is in the partial or slumber state no communication between the host and target is established resulting in a DET value corresponding to no device present or no communication established. As a result the insertion or removal of a device may not be accurately detected under all conditions such as when the interface is quiescent as a result of being in sleep or slumber state. This field alone may therefore be insufficient to satisfy all the requirements for device attach or detatch detection during all possible interface states.

19.2.2 SError register

The SError register is a 32-bit register that conveys supplemental Interface error information to complement the error information available in the Shadow Error register. The register represents all the detected errors accumulated since the last time the SError register was cleared (whether recovered by the interface of not). Set bits in the error register are explicitly cleared by a write operation to the SError register, or a reset operation. The value written to clear set error bits shall have 1's encoded in the bit positions corresponding to the bits that are to be cleared. Host software should clear the Interface SError register at appropriate checkpoints in order to best isolate error conditions and the commands they impact.

	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SCR1	DIAG																ERR															
	R						F	T	S	H	C	D	B	W	I	N	R	R	R	R	E	P	C	T	R	R	R	R	R	R	M	I

ERR The ERR field contains error information for use by host software in determining the appropriate response to the error condition.

- C Non-recovered persistent communication or data integrity error: A communication error that was not recovered occurred that is expected to be persistent. Since the error condition is expected to be persistent the operation need not be retried by host software. Persistent communications errors may arise from faulty interconnect with the device, from a device that has been removed or has failed, or a number of other causes.
- E Internal error: The host bus adapter experienced an internal error that caused the operation to fail and may have put the host bus adapter into an error state. Host software should reset the interface before re-trying the operation. If the condition persists, the host bus adapter may suffer from a design issue rendering it incompatible with the attached device.
- I Recovered data integrity error: A data integrity error occurred that was recovered by the interface through a retry operation or other recovery action. This can arise from a noise burst in the transmission, a voltage supply variation, or from other causes. No action is required by host software since the operation ultimately succeeded, however, host software may elect to track such recovered errors in order to gauge overall communications integrity and step down the negotiated communication speed.
- M Recovered communications error: Communications between the device and host was temporarily lost but was re-established. This can arise from a device temporarily being removed, from a temporary loss of Phy synchronization, or from other causes and may be derived from the PhyNRdy signal between the Phy and Link layers. No action is required by the host software since the operation ultimately succeeded, however, host software may elect to track such recovered errors in order to gauge overall communications integrity and step down the negotiated communication speed.
- P Protocol error: A violation of the serial implementation of ATA protocol was detected. This can arise from invalid or poorly formed FIS's being received, from invalid state transitions, or from other causes. Host software should reset the interface and retry the corresponding operation. If such an error persists, the attached device may have a design issue rendering it incompatible with the host bus adapter.
- R Reserved bit for future use: shall be cleared to zero.
- T Non-recovered transient data integrity error: A data integrity error occurred that was not recovered by the interface. Since the error condition is not expected to be persistent the operation should be retried by host software.

DIAG The DIAG field contains diagnostic error information for use by diagnostic software in validating correct operation or isolating failure modes.

- B 10b to 8b Decode error: When set to a one, this bit indicates that one or more 10b to 8b decoding errors occurred since the bit was last cleared.
- C CRC Error: When set to one, this bit indicates that one or more CRC errors occurred with the Link Layer since the bit was last cleared.

D Disparity Error: When set to one, this bit indicates that incorrect disparity was detected one or more times since the last time the bit was cleared.

F Unrecognized FIS type: When set to one, this bit indicates that since the bit was last cleared one or more FIS's were received by the Transport layer with good CRC, but had a type field that was not recognized.

I Phy Internal Error: When set to one, this bit indicates that the Phy detected some internal error since the last time this bit was cleared.

N PhyRdy change: When set to one, this bit indicates that the PhyRdy signal changed state since the last time this bit was cleared.

H Handshake error: When set to one, this bit indicates that one or more R_ERR handshake response was received in response to frame transmission. Such errors may be the result of a CRC error detected by the recipient, a disparity or 10b/8b decoding error, or other error condition leading to a negative handshake on a transmitted frame.

R Reserved bit for future use: shall be cleared to zero.

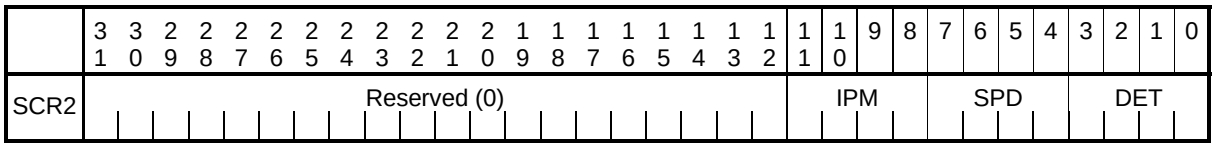
S Link Sequence Error: When set to one, this bit indicates that one or more Link state machine error conditions was encountered since the last time this bit was cleared. The Link Layer state machine defines the conditions under which the link layer detects an erroneous transition.

T Transport state transition error: When set to one, this bit indicates that an error has occurred in the transition from one state to another within the Transport layer since the last time this bit was cleared.

W COMWAKE: When set to one this bit indicates that a COMWAKE signal was detected by the Phy since the last time this bit was cleared (See Clause 14.5.6.2.5).

19.2.3 SControl register

The SControl register is a 32-bit read-write register that provides the interface by which software controls the serial ATA interface capabilities. Writes to the SControl register result in an action being taken by the host adapter or interface. Reads from the register return the last value written to it.



DET The DET field controls the host adapter device detection and interface initialization.
- 0000b No device detection or initialization action requested
- 0001b Perform interface communication initialization sequence to establish communication. This is functionally equivalent to a hard reset and results in the interface being reset and communications reinitialized. Upon a write to the SControl register that sets the LSB of the DET field to one, the host shall transition to the HP1:HR Reset state and shall remain in that state until the LSB of the DET field is cleared to zero by a subsequent write to the SControl register.
- 0100b Disable the interface and put Phy in offline mode.
- All other values reserved

SPD The SPD field represents the highest allowed communication speed the interface is allowed to negotiate when interface communication speed is established
- 0000b No speed negotiation restrictions
- 0001b Limit speed negotiation to a rate not greater than Generation 1 communication rate
- All other values reserved

IPM The IPM field represents the enabled interface power management states that can be invoked via the serial interface power management capabilities
- 0000b No interface power management state restrictions
- 0001b Transitions to the PARTIAL power management state disabled
- 0010b Transitions to the SLUMBER power management state disabled
- 0011b Transitions to both the PARTIAL and SLUMBER power management states disabled
- All other values reserved

Reserved All reserved fields shall be cleared to zero.

20 Serial interface error handling

20.1 Architecture

The layered architecture of the serial implementation of ATA extends to error handling as well. As indicated in Figure 107, each layer in the serial implementation stack has as input error indications from the next lower layer (except for the Physical layer which has no lower layer associated with it), data from the next lower layer in the stack, and data from the next higher layer in the stack. Each layer has its local error detection capability to identify errors specific to that layer based on the received data from the lower and higher layers. Each layer performs local recovery and control actions and may forward error information to the next higher layer in the stack.

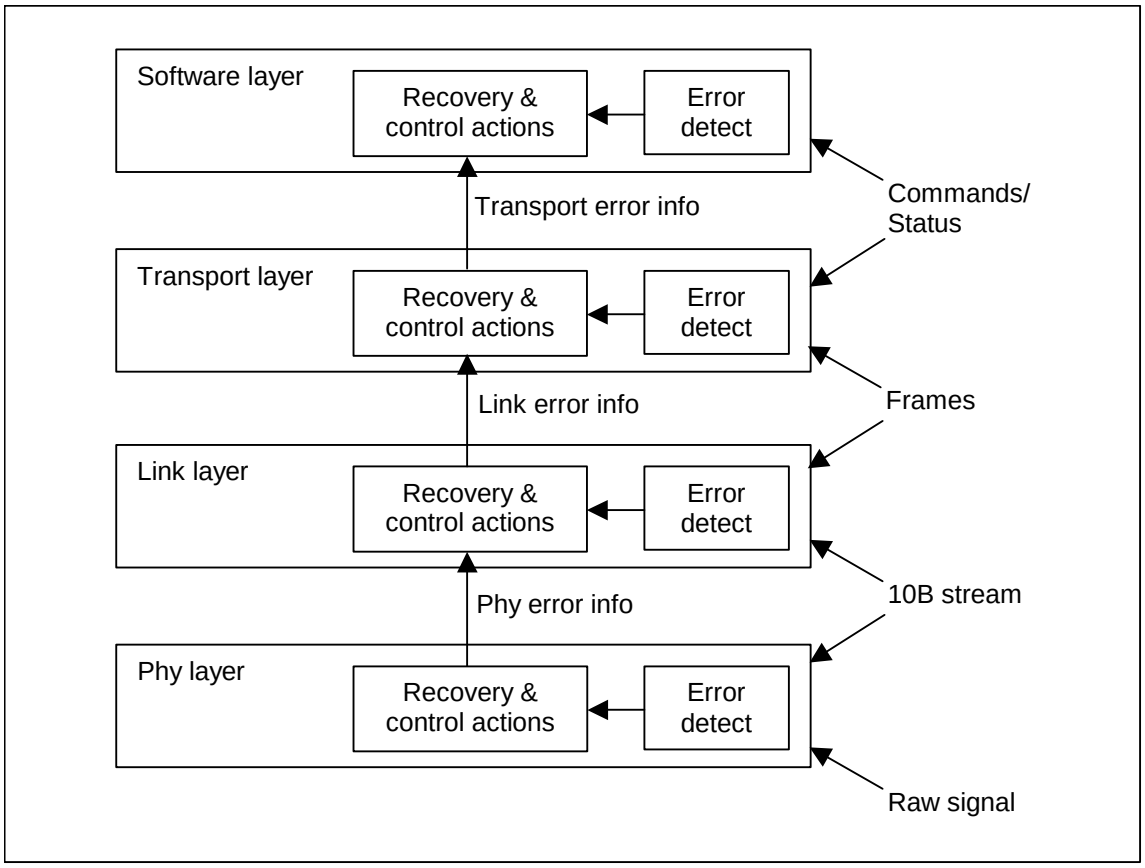


Figure 107 - Error handling architecture

Error responses are classified into four categories

Freeze
Abort
Retry
Track/ignore

The error handling responses described in this section are not comprehensive and are included to cover specific known error scenarios as well as to illustrate typical error control and recovery actions. This section is therefore descriptive and supplemental to the error reporting interface defined in 20 and implementations may vary in their internal error recovery and control actions.

For the most severe error conditions in which state has been critically perturbed in a way that it is not recoverable, the appropriate error response is to freeze and rely on a reset or similar operation to restore all necessary state to return to normal operation.

For error conditions that are expected to be persistent, the appropriate error response is to abort and fail the attempted operation. Such failures usually imply notification up the stack in order to inform host software of the condition.

For error conditions that are transient and not expected to persist, the appropriate response is to retry the failed operation. Only failed operations that have not perturbed system state are allowed to be retried. Such retries may either be handled directly by the recovery and error control actions in the relevant layer or may be handled by host software in response to error information being conveyed to it.

Non-critical recoverable conditions may either be tracked or ignored. Such conditions include those that were recovered through a retry or other recovery operation at a lower layer in the stack. Tracking such errors may often be beneficial in identifying a marginally operating component or other imminent failure.

20.2 Phy error handling overview

20.2.1 Error detection

There are three primary categories of error that the Physical layer detects internally:

- No device present
- OOB signaling sequence failure
- Phy internal error (loss of synchronization of communications link)

A no device present condition results from a physical disconnection in the media between the host adapter and device, whether intermittent or persistent. The host adapter shall detect device presence as part of the interface reset sequence defined in 20.2.2.1.

An OOB signaling failure condition arises when the sequence of OOB signaling events cannot be completed, prior to declaration of the "Phy Ready" state. OOB signaling sequences are required when emerging from a power management "partial" or "slumber" state, from a "loopback/BIST" test state, or from initial power-up. OOB signaling sequences are used to achieve a specifically ordered exchange of COMRESET, COMINIT, COMWAKE, and ALIGN patterns to bring the communications link up between host adapter and device. The specific sequences are detailed in Clause 14.

A Phy Internal Error can arise from a number of conditions, whether it is caused by the characteristics of the input signal, or an internal error unique to the implementation, it will always result in the loss of the synchronization of the communications link.

Fixed local receive PLL frequency architectures (oversampling, tracking/non-tracking) are sensitive to input data rate frequency variations from the nominal expected rate, thus they usually have elasticity buffers. Elasticity buffers are used to accommodate the difference between input data rate frequency, and the local receive PLL frequency -- overrun/underrun conditions will occur if the Tx difference in frequency is too high/low with respect to the Rx local PLL frequency, commonly declared as a Phy Internal Error.

VCO-based (PLL) clock recovery architectures are also sensitive to input data rate frequency variations, high frequency jitter, and may have trouble achieving lock -- which may be declared as a Phy Internal Error.

A number of state machine, impedance compensation, and serializer/deserializer (SerDes) circuits make up a typical the serial ATA interface Phy, and the various types of error conditions may be grouped together to make up the declared "Phy Internal Error". These errors are usually specific to each implementation.

20.2.2 Error control actions

20.2.2.1 No device present

Due to the nature of the physical interface, it is possible for the Phy to determine that a device is attached to the cable at various times. As a direct result, the Phy is responsible for detecting presence of an attached device and this presence shall be reported in the SStatus register such that host software can respond appropriately.

During the interface initialization sequence, an internal state bit “Device Detect” shall be cleared in the host adapter when the COMRESET signal is issued. The “Device Detect” state bit shall be set in the host adapter when the host adapter detects a COMINIT signal from the attached device. The “Device Detect” state bit corresponds to the device presence detect information in the SStatus register defined in 19.2.

Note that device presence and communications established are separately reported in the SStatus register in order to encompass situations in which an attached device is detected by the Phy, but the Phy is unable to establish communications with it.

20.2.2.2 OOB signaling sequence failure

The Phy does not have any timeout conditions for the interface reset signaling sequence as defined in 14.5.6.2. If a device is present, the Phy shall detect device presence within 10ms of a power-on reset (i.e. COMINIT must be returned within 10ms of an issued COMRESET). If a device is not present, the Phy is not required to time-out and may remain in the reset state indefinitely until host software intervenes. Upon successful completion of the interface initialization sequence, the Phy is ready, active, and synchronized, and the SStatus register bits shall reflect this as defined in 19.2.1.

20.2.2.3 Phy internal error

As described in 20.2.1, there are several potential sources of errors categorized as “Phy Internal Errors.” In order to accommodate a range of implementations without making the software error handling approach implementation dependent, all the different potential sources of internal Phy errors are combined for the purpose of reporting the condition in the SError register as defined in 19.2.2. This requirement does not preclude each vendor from implementing their own level of error diagnostic bits, but those shall reside in vendor specific register locations.

Phy internal errors that result in the Phy becoming not ready (the PhyRdy signal being negated) and the corresponding SStatus register and SError registers bits shall be updated as defined in 19.2.2.

The "Phy Ready Change" bit, as defined in the SError Register, is updated as per its definition in 19.2.2

20.2.3 Error reporting

Phy errors are reported to the Link layer in addition to being reflected in the SStatus register and SError registers as defined in 19.2.2.

20.3 Link error handling overview

20.3.1 Error detection

There are two primary categories of errors that the Link layer detects internally:

Invalid state transitions
Data integrity errors

Invalid state transition errors can arise from a number of sources and the Link layer responses to many such error conditions are defined in Clause 15. Data integrity errors generally arise from noise in the physical interconnect.

20.3.2 Error control actions

Errors detected by the Link during a transmission are handled by accumulating the errors until the end of the transmission and reflecting the reception error condition in the final R_ERR/R_OK handshake. Specific scenarios are listed in the following sections.

20.3.2.1 Invalid state transitions

Invalid state transitions are handled through the return to a known state, for example where the Link state diagrams in 15.7 define the responses for invalid state transition attempts. Returning to a known state is achieved through two recovery paths depending on the state of the system.

If the invalid state transitions are attempted during the transmission of a frame (after the receipt of an SOF), the Link shall signal negative acknowledgement (R_ERR) to the transmitting agent.
If the invalid state transition is not during a frame transmission, the Link shall go directly to the idle state, and await the next operation.

The following paragraphs outline the requirements during specific state transition scenarios, and their respective Link error control actions:

Following reception of one or more consecutive X_RDY at the receiver interface, if the next control character received is not SOF, the Link shall notify the Transport Layer of the condition and transition to the idle state.

Following transmission of X_RDY, if there is no returned R_RDY received, no Link recovery action shall be attempted. The higher-level layers will eventually time out, and reset the interface.

On receipt of an unexpected SOF, when the receiving interface had not yet signaled readiness to receive data with the R_RDY signal, that receiving interface shall remain in the idle state issuing SYNC primitives until the transmitting interface terminates the transmission and also returns to the idle state.

If the transmitter closes a frame with EOF and WTRM, and receives neither a R_OK nor an R_ERR within a predetermined timeout, no Link recovery action shall be attempted. The higher-level layers will eventually time out, and reset the interface.

If the transmitter signals EOF, and a control character other than SYNC, R_OK, or R_ERR is received, the Link layer shall persistently continue to await reception of a proper terminating primitive.

20.3.2.2 Data integrity errors:

Data integrity errors are handled by signaling the Transport Layer in order to potentially trigger a transmission retry operation, or to convey failed status information to the host software. In order to return to a known state, data integrity errors are usually signaled via the frame acknowledgement handshake, at the end of a frame transmission, before returning to the idle state.

The following paragraphs outline the requirements during specific data integrity error scenarios, and the respective Link error control actions:

On detection of a CRC error at the end of receiving a frame (at EOF), the Link Layer shall notify the Transport Layer that the received frame contains a CRC error. Furthermore, the Link Layer shall issue the negative acknowledgement, R_ERR, as the frame status handshake, and shall return to the idle state.

On detection of a disparity error or other 8b/10b coding violation during the receipt of a frame, the Link Layer will retain this error information, and at the close of the received frame the Link Layer shall provide the negative acknowledgement, R_ERR, as the frame handshake, and shall notify the Transport Layer of the error.

The control actions are the same for coding violations as for CRC errors.

20.3.3 Error reporting

Link error conditions are reported to the Transport layer in a vendor specific interface between the Link and Transport Layers. Additionally, Link errors are reported in the Interface Error register as defined 19.2.2.

20.4 Transport error handling

20.4.1 Overview

The Transport layer communicates errors to the software and/or performs local error recovery, and initiates control actions, such as retrying FIS transmissions

The Transport layer informs the Link layer of detected errors so that the Link layer can reflect Transport errors in the R_ERR/R_OK handshake at the end of each frame. Devices shall reflect any R_ERR frame handshakes in the command ending status for Data FIS's reflected in the transmitted register FIS that conveys the operation ending status. The Transport layer also reflects any encountered error information in the Interface Error register.

The Transport may retry any non-Data FIS transmission, provided the system state has not changed as a result of the corresponding failure, and may retry any number of times. For scenarios where repeated retry operations persistently fail, host software will time out the corresponding command and perform recovery operations.

20.4.2 Error detection

In addition to the error information passed to it by the Link layer, the Transport layer internally detects the following categories of errors:

Internal errors
Frame errors
Protocol errors & state errors

There are several kinds of internal errors to the Transport layer, including overflow/underflow of the various speed matching FIFOs. Internal errors are handled by failing the corresponding transaction, and returning to a state equivalent to a failed transaction (e. g. the state that would result from a bad CRC).

The Transport layer detects several kinds of frame errors including reception of frames with incorrect CRC, reception of frames with invalid TYPE field, and reception of ill-formed frames (such as a register frames that are not the correct length). Frame errors are handled by failing the corresponding transaction and returning to a state equivalent to a failed transaction (such as the state that would result from a bad CRC).

Protocol and state transition errors stem from devices not following the serial implementation of ATA protocol, and include errors such as, the PIO count value not matching the number of data characters subsequently transferred, and errors in the sequence of events.

Protocol and state transition errors are handled by failing the corresponding transaction and returning to a state equivalent to a failed transaction (such as the state that would result from a frame being received with a bad CRC).

20.4.3 Error control actions

20.4.3.1 Internal errors

Internal errors are handled by failing the corresponding transaction and either re-trying the transaction or notifying host software of the failure condition in order to ultimately generate a host software retry response. The following are specific internal error scenarios and their corresponding Transport error control actions.

If the receive FIFO overflows, the Transport layer shall signal frame reception negative acknowledgement, by signaling the Link layer to return R_ERR during the frame acknowledgement handshake. Subsequent actions are equivalent to a frame reception with erroneous CRC.

If the transmit FIFO underruns, the Transport layer shall close the transmitting frame with an EOF and CRC value that is forced to be incorrect in order to ensure the recipient of the corrupted frame also executes

appropriate error control actions. This scenario results only from a transmitter design problem and should not occur for properly implemented devices.

20.4.3.2 Frame errors

Frame errors may be handled in one of two ways depending on whether the error is expected to be transient or persistent and whether system state has been perturbed.

For error conditions expected to be transient (such as a CRC error), and for which the system state has not been perturbed, the Transport layer may retry the corresponding transaction any number of times until ultimately a host timeout and software reset, or other error recovery attempt is made.

For error conditions that are not a result of a transient error condition (such as an invalid TYPE field in a received FIS), the error response is to fail the transaction and report the failure.

The following are specific frame error scenarios and their corresponding Transport error control actions.

If the Transport receives an FIS with an invalid CRC signaled from the Link layer, the Transport layer shall signal the Link layer to negatively acknowledge frame reception by asserting R_ERR during the frame acknowledgement handshake.

The transmitter of a negatively acknowledged frame may retry the FIS transmission provided the system state has not been perturbed.Frame types that may be retransmitted are:

Register - Host to Device
Register - Device to Host
DMA Activate - Device to Host
First Party DMA Setup - Device to Host
PIO Setup - Device to Host
Set Device Bits - Device to Host

Because data transmission FIS's result in a change in the host bus adapter's internal state, either through the DMA controller changing its state or through a change in the remaining PIO repetition count, data transmission FIS's shall not be retried.

The Transport layer is not required to retry those failed FIS transmissions that do not change system state, but the Transport layer may attempt retry any number of times. For conditions that are not addressed through retries, such as persistent errors, host software will eventually time out the transaction and reset the interface.

If the Transport Layer detects reception of an FIS with unrecognized TYPE value, the Transport Layer shall signal the Link Layer to negatively acknowledge the frame reception by asserting R_ERR during the frame acknowledgement handshake.

If the Transport Layer detects reception of a malformed frame, such as a frame with incorrect length, the Transport Layer shall signal the Link Layer to negatively acknowledge the frame reception by asserting R_ERR during the frame acknowledgement handshake.

20.4.3.3 Protocol and state transition errors

Protocol and state errors stem from devices not following defined protocol. Such errors may be handled by failing the corresponding transactions and returning to a known state. Since such errors are not caused by an environmental transient, no attempt to retry such failed operations should be made. The following are specific frame error scenarios and their corresponding Transport error control actions.

If the PIO transfer count expires, and two symbols later is not the EOF control character (the CRC falls between the last data character and the EOF), the transfer count stipulated in the PIO Setup FIS did not match the size of the subsequent data payload. For this data-payload/transfer-count mismatch, the Transport

Layer shall signal the Link Layer to negatively acknowledge frame reception by asserting R_ERR during the frame acknowledgement handshake.

20.4.4 Error reporting

The Transport Layer reports errors to host software via the Shadow Status and Shadow Control registers. Devices communicate Transport error information to host software via transmitting a register FIS to update the ATA Shadow Status and Shadow Error register values.

Transport error conditions that are not handled/recovered by the Transport layer shall set the error bit in the Shadow Status register, and update the value in the Error register through transmission of an appropriate Register FIS.

Host Transport error conditions shall result in the status and error values in the SStatus and SError register being updated with values corresponding to the error condition and shall result in the Link layer being notified to negatively acknowledge the offending FIS during the final reception handshake.

20.5 Software error handling overview

The software layer error handling is in part defined by the error outputs of the specific command as defined in Volume 1. In addition, there are superset error reporting capabilities supported by the Transport layer through the SCRs, and software may take advantage of those error reporting capabilities to improve error handling for serial implementations of ATA.

20.5.1 Error detection

There are three error detection mechanisms by which software identifies and responds to the serial implementation of ATA errors

- Bad status in the Command Block Status register
- Bad status in the serial implementation of ATA SError register
- Command failed to complete (timeout)

Conditions that return bad status in the Command Block Status register, but for which no serial implementation interface error information is available, correspond to the error conditions specified in the command descriptions. Such error conditions and responses are defined in the command descriptions and there is no unique handling of those in the serial implementation of ATA. Errors in this category include command errors, such as attempts to read from an LBA past the end of the disk, as well as device-specific failures such as data not readable from the given LBA. These failures are not related to the serial implementation of ATA interface, and thus no the serial implementation of ATA specific interface status information is available for these error conditions. Only the status information returned by the device is available for identifying the source of the problem, plus any available SMART data that might apply.

Transport layer error conditions, whether recovered or not, are reflected in the SStatus and SError registers as defined in 19.2.2. The host Transport layer is responsible for reflecting error information in the SStatus and SError registers, while the device Transport layer is responsible for reflecting unrecovered errors in the Shadow Status and Error registers through transmission of appropriate Register FIS's.

Commands that fail to complete are detected by host driver software through a timeout mechanism. Such timeouts may not result in status or error information for the command being conveyed to host software and software may not be able to determine the source or cause of such errors.

20.5.2 Error control actions

Conditions that return bad status in the Shadow Status register but for which no interface error information in the SError register is available shall be handled as defined in the parallel implementation.

Conditions that return interface error information in the SError register are handled through four basic responses:

Freeze
Abort/Fail
Retry (possible after reset)
Track/ignore

Error conditions that are not expected to be transient and which are not expected to succeed with subsequent attempts should result in the affected command being aborted and failed. Failure of such commands should be reported to higher software layers for handling. Scenarios in which this response is appropriate include attempts to communicate with a device that is not attached, and failure of the interface to successfully negotiate communications with an attached device.

Error conditions that are expected to be transient should result in the affected command being retried. Such commands may either be retried directly or may be retried after an interface and/or DEVICE RESET,

depending on the particular error value reported in the SError register. Scenarios in which this response is appropriate include noise events resulting in CRC errors, 8b/10b code violations, or disparity errors.

Conditions that are recoverable and for which no explicit error handling is required may be tracked or ignored. Tracking such errors allows subsequent fault isolation for marginal components and accommodates possible recovery operations. Scenarios in which this response is appropriate include tracking the number of Phy synchronization losses in order to identify a potential cable fault or to accommodate an explicit reduction in the negotiated communications rate.

ANNEX A. BIBLIOGRAPHY (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 1)

ANNEX B. COMMAND SET SUMMARY (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 1)

ANNEX C. DESIGN AND PROGRAMMING CONSIDERTIONS FOR LARGE PHYSICAL SECTOR SIZES (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 1)

ANNEX D. DEVICE DETERMINATION OF CABLE TYPE (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 2)

ANNEX E. SIGNAL INTEGRITY AND UDMA GUIDE (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 2)

ANNEX F. REGISTER SELECTION ADDRESS SUMMARY (INFORMATIVE) (SEE VOLUME 2)

ANNEX G. SAMPLE CODE FOR SERIAL CRC SCRAMBLING (INFORMATIVE)

G.1 CRC calculation

G.1.1 Overview

The following section provides an informative implementation of the Serial ATA CRC polynomial. The example is intended as an aid in verifying a HDL implementation of the algorithm.

G.1.2 aximum frame size

The 32-bit CRC used by the serial implementation of ATA can be shown to provide detection of two 10-bit errors up to a maximum frame size of 16384 bytes. This will provide for future expansion of the serial implementation of ATA FIS's to a maximum of 64 bytes of fixed overhead while still permitting a maximum user data payload of 8192 bytes.

G.1.3 Example code for CRC algorithm

The following code, written in C, illustrates an implementation of the CRC algorithm. A Register Host to Device FIS containing a PIO write command is used as example input. The CRC calculated is the check DWORD appended to a transmitted serial stream immediately preceding the EOF primitive. The code displays both the resulting command FIS and the intermediate CRC polynomial values. The GNU tool chain will compile the code using the following command:

"gcc -o crc.exe crc.c"

This code is supplied for illustrative purposes only.

```
/*****************************************************************************/
/*                                                                           */
/* crc.c                                                                     */
/*                                                                           */
/* This sample code reads standard in for a sequence of 32 bit values       */
/* formatted in hexadecimal with a leading "0x" (e.g. 0xDEADBEEF).  The      */
/* code calculates the serial ATA CRC for the input data stream.  The        */
/* generator polynomial used is:                                             */
/*         32   26   23   22   16   12   11   10   8   7   5   4   2        */
/* G(x) = x  + x  + x  + x  + x  + x  + x  + x  + x + x + x + x + x + x + 1 */
/*                                                                           */
/* This sample code uses a parallel implementation of the CRC calculation   */
/* circuit that is suitable for implementation in hardware.  A block         */
/* diagram of the circuit being emulated is shown below.                     */
/*                                                                           */
/*                      +---+          +---+          +---+                 */
/*   Data_In ---------->|   |          |   |          | R |                 */
/*                      | + |--------->| * |--------->| e |----+            */
/*               +----->|   |          |   |          | g |    |            */
/*               |      +---+          +---+          +---+    |            */
/*               |                                             |            */
/*               |                                             |            */
/*               +---------------------------------------------+            */
/*                                                                           */
```

```
/* The CRC value is initialized to 0x52325032                                 */
/*                                                                            */
/*                                                                            */
/******************************************************************************/

#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>

main(argc,argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];
{
   int               i,
                     data_count;
   unsigned int      crc,
                     data_in;
   unsigned char     crc_bit[32],
                     new_bit[32];


   crc = 0x52325032;
   data_count = 0;

   while (scanf(" 0x%8x", &data_in) == 1)  {
      data_count++;
      /* Add the data_in value to the current value of the CRC held in the  */
      /* "register".  The addition is performed modulo two (XOR).           */
      crc ^= data_in;
      /* Expand the value of the CRC held in the register to 32 individual  */
      /* bits for easy manipulation.                                        */
      for (i = 0; i < 32; ++i)  {
         crc_bit[i] = (crc >> i) & 0x01;
      }

      /* The following 32 assignments perform the function of the box       */
      /* labeled "*" in the block diagram above.  The new_bit array is a    */
      /* temporary holding place for the new CRC value being calculated.    */
      /* Note that there are lots of shared terms in the assignments below. */
      new_bit[31] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^
crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
                    crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[8]  ^
crc_bit[5];
      new_bit[30] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^
crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
                    crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[4];
      new_bit[29] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^
crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
                    crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[3];
      new_bit[28] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[25] ^
crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[22] ^
                    crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[2];
      new_bit[27] = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[21] ^
                    crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^
crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[26] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[22] ^
                    crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^
                    crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[25] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[21] ^
crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[18] ^
```

```
                    crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^
crc_bit[2];
      new_bit[24] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[17] ^
                    crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^
crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[23] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[17] ^
                    crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[1]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[22] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
                    crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[11] ^
crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[21] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[18] ^
                    crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[5];
      new_bit[20] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[17] ^
                    crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[4];
      new_bit[19] = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[22] ^
crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[16] ^
                    crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[3];
      new_bit[18] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
                    crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[2];
      new_bit[17] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
                    crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[16] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[22] ^
crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
                    crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^
crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[15] = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[16] ^
                    crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^
                    crc_bit[3];
      new_bit[14] = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[15] ^
                    crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^
                    crc_bit[2];
      new_bit[13] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[16] ^
                    crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^
                    crc_bit[2]  ^ crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[12] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[21] ^
crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[17] ^
                    crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^
                    crc_bit[2]  ^ crc_bit[1]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[11] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[25] ^
crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
                    crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[12] ^
crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^
                    crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[1]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[10] = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[14] ^
                    crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^
crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[9]  = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[13] ^
crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[11] ^
```

```
                    crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^ crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[8]  = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[23] ^ crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[17] ^
crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[11] ^
                    crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[1]  ^
crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[7]  = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[23] ^
crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[21] ^
                    crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[3]  ^
                    crc_bit[2]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[6]  = crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[22] ^ crc_bit[21] ^
crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[14] ^
                    crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^
crc_bit[4]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^
                    crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[5]  = crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[21] ^ crc_bit[20] ^
crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[13] ^
                    crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[5]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^
crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[1]  ^
                    crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[4]  = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
crc_bit[20] ^ crc_bit[19] ^
                    crc_bit[18] ^ crc_bit[15] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[8]  ^
crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[4]  ^
                    crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[3]  = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[19] ^ crc_bit[18] ^
crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[15] ^
                    crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[3]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^
                    crc_bit[1];
      new_bit[2]  = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[26] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[18] ^
crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[16] ^
                    crc_bit[14] ^ crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[8]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^
crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[2]  ^
                    crc_bit[1]  ^ crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[1]  = crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[27] ^ crc_bit[24] ^ crc_bit[17] ^ crc_bit[16] ^
crc_bit[13] ^ crc_bit[12] ^
                    crc_bit[11] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[7]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^ crc_bit[1]  ^
crc_bit[0];
      new_bit[0]  = crc_bit[31] ^ crc_bit[30] ^ crc_bit[29] ^ crc_bit[28] ^ crc_bit[26] ^
crc_bit[25] ^ crc_bit[24] ^
                    crc_bit[16] ^ crc_bit[12] ^ crc_bit[10] ^ crc_bit[9]  ^ crc_bit[6]  ^
crc_bit[0];


      /* The new CRC value has been calculated as individual bits in the    */
      /* new_bit array.  Re-assembled it into a 32 bit value and "clock" it */
      /* into the "register".                                               */
      crc = 0;
      for (i = 31; i >= 0; --i)  {
         crc = crc << 1;
         crc |= new_bit[i];
      }
      printf("Running CRC value is 0x%08X\n", crc);
   }

   printf("\n\nThe total number of data words processed was %d\n", data_count);
   printf("The CRC is 0x%08X\n\n", crc);

   return 0;
}
```

G.1.4 Example CRC implementation output

The following is the sample data used as input for the example stored in file *sample*:

```
0x00308027
0xE1234567
0x00000000
0x00000002
0x00000000
```

Executing the command *./crc* < *sample* yields the following output:

```
Running CRC value is 0x11E353FD
Running CRC value is 0x0F656DA7
Running CRC value is 0x3D14369C
Running CRC value is 0x92D0D681
Running CRC value is 0x319FFF6F


The total number of data words processed was 5
The CRC is 0x319FFF6F
```

G.2 Scrambling calculation

G.2.1 Overview

The following section provides an informative implementation of the scrambling polynomial. The example is intended as an aid in verifying a HDL implementation of the algorithm.

G.2.2 Example code for scrambling algorithm

The following code, written in C, illustrates an implementation of the Scrambling algorithm. A Register Host to Device FIS containing a PIO write command is used as example input. The code displays both the resulting scrambled data and the raw output of the scrambler. The GNU tool chain will compile the code using the following command:

"gcc -o scramble.exe scramble.c"

This code is supplied for illustrative purposes only.

```
/*****************************************************************************/
/*                                                                           */
/* scramble.c                                                                */
/*                                                                           */
/* This sample code generates the entire sequence of 65535 DWORDs produced   */
/* by the scrambler defined in this standard.  The                           */
/* standard calls for an LFSR to generate a string of bits that will         */
/* be packaged into 32 bit DWORDs to be XORed with the data DWORDs.  The     */
/* generator polynomial specified is:                                        */
/*                          16   15   13   4                                 */
/*                 G(x) = x  + x  + x  + x + 1                               */
/*                                                                           */
/* Parallelized versions of the scrambler are initialized to a value         */
/* derived from the initialization value of 0xFFFF defined in the            */
/* standard.  This implementation is initialized to 0xF0F6.  Other           */
/* parallel implementations will have different initial values.  The         */
/* important point is that the first DWORD output of any implementation      */
/* shall equal 0xC2D2768D.                                                   */
/*                                                                           */
/* This code does not represent an elegant solution for a C implementation,  */
/* but it does demonstrate a method of generating the sequence that can be   */
/* easily implemented in hardware.  A block diagram of the circuit emulated  */
/* by this code is shown below.                                              */
/*                                                                           */
/*         +-----------------------------------+                             */
/*         |                                   |                             */
/*         |                                   |                             */
/*         |     +---+               +---+     |                             */
/*         |     | R |               | * |     |                             */
/*         +---->| e |----------+--->| M |----+----> Output(31 downto 16)   */
/*               | g |          |    | 1 |                                  */
/*               +---+          |    +---+                                  */
/*                              |                                           */
/*                              |    +---+                                  */
/*                              |    | * |                                  */
/*                              +--->| M |---------> Output(15 downto 0)    */
/*                                   | 2 |                                  */
/*                                   +---+                                  */
/*                                                                           */
/* The register shown in the block diagram is a 16 bit register.  The two    */
/* boxes, *M1 and *M2, each represent a multiply by a 16 by 16 binary        */
/* matrix.  A 16 by 16 matrix times a 16 bit vector yields a 16 bit vector.  */
/* The two vectors are the two halves of the 32 bit scrambler value.  The    */
/* upper half of the scrambler value is stored back into the context         */
/* register to be used to generate the next value in the scrambler           */
/* sequence.                                                                 */
/*                                                                           */
/*****************************************************************************/

#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>


main(argc,argv)
int argc;
char *argv[];


{
   int               i, j;
   unsigned short    context;        /* The 16 bit register that holds the context or
state */
   unsigned long     scrambler;      /* The 32 bit output of the circuit    */
   unsigned char     now[16];        /* The individual bits of context      */
   unsigned char     next[32];       /* The computed bits of scrambler      */
```

```
   /* Parallelized versions of the scrambler are initialized to a value     */
   /* derived from the initialization value of 0xFFFF defined in the        */
   /* standard.  This implementation is initialized to 0xF0F6.  Other  */
   /* parallel implementations will have different initial values.  The     */
   /* important point is that the first DWORD output of any implementation  */
   /* must equal 0xC2D2768D.                                                 */
   context = 0xF0F6;


   for (i = 0; i < 65535; ++i)  {
      /* Split the register contents (the variable context) up into its     */
      /* individual bits for easy handling.                                 */
      for (j = 0; j < 16; ++j)  {
         now[j] = (context >> j) & 0x01;
      }

      /* The following 16 assignments implement the matrix multiplication   */
      /* performed by the box labeled *M1.                                  */
      /* Notice that there are lots of shared terms in these assignments.   */
      next[31] = now[12] ^ now[10] ^ now[7]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[30] = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[9]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[3]  ^
now[2]  ^ now[0];
      next[29] = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[8]  ^ now[5]  ^
now[3]  ^ now[2]  ^ now[1];
      next[28] = now[14] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[4]  ^
now[2]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[27] = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^
now[8]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[26] = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^
now[5]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[0];
      next[25] = now[15] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[4]  ^
now[3]  ^ now[2];
      next[24] = now[14] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[3]  ^
now[2]  ^ now[1];
      next[23] = now[13] ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[2]  ^
now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[22] = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[1]  ^
now[0];
      next[21] = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[0];
      next[20] = now[15] ^ now[11] ^ now[5]  ^ now[4];
      next[19] = now[14] ^ now[10] ^ now[4]  ^ now[3];
      next[18] = now[13] ^ now[9]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[2];
      next[17] = now[12] ^ now[8]  ^ now[2]  ^ now[1];
      next[16] = now[11] ^ now[7]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];

      /* The following 16 assignments implement the matrix multiplication   */
      /* performed by the box labeled *M2.                                  */
      next[15] = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[12] ^ now[10] ^ now[6]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[0];
      next[14] = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[9]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[3]  ^
now[2];
      next[13] = now[14] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[8]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[2]  ^
now[1];
      next[12] = now[13] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[1]  ^
now[0];
      next[11] = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[3]  ^
now[2]  ^ now[0];
      next[10] = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[5]  ^
now[3]  ^ now[2]  ^ now[1];
      next[9]  = now[14] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[4]  ^
now[2]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[8]  = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[13] ^ now[12] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[7]  ^
now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[7]  = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[11] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^
now[4]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[0];
```

```
      next[6]  = now[15] ^ now[10] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[2];
      next[5]  = now[14] ^ now[9]  ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[1];
      next[4]  = now[13] ^ now[8]  ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[2]  ^ now[0];
      next[3]  = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[7]  ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[3]  ^ now[2]  ^
now[1];
      next[2]  = now[14] ^ now[13] ^ now[6]  ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[2]  ^ now[1]  ^
now[0];
      next[1]  = now[15] ^ now[14] ^ now[13] ^ now[5]  ^ now[4]  ^ now[1]  ^ now[0];
      next[0]  = now[15] ^ now[13] ^ now[4]  ^ now[0];

      /* The 32 bits of the output have been generated in the "next" array. */
      /* Reassemble the bits into a 32 bit DWORD.                           */
      scrambler = 0;
      for (j = 31; j >= 0; --j)  {
         scrambler = scrambler << 1;
         scrambler |= next[j];
      }
      /* The upper half of the scrambler output is stored backed into the   */
      /* register as the saved context for the next cycle.                  */
      context = scrambler >> 16;
      printf("0x%08X\n", scrambler);

   }

   return 0;

}
```

G.2.3 Example scrambler implementation

The following lists the first 32 results generated by the scrambler and the C sample code listed above.

```
0xC2D2768D
0x1F26B368
0xA508436C
0x3452D354
0x8A559502
0xBB1ABE1B
0xFA56B73D
0x53F60B1B
0xF0809C41
0x747FC34A
0xBE865291
0x7A6FA7B6
0x3163E6D6
0xF036FE0C
0x1EF3EA29
0xEB342694
0x53853B17
0xE94ADC4D
0x5D200E88
0x6901EDD0
0xFA9E38DE
0x68DB4B07
0x450A437B
0x960DD708
0x3F35E698
0xFE7698A5
0xC80EF715
0x666090AF
```

0xFAF0D5CB
0x2B82009F
0x0E317491
0x76F46A1E

G.3 Example frame

The following table shows the steps and values used in the transmission of a simple FIS.

For LBA = 1234567 and Sector Count = 2

Table 31 - CRC and scrambler calculation example - PIO Write Command

FIS Data	Scrambler Value	Scrambled Data	Accumulated CRC Value	Comments
3737B57C	N/A	3737B57C	N/A	SOF, primitives not scrambled, scrambler reset
00308027	C2D2768D	C2E2F6AA	11E353FD	RegH2D, Command = 30, Cbit set
E1234567	1F26B368	FE05F60F	0F656DA7	LBA 1234567
00000000	A508436C	A508436C	3D14369C	Extended LBA = 0
00000002	3452D354	3452D356	92D0D681	Control Reg = 0, 2 sectors
00000000	8A559502	8A559502	319FFF6F	reserved = 0
319FFF6F	BB1ABE1B	8A854174	N/A	CRC
D5D5B57C	N/A	D5D5B57C	N/A	EOF, primitives not scrambled

NOTE – All values in hexadecimal, shown 31:0.

The transmitted DWORDs for this register FIS, prior to 8b/10b encoding, are :

SOF
C2E2F6AA
FE05F60F
A508436C
3452D356
8A559502
8A854174
EOF

ANNEX H. FIS TYPE FIELD VALUE SELECTION (INFORMATIVE)

H.1 Overview

The values for the TYPE field of the FIS's have been selected in order to provide additional robustness. In minimally buffered implementations that may not buffer a complete FIS, the state machines may begin acting on the received FIS TYPE value prior to the ending CRC having been checked. Because the TYPE value may be acted upon prior to the integrity of the complete FIS being checked against its ending CRC, the TYPE field values have been selected to maximize the Hamming distance between them.

Several considerations are made in selecting the TYPE field values. Since the value is 8b/10b encoded, the Hamming distance for the values after 10b encoding is maximized. Since the starting running disparity at the time the TYPE field is transmitted is not known, values have been selected that have the same encoding for both negative and positive starting running disparity.

H.2 Type field values

Table H.1 lists the selected TYPE field values (with their 10b encoding) that have a Hamming distance of 4 or greater in the 10b space after scrambling and encoding and which have the same encoding for both positive and negative running disparity.

Table 32 - Type field values

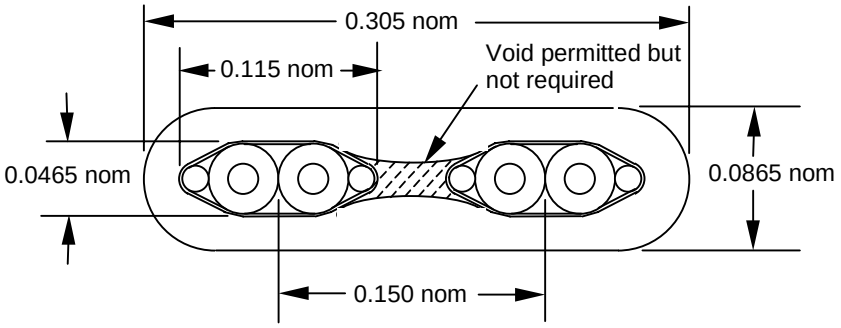
Type field value (hex)	Scrambler syndrome[1] (hex)	8b scrambled value (hex)	10b encoding (binary)	Current assignment
0x27	0x8D	0xAA	0101011010	Register - host to device
0x34	0x8D	0xB9	1001101010	Register - device to host
0x39	0x8D	0xB4	0010111010	DMA activate
0x41	0x8D	0xCC	0011010110	DMA setup
0x46	0x8D	0xCB	1101000110	Data
0x58	0x8D	0xD5	1010100110	BIST activate
0x5F	0x8D	0xD2	0100110110	PIO setup
0xA1	0x8D	0x2C	0011011001	Set device bits
0xA6	0x8D	0x2B	1101001001	Reserved
0xB8	0x8D	0x35	1010101001	Reserved
0xBF	0x8D	0x32	0100111001	Reserved
0xC7	0x8D	0x4A	0101010101	Reserved
0xD4	0x8D	0x59	1001100101	Reserved
0xD9	0x8D	0x54	0010110101	Reserved

NOTE –
1. The scrambler syndrome generator is reset on the SOF primitive and the type field value immediately follows the SOF primitive. The scrambler syndrome at the time the type field value is transmitted is therefore deterministic and is equal to the seed used for the scrambling generator. See the scrambler generator section for more information on the details of the scrambler and its generated syndromes.

ANNEX I. PHYSICAL LAYER IMPLEMENTATION EXAMPLES (INFORMATIVE)

I.1 Cable construction example

Figure 108 shows a cable construction example.



Electrical
- Impedance: 100 ± 5 Ω (differential)
- Capacitance: 42 pf/M nominal
- Prop delay: 4.25 ns/M nominal
- Skew (within pair): 15 ps/M (ref ≤ 4.57 ps/ft)
  (TDT method, drains gounded)
  (differential 50%-50%, Tektronix 11801, SD-24/SD-26 sampling heads)
- Attenuation (nominal): TBD db/M @ 4.5 GHz

Physical
- (2) shielded pairs
  - 26 AWG solid tinned copper
  - 0.0435 nom diameter foam polyolefin, white
  - Parallel pair with (2) drains, 28 AWG solid tinned copper
  - 0.001aluminized polyester, foil in, 0.035 inch min overlap
  - Blue typical longitudinal wrap, heat sealed
- Jacket: 0.020 nom wall PVC, red

All dimensions are inches unless otherwise noted

Figure 108 - Cable construction example

I.2 Contact material and plating

Table 33 shows an example for the contact material and plating.

Table 33 - Contact material and plating example

Parameter	Recommendation	Comments
Material	Copper alloys, for example, brass for plug contacts and phosphor bronze for receptacle contact, the spring.	Material temper and thickness should be selected based on normal force and elastic deflection range consideration.
Mating Side Plating	For 50 durability cycles: 1.27 μm (50 μin) minimum Ni with either 0.38 μm (15 μin) minimum Au or 0.38 μm (15 μin) minimum 80/20 Pd/Ni with 0.051 μm (2 μin) minimum Au flash For 500 durability cycles: 1.27 μm (50 μin) minimum Ni with either 0.76 μm (30 μin) minimum Au or 0.76 μm (30 μin) minimum 80/20 Pd/Ni with 0.051 μm (2 μin) minimum Au flash	Exposed underplate or base material is not allowed in the mating area.
Solder Side Plating	Either Sn/Pb plating or Pd/Ni with Au flash: 1.27 μm (50 μin) minimum Ni with 3.18 μm (125 μin) minimum Sn/Pb. Or 1.27 μm (50 μin) minimum Ni with 0.76 μm (30 μin) minimum 80/20 Pd/Ni with 0.051 μm (2 μin) minimum Au flash.	Exposed base material is allowed in small areas where the contact is excised from its carrier strip or bandolier.

I.3 Relationship of frequency to the jitter specification

It is often useful to look at the jitter specification as a function of frequency. This clause is provided as clarifying information (informative, not normative). Figure 109 shows a plot of the maximum amplitude (in UI) sine wave at a given frequency that satisfies all the jitter specifications and the calculations leading to this graph. Two graphs are included - the second is a close-up of the high-frequency

requirements.

Jitter specification at the input

$A0 := 0.455 \quad A1 := 0.62 \quad A2 := 40$

$N0 := 5 \quad N1 := 250 \quad N2 := 25000$

$Datarate := 1.5 * 10^9$

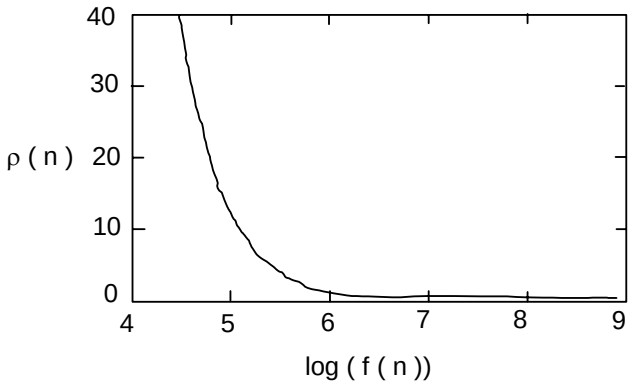
$f(n) := \frac{datarate}{2n}$ Frequency of sine wave with peak values separated by n datarate cycles

$A(n,n_x,a_x) := \frac{a_x}{\sin\left(\frac{\pi - n_x}{2n}\right)}$ Maximum amplitude of sine wave with frequency f(n) and a slewrate constrained by jitter spec n_x, a_x

Maximum compliant peak-peak amplitude

$p(n) :=$ A0 if $(n \le N0)$
min ((a (n,N),A)) A1)) if $(n>N0) \cdot (n \le N1)$
min ((a (n,N1,A1 A2)) if (n>N1)
0 otherwise

Maximum compliant peak-peak amplitude plotted against log (frequency)



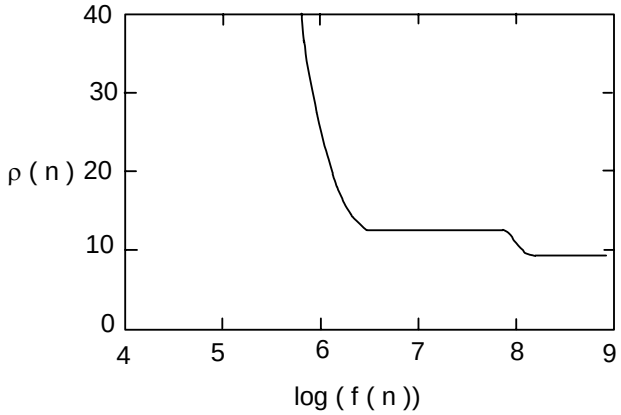


Figure 109 - Jitter as a function of frequency

I.4 Sampling BER and jitter formulas

The values for RJ and DJ above are calculated using the following relationship between BER and jitter. This is provided for reference (informative) and not intended for use as a compliance requirement (normative). The over-sampling formula assumes a worse-case oversampling ratio (osr) of three and sets the A_0,n_0 jitter requirements. The tracking architecture sets the A_1,n_1 requirement. A_2,n_2 is set to guarantee SSC compliance. Also shown below are DJ_{RX} and RJ_{RX} numbers for the two architectures. These are example budgets for the local receiver that satisfy the 10^{-12} BER goal.

Gaussian distribution error function

$$G(x) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\cdot\pi}} \int_0^x e^{\frac{-\xi^2}{2}}\, d\xi + 0.5 \qquad x > 0$$

BER due to sampling (oversampling architecture)

$osr := 3$ $\qquad DJ_{RX} := 0.1$ $\qquad RJ_{RX} := 0.1$

$DJ := 0.275 + DJ_{RX}$ $\qquad RJ := 0.18 + RJ_{RX}$

$$BER_{os} := 2 - G\left(\frac{\frac{1}{osr} - \frac{DJ}{2}}{\frac{RJ}{14}}\right) - G\left(\frac{\frac{osr-1}{osr} + \frac{DJ}{2}}{\frac{RJ}{14}}\right)$$

$BER_{os} := 1.53 * 10^{-13}$

BER due to sampling (tracking architecture)

$DJ_{RX} := 0.15$ $\qquad RJ_{RX} := 0.18$

$DJ := 0.37 + DJ_{RX}$ $\qquad RJ := 0.25 + RJ_{RX}$

$$BER_{tr} := 2 - G\left(\frac{\frac{1}{2} - \frac{DJ}{2}}{\frac{RJ}{14}}\right) - G\left(\frac{\frac{1}{2} + \frac{DJ}{2}}{\frac{RJ}{14}}\right)$$

$BER_{tr} := 2.665 * 10^{-15}$

Figure 110 - Sampling bit error rate formulas

I.5 DC and AC coupled transmitter examples

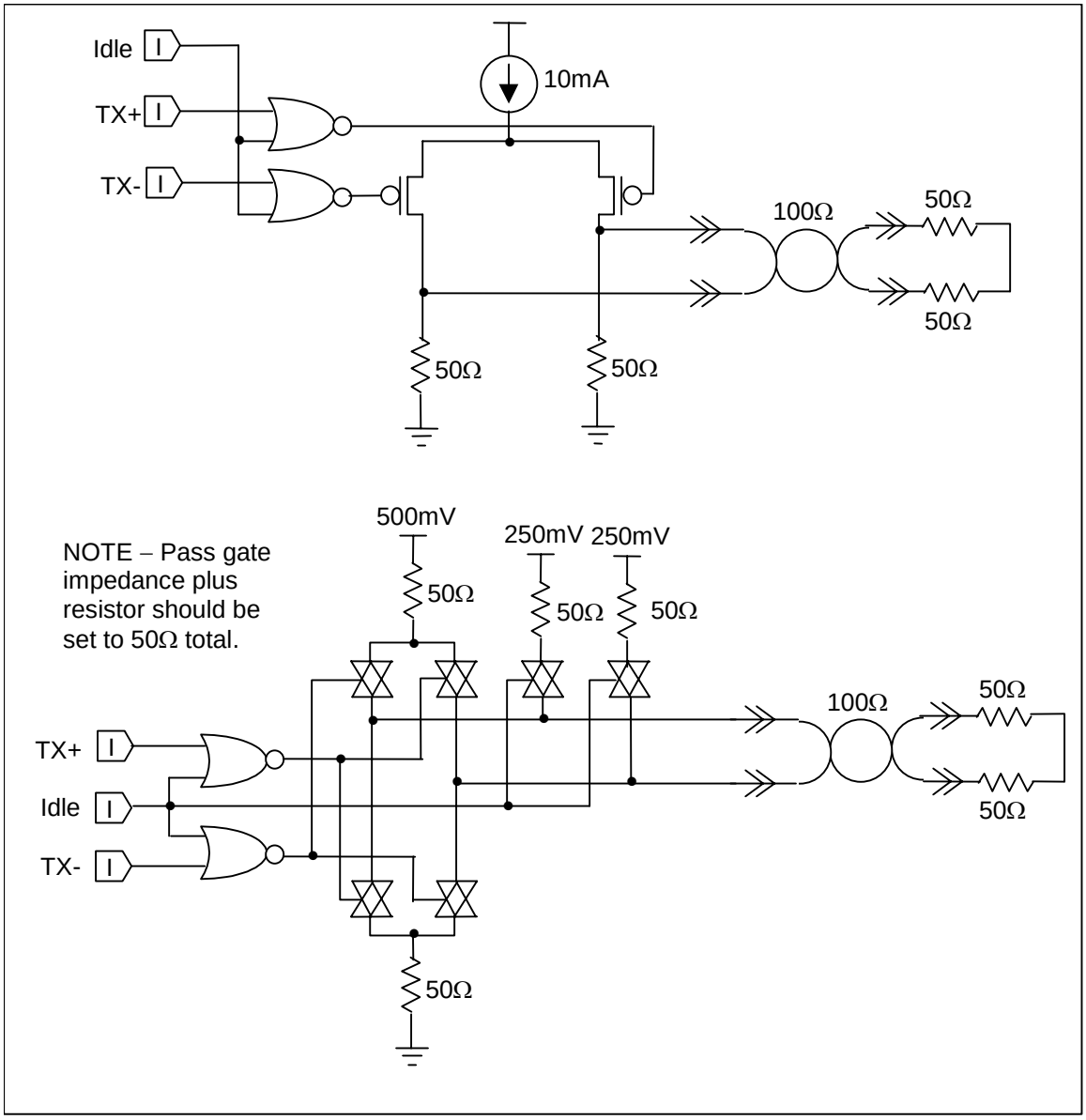
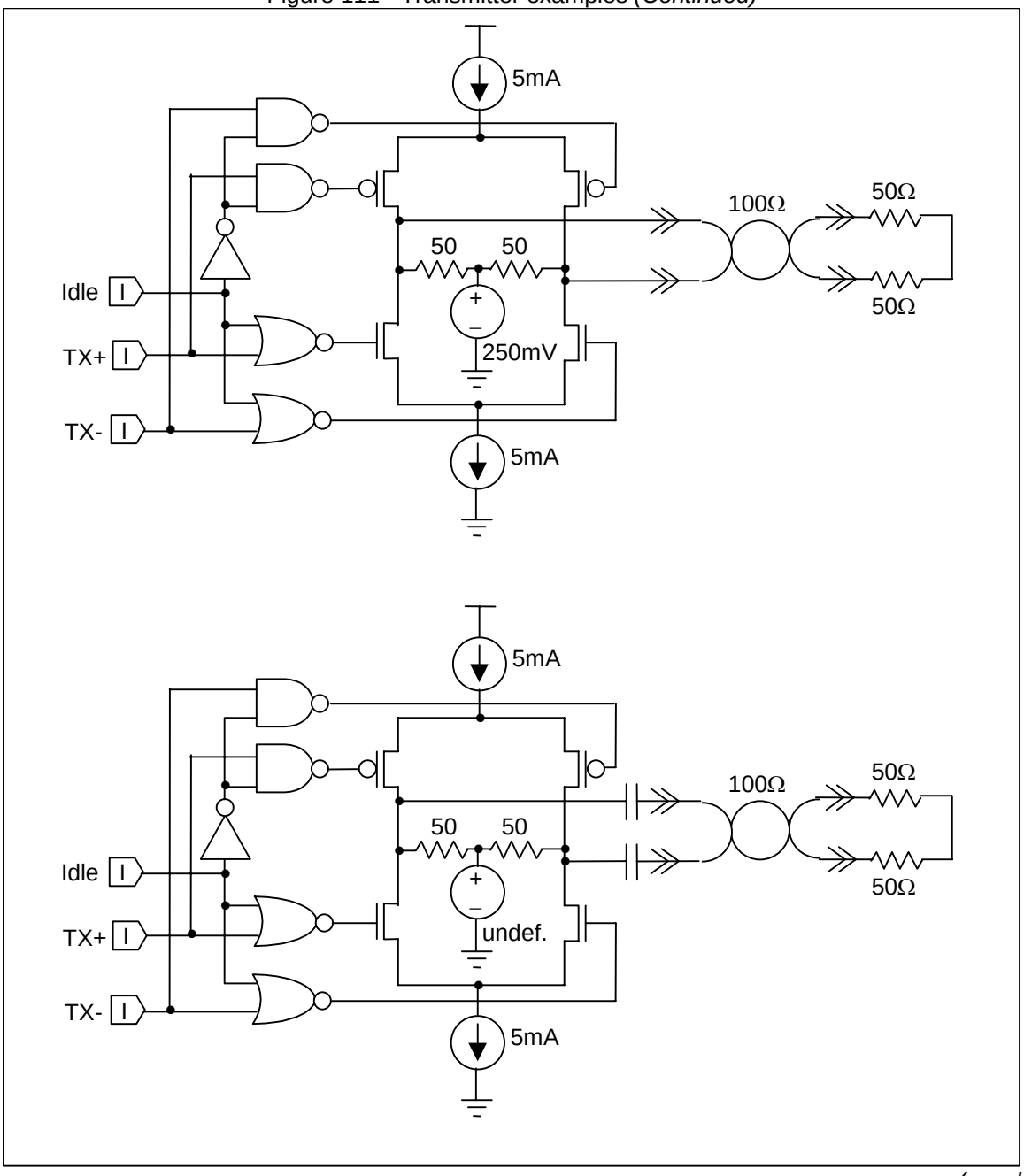


Figure 111 - Transmitter examples

(continued)

Figure 111 - Transmitter examples *(Continued)*



(concluded)

I.6 OOB signal and squelch detector examples

This clause is informative and represents one possible design example for detecting COMRESET/COMINIT and COMWAKE. Other design implementations are possible as long as they adhere to the requirements listed in this standard.

The output of the squelch detector is fed into four frequency comparators. When the period is within the window determined by the RC time constants for three consecutive cycles, the appropriate signal is asserted.

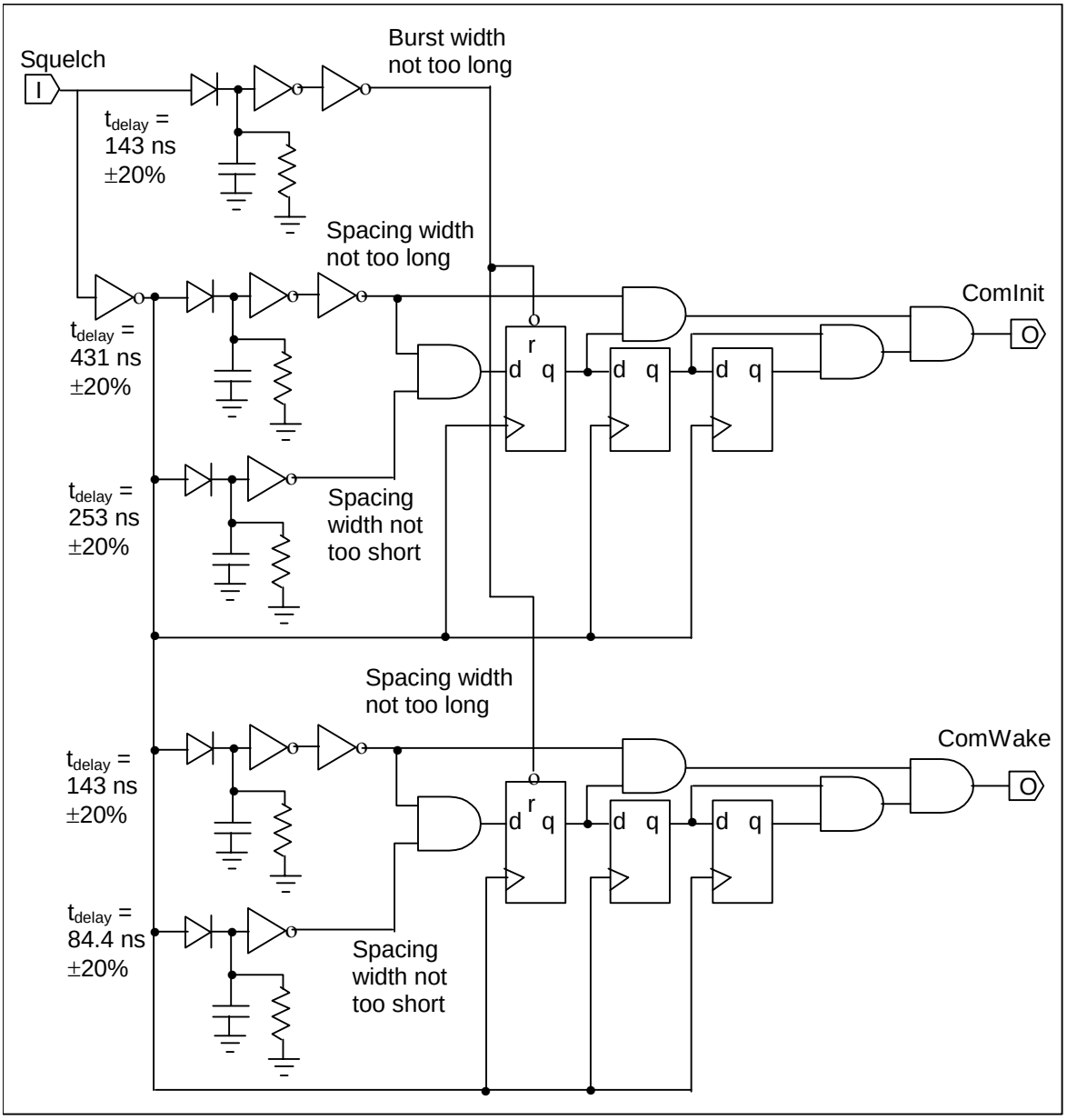


Figure 112 - OOB signal detector

The Squelch detector example below makes use of a receiver with built-in hysteresis to filter out any signal not meeting the minimum amplitude. The squelch detector receiver should be true differential to ensure common-mode noise is rejected.

The full-swing output is fed into a pulse generator that charges up the capacitor through the diode. In the absence of signal, a resistor discharges the capacitor to ground. The circuit outputs a true signal when the capacitor voltage is below the turn-on threshold of the Schmitt trigger buffer - indicating insufficient signal level. This circuit must be enabled in all power management states and should, therefore, be implemented with a small power budget.

Figure 113, like the OOB Signal Detector figure shown in **Error! Reference source not found.**, is intended to show functionality (informative) only, and other solutions may be used to improve power consumption as long as they comply to the electrical specifications of Table 11, for the worst case noise environment (common-mode) conditions.

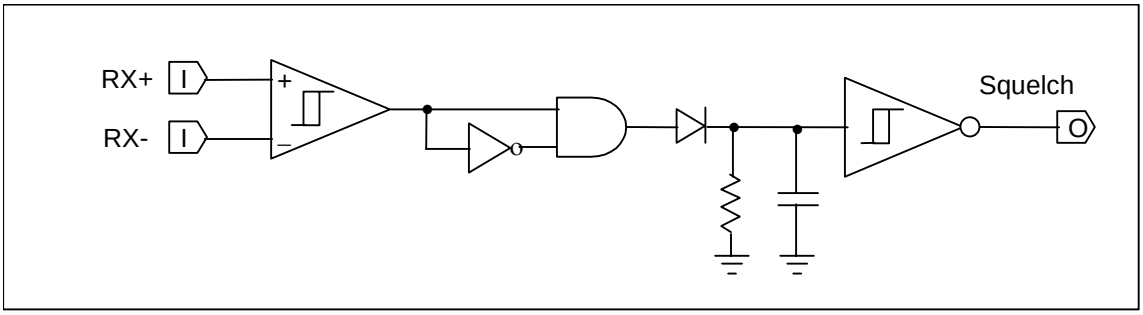


Figure 113 - Squelch detector

ANNEX J. COMMAND PROCESSING EXAMPLE (INFORMATIVE)

J.1 Non-data commands

When the Command register is written by the BIOS or software driver, the host adapter sets BSY in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Command frame to the device.

When command actions are complete, the device transmits a Register frame to set ending content of the Shadow Command Block. and Shadow Control Block

J.1.1 Legacy DMA read by host from device

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host adapter's DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the "run" flag).
- The host driver software issues the command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the Shadow Command Register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device has processed the command and is ready, it transmits the read data to the host in the form of one or more Data FIS's. This transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness.
- The host adapter recognizes that the incoming frame is a Data FIS and the DMA controller is programmed, and directs the incoming data to the host adapter's DMA controller which forwards the incoming data to the appropriate host memory locations.
- Upon completion of the transfer, the device transmits a Register - Device to Host FIS to indicate ending status for the command, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

In some error conditions there may be no Data FIS transmitted prior to the Register FIS being transmitted with the status information. If so, the host software driver should abort the setup of the DMA controller.

J.1.2 Legacy DMA write by host to device

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host adapter's DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the "run" flag). As a result the DMA controller becomes armed but remains paused pending a signal from the device to proceed with the data transfer.
- The host driver software issues the command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the Shadow command Register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the data from the host, the device transmits a DMA Activate FIS to the host, which activates the armed DMA controller. The DMA controller transmits the write data to the device in the form of one or more Data FIS. If more than one Data FIS is required to complete the overall data transfer request, a DMA Activate FIS will be sent prior to each and every one of the subsequent Data FIS's. The amount of data transmitted to the device is determined by the transfer count programmed into the host adapter's DMA controller by the host driver software during the command setup phase.
- Upon completion of the transfer, the device transmits a Register - Device to Host FIS to indicate ending status for the command, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

In some error conditions the device may signal an ending status by transmitting a register frame to the host without having transmitted a DMA Activate FIS. In such cases the host driver software should abort and clean up the DMA controller.

J.1.3 PIO data read from the device

- The host driver software issues a PIO read command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device has processed the command and is ready to begin transferring data to the host, it first transmits a PIO Setup FIS to the host. Upon receiving the PIO Setup FIS, the host adapter holds the FIS contents in a temporary holding buffer.
- The device follows the PIO Setup FIS with a Data - Device to Host FIS. Upon receiving the Data FIS while holding the PIO Setup FIS, the host adapter transfers the register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block including the initial status value, resulting in DRQ getting set and BSY getting cleared in the Status register. Also, if the interrupt flag is set, an interrupt is generated to the host.
- The host adapter receives the incoming data that is part of the Data FIS into a speed matching FIFO that is conceptually attached to the Shadow Data Register.
- As a result of the issued interrupt and DRQ being set in the Status register, host software does an IN operation on the data register and pulls data from the head of the speed matching FIFO while the serial link is adding data to the tail of the FIFO. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow/overflow of the receive speed matching FIFO that feeds the Data Shadow Register.
- When the number of words read by host software from the Data Shadow register reaches the value indicated in the PIO Setup FIS, the host transfers the ending status value from the earlier PIO Setup FIS E_Status field into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and the ending status reported.
- If there are more data blocks to be transferred, the ending status from the E_Status field will indicate BSY, and the process will repeat from the device sending the PIO Setup FIS to the host.

J.1.4 PIO data write to the device

- The host driver software issues a PIO write command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the PIO write data, it transmits a PIO Setup FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- In response to a PIO Setup FIS with the D bit indicating a write to the device, the host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in DRQ getting set, BSY cleared. Also, if the interrupt flag is set, an interrupt is generated to the host.
- As a result of DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software starts a OUT operation to the data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - Host to Device FIS. The OUT operation pushes data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO Setup frame into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF. If additional sectors of data are to be transferred, the ending status from the E_Status field value transferred to the Shadow Status register would have the BSY bit set and the state is the same as immediately after the command was first issued to the device.
- If there are more data blocks to be transferred, the ending status from the E_Status field will indicate BSY, and the process will repeat from the device sending the PIO Setup FIS to the host.
- When the number of sectors indicated in the Sector Count register have been transferred, the device shall send a Register - Device to Host FIS with the command complete interrupt and not BSY status.
- In the case of a write error, the device may, on any sector boundary include error status and a command complete interrupt in the PIO setup FIS, and there is no need to send the Register - Device to Host FIS.

J.1.5 READ DMA QUEUED example

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag).
- The host driver software issues the command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the Shadow command Register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device has queued the command and wishes to release the bus, it transmits a register FIS to the host resulting in the BSY bit being cleared and the REL bit being set in the Status register.
- When the device is ready to complete the transfer for the queued command, it transmits a Set Device Bits FIS to the host resulting in the SERV bit being set in the Status register. If no other command is active (i.e. BSY set to one), then an interrupt is also generated.
- In response to the service request, the host software deactivates the DMA controller (if activated) and issues a SERVICE command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, resulting in the BSY bit getting set and a register FIS being transmitted to the device.
- In response to the SERVICE request, the device transmits a register FIS to the host conveying the TAG value to the host and clearing the BSY bit and settings the DRQ bit.
- When the DRQ bit is set, the host software reads the TAG value from the Shadow Command Block and restores the DMA controller context appropriate for the command that is completing.
- The device transmits the read data to the host in the form of one or more Data FIS. This transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness. Any DMA data arriving before the DMA controller has its context restored will back up into the inbound speed-matching FIFO until the FIFO is filled and will thereafter be flow controlled to throttle the incoming data until the DMA controller has its context restored by host software.
- The host adapter recognizes that the incoming packet is a Data FIS and the DMA controller is programmed, and directs the incoming data to the host adapter’s DMA controller that forwards the incoming data to the appropriate host memory locations.
- Upon completion of the transfer, the target transmits a Register - Device to Host FIS to indicate ending status for the command, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

J.1.6 WRITE DMA QUEUED example

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag).
- The host driver software issues the command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the Shadow Command Register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device has queued the command and wishes to release the bus, it transmits a register FIS to the host resulting in the BSY bit being cleared and the REL bit being set in the Status register.
- When the device is ready to complete the transfer for the queued command, it transmits a Set Device Bits FIS to the host resulting in the SERV bit being set in the Status register. If no other command is active (i.e. BSY set to one), then an interrupt is also generated.
- In response to the service request, the host software deactivates the DMA controller (if activated) and issues a SERVICE command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block, resulting in the BSY bit getting set and a register FIS being transmitted to the device.
- In response to the SERVICE request, the device transmits a register FIS to the host conveying the TAG value to the host and clearing the BSY bit and setting the DRQ bit.
- When the DRQ bit is set, the host software reads the TAG value from the Shadow Command Block and restores the DMA controller context appropriate for the command that is completing.
- When the device is ready to receive the data from the host, the device transmits a DMA Activate FIS to the host, which activates the armed DMA controller. The DMA controller transmits the write data to the device in the form of one or more Data - Host to Device FIS’s. If more than one Data FIS is required to complete the overall data transfer request, a DMA Activate FIS shall be sent prior to each and every one of the subsequent Data FIS’s. The amount of data transmitted to the device is determined by the transfer count programmed into the host’s DMA controller by the host driver software during the command setup phase. If the DMA Activate FIS arrives at the host prior to host software restoring the DMA context, the DMA Activate FIS results in the DMA controller starting the transfer as soon as the host software completes programming it (i.e. the controller is already activated, and the transfer starts as soon as the context is restored).
- Upon completion of the transfer, the target transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to indicate ending status for the command, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

J.1.7 ATAPI PACKET commands with PIO data-in

- The host driver software issues a PACKET command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the ATAPI command packet, it transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- The host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in BSY getting negated and DRQ getting asserted.
- As a result of BSY getting cleared and DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software writes the command packet to the Shadow Data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - Host to Device FIS. The writes to the data register push data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO setup frame into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and BSY being set, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF. This completes the transmission of the command packet to the device.
- When the device has processed the command and is ready to begin transferring data to the host, it first transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host. Upon receiving the PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS, the host adapter holds the FIS contents in a temporary holding buffer.
- The device follows the PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS with a Data - Device to Host FIS. Upon receiving the Data FIS while holding the PIO Setup FIS context, the host adapter transfers the register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block including the initial status value, resulting in DRQ getting set and BSY getting cleared in the Status register. Also, if the interrupt flag is set, an interrupt is generated to the host.
- The host adapter receives the incoming data that is part of the Data FIS into a speed matching FIFO that is conceptually attached to the Data Shadow Register.
- As a result of the issued interrupt and DRQ being set in the Status register, host software reads the byte count and does a IN operation on the data register to pull data from the head of the speed matching FIFO while the serial link is adding data to the tail of the FIFO. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow/overflow of the receive speed matching FIFO that feeds the Data Shadow Register.
- When the number of words received in the Data FIS reaches the value indicated in the PIO Setup FIS and the host FIFO is empty, the host transfers the ending status from the E_Status field value from the earlier PIO Setup into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and, BSY being set.
- The device transmits final ending status by sending a Register Device to Host FIS with BSY cleared to zero and the command completion status for the command and the interrupt flag set.
- The host detects an incoming register frame that contains BSY cleared to zero and command completion status for the command and the interrupt flag set and places the frame content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block to complete the command.

J.1.8 ATAPI PACKET commands with PIO data out

- The host driver software issues a PACKET command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the ATAPI command packet, it transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- The host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in BSY getting negated and DRQ getting asserted.
- As a result of BSY getting cleared and DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software writes the command packet to the Shadow Data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - Host to Device FIS. The writes to the data register push data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO Setup frame into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and BSY being set, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF. This completes the transmission of the command packet to the device.
- When the device has processed the command and is ready to receive the PIO write data, it transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- In response to a PIO Setup FIS with the D bit indicating a write to the device, the host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in DRQ getting set. Also, if the interrupt flag is set, an interrupt is generated to the host.
- As a result of DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software reads the byte count and starts a OUT operation to the data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - host to device FIS. The OUT operation pushes data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared, BSY being set, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF.
- The device transmits command completion status by sending a Register - Device to Host FIS with BSY cleared to zero and the ending status for the command and the interrupt flag set.
- The host detects an incoming Register - Device to Host FIS that contains BSY cleared to zero and command completion status for the command and the interrupt flag set and places the frame content into the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block to complete the command.

J.1.9 ATAPI PACKET commands with DMA data-in

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag).
- The host driver software issues a PACKET command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the ATAPI command packet, it transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- The host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in BSY getting negated and DRQ getting asserted.
- As a result of BSY getting cleared and DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software writes the command packet to the Shadow Data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - Host to Device FIS. The writes to the data register push data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO setup frame into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and BSY being set, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF. This completes the transmission of the command packet to the device.
- When the device has processed the command and is ready, it transmits the read data to the host in the form of a single Data FIS. This transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness.
- The host adapter recognizes that the incoming packet is a Data FIS and the DMA controller is programmed, and directs the incoming data to the host adapter’s DMA controller that forwards the incoming data to the appropriate host memory locations.
- Upon completion of the transfer, the target transmits a Register - Device to Host FIS to indicate command completion status, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

J.1.10 ATAPI PACKET commands with DMA data-out

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag). As a result the DMA controller becomes armed but remains paused pending a signal from the device to proceed with the data transfer.
- The host driver software issues a PACKET command to the device by writing the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block (Command register last).
- In response to the command register being written, the host adapter sets the BSY bit in the Shadow Status register and transmits a Register - Host to Device FIS to the device with the Shadow Command Block and Shadow Control Block contents.
- When the device is ready to receive the ATAPI command packet, it transmits a PIO Setup - Device to Host FIS to the host to indicate that the target is ready to receive PIO data and the number of words of data that are to be transferred.
- The host transfers the beginning Status register contents from the PIO Setup FIS into the Shadow Status register, resulting in BSY getting negated and DRQ getting asserted.
- As a result of BSY getting cleared and DRQ being set in the Shadow Status register, the host driver software writes the command packet to the Shadow Data register.
- The data written to the data register is placed in an outbound speed matching FIFO and is transmitted to the device as a Data - Host to Device FIS. The writes to the data register push data onto the tail of the FIFO and the serial link pulls data from the head. The flow control scheme handles data throttling to avoid underflow of the transmit FIFO.
- When the number of words indicated in the PIO Setup FIS have been written to the transmit FIFO, the host adapter transfers the final status value indicated in the PIO Setup frame into the Shadow Status register resulting in DRQ being cleared and BSY being set, and closes the frame with a CRC and EOF. This completes the transmission of the command packet to the device.
- When the device is ready to receive the data from the host, the device transmits a DMA Activate FIS to the host, which activates the armed DMA controller. The DMA controller transmits the write data to the device in the form of one or more Data FIS. The transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness. The amount of data transmitted to the device is determined by the transfer count programmed into the host’s DMA engine by the host driver software during the command setup phase.
- Upon completion of the transfer, the device transmits a Register - Device to Host FIS to indicate ending status for the command, clearing the BSY bit in the Status register, and if the interrupt flag is set in the header an interrupt is asserted to the host.

J.1.11 First Party DMA read of host memory by device

This section only outlines the basic First Party DMA read transaction and does not outline command sequences that utilize this capability.

- As a result of some condition and the target having adequate knowledge of host memory (presumably some prior state has been conveyed to the target), the target signals a DMA read request for a given address and given transfer count to the host by transmitting a First Party DMA Setup FIS.
- Upon receiving the First Party DMA Setup FIS, the host adapter transfers the appropriate memory address, count value, and transfer direction into the host-side DMA controller and arms and activates the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag).
- In response to being set up, armed, and activated, the DMA controller retrieves data from host memory and transmits it to the device in the form of one or more Data - Host to Device FIS’s. The transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness.

J.1.12 First Party DMA write of host memory by device

This section only outlines the basic First Party DMA write transaction and does not outline command sequences which utilize this capability.

- As a result of some condition and the target having adequate knowledge of host memory (presumably some prior state has been conveyed to the target), the target signals a DMA write request for a given address and given transfer count to the host by transmitting a First Party DMA Setup FIS.
- Upon receiving the First Party DMA Setup FIS, the host adapter transfers the appropriate memory address, count value, and transfer direction into the host-side DMA controller and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag).
- The device then transmits the data to the host in the form of one or more Data - Device to Host FIS’s. This DMA transfer proceeds in response to flow control signals/readiness.
- The host adapter recognizes that the incoming packet is a Data FIS and directs the incoming data to the host adapter’s DMA controller which forwards the incoming data to the appropriate host memory locations.

J.1.13 Odd word count considerations

This section outlines special considerations required to accommodate data transfers of an odd number of 16-bit word quantities. The considerations are separately outlined for each of the data transaction types. No accommodation in the serial implementation of ATA is made for the transfer of an odd number of 8-bit byte quantities.

J.1.13.1 Legacy DMA read from target for odd word count

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the “run” flag). The count for the DMA transfer is an odd number of word (16-bit) quantities.
- When the device has processed the corresponding command and is ready to transmit the data to the host, it does so in the form of one or more Data FIS. Because the transfer count is odd, the last 32-bit DWORD transmitted to the host has the high order 16 bits padded with zeroes. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.

- The host adapter receives the incoming data and the DMA controller directs the received data from the receive FIFO to the appropriate host memory locations. The DMA controller has a transfer granularity of a 16-bit word (consistent with the 8038i specification).
- Upon receiving the final 32-bit DWORD of receive data, the DMA controller transfers the first half (low order 16 bits) to the corresponding final memory location at which point the DMA engine's transfer count is exhausted. The DMA controller drops the high-order 16 bits of the final received DWORD since it represents data received beyond the end of the requested DMA transfer. The dropped 16 high order bits corresponds with the 16 bits of transmission pad inserted by the sender.

J.1.13.2 Legacy DMA write by host to target for odd word count

- Prior to the command being issued to the device, the host driver software programs the host-side DMA controller with the memory address pointer(s) and the transfer direction, and arms the DMA controller (enables the "run" flag). The count for the DMA transfer is an odd number of word (16-bit) quantities.
- When the device has processed the corresponding command and is ready to receive the data from the host, it signals readiness with a DMA Activate FIS.
- Upon receiving the DMA Activate signal, the host transmits the data to the device in the form of one or more Data FIS. Because the transfer count is odd, the DMA controller completes its data transfer from host memory to the transmit FIFO after filling only the low order 16-bits of the last DWORD in the FIFO, leaving the upper 16 bits zeroed. This padded final DWORD is transmitted as the final symbol in the data frame. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.
- Having awareness of the command set and having decoded the current command, the device that receives the transmitted data has knowledge of the expected data transfer length. Upon receiving the data from the host, the device removes the 16-bit pad data in the upper 16 bits of the final 32-bit DWORD of received data.

J.1.13.3 PIO data read from the device

- In response to decoding and processing a PIO read command with a transfer count for an odd number of 16-bit words, the device transmits the corresponding data to the host in the form of a single Data FIS. The device pads the upper 16-bits of the final 32-bit DWORD of the last transmitted FIS in order to close the FIS. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.
- Host driver software responsible for retrieving the PIO data is aware of the number of words of data it expects to retrieve from the Data register and performs a IN operation operation for an odd number of repetitions.
- Upon exhaustion of the IN operation operation by the host driver software, the receive FIFO that interfaces with the data register has one 16-bit word of received data remaining in it that corresponds to the pad that the device included at the end of the transmitted frame. This remaining word of data left in the data register FIFO is flushed upon the next write of the Command register or upon the receipt of the next Data FIS from the device.

J.1.13.4 PIO data write to the device

- In response to decoding and processing a PIO write command with a transfer count for an odd number of 16-bit words, the device transmits a PIO Setup FIS to the host indicating it is ready to receive the PIO data and indicating the transfer count. The conveyed transfer count is for an odd number of 16-bit word quantities.
- Host driver software responsible for transmitting the PIO data is aware of the number of words of data it will write to the Data register and performs a OUT operation for an odd number of repetitions.
- After the final write by the software driver to the Data register, the transfer count indicated in the PIO Setup packet is exhausted, which signals the host adapter to close the FIS. Since the transfer count was

odd, the upper 16 bits of the final 32-bit DWORD of data to transmit remains zeroed (pad) and the host adapter closes the FIS after transmitting this final padded DWORD. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.
- Having awareness of the command set and having decoded the current command, the device that receives the transmitted data has knowledge of the expected data transfer length. Upon receiving the data from the host, the device removes the 16-bit pad data in the upper 16 bits of the final 32-bit DWORD of received data.

J.1.13.5 First Party DMA read of host memory by device

- When the device wishes to initiate a First Party DMA read of host memory for an odd word count, it constructs a First Party DMA Setup FIS that includes the base address and the transfer count (for an odd number of words).
- Upon receiving the First Party DMA Setup FIS, the host adapter transfers the starting address and (odd) transfer count to the DMA controller and activates the DMA controller to initiate a transfer to the device of the requested data.
- The host transmits the data to the device in the form of one or more Data FIS. Because the transfer count is odd, the DMA controller completes its data transfer from host memory to the transmit FIFO after filling only the low order 16-bits of the last DWORD in the FIFO, leaving the upper 16 bits zeroed. This padded final DWORD is transmitted as the final symbol in the data frame. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.
- Having awareness of the amount of data requested, the device that receives the transmitted data has knowledge of the expected data transfer length. Upon receiving the data from the host, the device removes the 16-bit pad data in the upper 16 bits of the final 32-bit DWORD of received data.

J.1.13.6 First Party DMA write of host memory by device

- When the device wishes to initiate a First Party DMA write to host memory for an odd word count, it constructs a First Party DMA Setup FIS that includes the base address and transfer count (for an odd number of words).
- Upon receiving the First Party DMA Setup FIS, the host adapter transfers the starting address and (odd) transfer count to the DMA controller and activates the DMA controller.
- The device transmits the data to the host in the form of one or more Data FIS. Because the transfer count is odd, the last 32-bit DWORD transmitted to the host has the high order 16 bits padded with zeroes. The CRC value transmitted at the end of the FIS is computed over the entire FIS including any pad bytes in the final transmitted symbol.
- The host adapter receives the incoming data and the DMA controller directs the received data from the receive FIFO to the appropriate host memory locations. The DMA controller has a transfer granularity of a 16-bit word.
- Upon receiving the final 32-bit DWORD of receive data, the DMA controller transfers the first half (low order 16 bits) to the corresponding final memory location at which point the DMA controller’s transfer count is exhausted. The DMA controller drops the high-order 16 bits of the final received DWORD since it represents data received beyond the end of the requested DMA transfer. The dropped 16 high order bits corresponds with the 16 bits of transmission pad inserted by the sender.